









THE GREAT GRIMSBY SEAL

'SIGILLVM COMUNITATIS GRIMEBYE'

WITH THE FIGURES OF 'GRYEM', 'HABLOC', AND 'GOLDEBVRGH'



# THE LAY OF HAVELOK THE DANE

RE-EDITED FROM MS. LAUD MISC. 108 IN THE  
BODLEIAN LIBRARY, OXFORD

BY THE

REV. WALTER W. SKEAT

LITT.D., LL.D., D.C.L., PH.D.

FELLOW OF THE BRITISH ACADEMY

ELRINGTON AND BOSWORTH PROFESSOR OF ANGLO-SAXON IN THE  
UNIVERSITY OF CAMBRIDGE

SECOND EDITION REVISED

BY

K. SISAM

OXFORD  
AT THE CLARENDON PRESS

*Oxford University Press, Walton Street, Oxford OX2 6DP*

OXFORD LONDON GLASGOW

NEW YORK TORONTO MELBOURNE WELLINGTON

KUALA LUMPUR SINGAPORE JAKARTA HONG KONG TOKYO

DELHI BOMBAY CALCUTTA MADRAS KARACHI

NAIROBI DAR ES SALAAM CAPE TOWN

ISBN 0 19 811108 8

*Second Edition 1915*

*All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior permission of Oxford University Press*

*Printed in Great Britain  
at the University Press, Oxford  
by Eric Buckley  
Printer to the University*

## PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION

SINCE the previous edition of this book appeared the criticism of *Havelok* has been greatly advanced by the work of Heyman and Deutschbein on the story, by Holthausen's second edition, and Professor Skeat's discovery of the Cambridge Fragments. In the few weeks available for the task of revision I have used this new material freely, and have made considerable alterations the more willingly because Professor Skeat himself was always most ready to utilize the latest results.

The Introduction has therefore been remodelled. The Text and foot-notes are from stereotyped plates, and such slight changes as have been made have the single aim of restoring defensible readings in the manuscript. The Notes are for the most part new; and the Glossary, which was admirably full and accurate in its references, has been revised throughout.

This work, necessarily hasty, would not have been possible without generous help. The Misses Skeat have kindly placed at my disposal the materials in their possession. Professor Carleton Brown collated the Cambridge Fragments, which now follow the text, with very valuable results. Dr. Craigie contributes the important emendation of l. 64. Professor Napier has allowed me to consult his bibliographical collections, and to quote his explanation of the forms mentioned in the note to l. 2143. Finally, in all points the revision has greatly benefited by Dr. Henry Bradley's criticism and advice.

K. S.

# CONTENTS

The **FRONTISPIECE** represents the seal of Great Grimsby, described in the Introduction, § 12.

The **FACSIMILE** represents fol. 207 v. (col. 1, top) of the Laud MS. Compare ll. 632-53 at p. 24.

	PAGE
PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION . . . . .	iii
INTRODUCTION.—§ 1. Discovery of the Poem. § 2. Select Bibliography. § 3. The Laud MS. § 4. The Cambridge Fragments. § 5. Geffrei Gaimar. § 6. Le Lai d'Havelok. § 7. Robert Manning of Brunne. § 8. The Lambeth Interpolation. § 9. Relations of the chief versions of the Story. § 10. Minor versions. § 11. Local traditions. § 12. The Grimsby Seal. § 13. Localization of the Story. §§ 14, 15. Date of Composition. § 16. Historical Basis of the Story. § 17. Legendary Elements. § 18. The Metre. § 19. The Rimes. § 20. Phonology. § 21. The Phonology of some Norse words. § 22. Inflexions—Nouns, Pronouns, Verbs, &c. § 23. The Spelling . . . . .	v-xl
THE LAY OF HAVELOK . . . . .	1
THE CAMBRIDGE FRAGMENTS. . . . .	103
NOTES . . . . .	105
GLOSSARIAL INDEX . . . . .	111
INDEX OF NAMES . . . . .	169

## INTRODUCTION

§ 1. THE English version of the Lay of Havelok is one of the few poems that have happily been recovered, after having long been given up as lost. Tyrwhitt, in his Essay on the Language and Versification of Chaucer, has a footnote (no. 51) deploring the loss of the Rime concerning Gryme the Fisher, the founder of Grymesby, Hanelok [*read* Havelok] the Dane, and his wife Goldborough; and Ritson, in his Dissertation on Romance and Minstrelsy (vol. i, p. lxxxviii of his Metrical Romanceës), makes remarks to the same effect. It was at length, however, discovered by accident in a manuscript belonging to the Bodleian Library, which had been described in the old Catalogue merely as *Vitae Sanctorum*, a large portion of it being occupied by metrical legends of the Saints.

### § 2. Select Bibliography.

#### *Editions.*

1828. *The Ancient English Romance of Havelok the Dane, &c.*, edited for the Roxburghe Club by (Sir) Frederick Madden. (The apparatus, which includes a full Introduction, the French from Gaimar, and the 'Lai d'Havelok', is still precious.)

1868. *The Lay of Havelok the Dane*, edited for the Early English Text Society (Extra Series IV) by the Rev. W. W.

Skeat, with the assistance of the previous editor. Reprinted with slight corrections and additions in 1889. (The best text.)

1901. *Havelok*, edited by F. Holthausen, London, 1901. (Normalized in spelling, dialect, and metre.)

1902. *The Lay of Havelok the Dane*, re-edited by the Rev. Professor W. W. Skeat, Oxford: at the Clarendon Press. (With normalized spelling, the basis of the present edition. The most important notice is that by M. Förster, *Anglia, Beiblatt*, vol. xiv. 10 ff.)

1910. *Havelok*, edited by F. Holthausen, second (German) edition, Heidelberg and New York. (Very much improved, and invaluable for its bibliographical references.)

### *Selections.*

ll. 1-183 in J. Zupitza's *Alt- und mittlenglisches Lesebuch*, Wien (and Leipzig); and in G. E. Maclean's *Old and Middle English Reader*, New York; ll. 1-748 in F. Kluge's *Mittelenglisches Lesebuch*, Halle; ll. 339-748 in Morris and Skeat's *Specimens of Early English*, Part I, Oxford; and in O. F. Emerson's *Middle English Reader*, New York; ll. 2052-2265 in R. P. Wülker's *Altenglisches Lesebuch*, Part I, Halle. Most of these are annotated.

### *Collations.*<sup>1</sup>

By Hupe, *Anglia*, vol. xiii. 194-5 (unreliable); by Holthausen, second edition, p. xvi; and, on some points, by Sisam, *Herrig's Archiv*, vol. cxxviii. 197-9.

<sup>1</sup> These collations rarely affect the sense, and are in great part concerned with such purely palaeographical matters as the occurrence of *þ* where *th* is printed. A few of textual importance are mentioned in the Notes.

## PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION

SINCE the previous edition of this book appeared the criticism of *Havelok* has been greatly advanced by the work of Heyman and Deutschbein on the story, by Holthausen's second edition, and Professor Skeat's discovery of the Cambridge Fragments. In the few weeks available for the task of revision I have used this new material freely, and have made considerable alterations the more willingly because Professor Skeat himself was always most ready to utilize the latest results.

The Introduction has therefore been remodelled. The Text and foot-notes are from stereotyped plates, and such slight changes as have been made have the single aim of restoring defensible readings in the manuscript. The Notes are for the most part new; and the Glossary, which was admirably full and accurate in its references, has been revised throughout.

This work, necessarily hasty, would not have been possible without generous help. The Misses Skeat have kindly placed at my disposal the materials in their possession. Professor Carleton Brown collated the Cambridge Fragments, which now follow the text, with very valuable results. Dr. Craigie contributes the important emendation of l. 64. Professor Napier has allowed me to consult his bibliographical collections, and to quote his explanation of the forms mentioned in the note to l. 2143. Finally, in all points the revision has greatly benefited by Dr. Henry Bradley's criticism and advice.

K. S.

E. K. Putnam: *The Lambeth Version of Havelok*, Publications of the Modern Language Association of North America, Baltimore, 1900, pp. 1-19.

H. Heyman: *Studies on the Havelok Tale*, Upsala, 1903.

M. Deutschbein: *Studien zur Sagengeschichte Englands*, Part I, 'Die Wikingersagen', Cöthen, 1906.

§ 3. **The Laud Manuscript.** The only complete text of the poem is extant in MS. Laud Misc. 108, in the Bodleian Library. It begins on fol. 204, and is written in double columns each of which contains forty-five lines. Hence a hundred and eighty lines are missing after l. 1444, where a leaf is lost of which no count is taken in the folio numbering. It ends on the back of fol. 219, and is immediately followed, in the same handwriting, by the 'Geste of King Horn'. These two poems form the second part of the MS. Part I is chiefly occupied by Lives of the Saints, printed by Horstmann, E. E. T. S., 1887. The hands are of about the same date as the *Havelok* portion, that is to say, early fourteenth century. Part III is of the fifteenth century, and contains the Lives of Saint Cecilia and Saint Blaise (also printed by Horstmann); Saint Alexius (printed by Dr. Furnivall in E. E. T. S., no. 69); and a poem called 'Somer Soneday' printed in *Reliquiae Antiquae*, vol. ii, pp. 7-9; followed by a few other scraps. From the circumstances mentioned in the note to l. 2933, Zupitza conjectured that an older MS., from which the existing copy was made, contained only twenty lines to the page; and Mr. Hall has noted that twenty lines in the copy of *King Horn* are found to be out of place, which furnishes strong evidence as to the correctness of the suggestion. If so, the MS. must have been made with small pages for the purpose of portability, and would have been well suited for



use by a wandering minstrel or reciter of poems. For further details see Hall's *King Horn*, pp. viii-x.

The arrangement of the page and the script may be studied in Skeat's *Twelve Facsimiles of Old English MSS.*, Plate VII, where fol. 207 v. is reproduced. A portion of the same plate, containing ll. 632-53, is reproduced in the present volume. On the whole the writing is clear, but it is sometimes difficult to distinguish *c* and *t*, *n* and *u*. The *i* has a long stroke over it when written next to *m* or *n*, but this stroke is frequently misplaced in the word *knith* = *kniht*. The letters *þ*, *y* are usually distinguished by the dot over *y*, but *þ* occasionally has this dot. The few cases of the Anglo-Saxon *p* for *w* are not easily distinguished by letter form, and the only certain examples are *witdraw*, l. 502; *wit*, l. 997; *we*, l. 1058; *berwen*, l. 1426; *we*, miswritten for *wo* = who, l. 1914. This evidence is interesting as showing that this letter was then fast going out of use. The absence of *ȝ* from the *Havelok* text is the more remarkable since it occurs in *King Horn*.

The poem is marked out into paragraphs by the use of large letters; and in this edition a slight space is introduced at the end of each paragraph to show this more clearly. The expansion of marks of contraction is denoted in the usual way by the use of italics; thus in l. 9 'man' is printed instead of the form 'mā', as in the MS., and the curl denoting *er* is represented by printing 'euere' in l. 17. Additions and emendations are enclosed in square brackets, and the punctuation and capitalization are modern.

§ 4. **The Cambridge Fragments.** By a happy chance the discovery of some fragments of another manuscript fell to Professor Skeat. In the *Modern Language Review* for October, 1911, pp. 455-7, he published the scraps now included at the end of the text with the following explana-

tion: 'Among the treasures of the Cambridge University Library have been preserved four small and insignificant-looking scraps of paper containing writing which appears to belong to the end of the fourteenth century. They are contained in an envelope marked 4407 (19). One of the scraps was perceived to contain a small portion of the "Proverbs of Hending". The meaning of the rest was less obvious, and I was asked to endeavour to discover it. I soon saw that some of the lines certainly belonged to *Havelok the Dane*. . . . I have recommended that the eight fragments (recto and verso of four scraps) should be marked *a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h*. Fragment *d* contains *Havelok* ll. 174-83 (partly illegible); *e* contains ll. 341-64; and *f* contains ll. 537-44, ten lines not in the other copy, and ll. 545-6, another new line, and ll. 547-9.'

The MS., as Professor Skeat pointed out, is late and corrupt; and it is chiefly important for the ten lines added after l. 544. Are these to be accepted as part of the text of *Havelok*? Professor Skeat seems to have inclined to accept them, for he remarks (p. 457) 'the aspiration expressed in l. 544 of the Oxford MS. seems to have been adopted to hide a loss of ten lines that should have been preserved'. But there is a good deal to be said against their genuineness. They are extremely feeble and disjointed, and trail on like the work of a man who cannot make up his mind where to stop; they add nothing to the story, and they form just such a digression as the *Havelok* poet sedulously avoids:

þat is þe storie for to lenge,  
It wolde anuye þis fayre genge.

Again, however the body of the line may be enfeebled in a late MS., we should expect the rimes to be permanent. Yet these few lines contain two riming tags, *on fele manere*,

*in mani a kas*, which are quite unknown to *Havelok*, and which, with words like *comaundeme[n]t*, indicate a much increased French influence. Finally, the lines fail to link up with what follows them. For these reasons they are rather to be regarded as a late addition.

In the same fragment the MS. breaks off tantalizingly just when it seemed to solve the most corrupt passage in *Havelok*; see the note to ll. 546 ff. On the whole its critical value is slight.

#### OTHER EARLY VERSIONS OF THE STORY.

§ 5. **Geffrei Gaimar.** The story appears in two Anglo-French versions, both derived from an earlier source that is now lost; for each contains circumstances that are not mentioned in the other, though there is often a close agreement. The older of these is probably that contained in ll. 37–818 (ed. T. Wright) of the poem entitled *L'Estorie des Engles*, written by Geffrei Gaimar, apparently between the years 1147 and 1151.<sup>1</sup> In one place (l. 41) he cites Gildas as his authority, but no safe conclusion can be drawn from this vague reference. In another place (l. 758) he mentions a feast given by Havelok—‘*si cum nus dit la verai estoire*’—i. e. as the true history tells us. There are three MS. copies of Gaimar’s version of the story, of which perhaps the best is the Royal MS. (Bibl. Reg. 13. A. xxi) in the British Museum; the two others belong respectively to the Dean and Chapter of Durham (Cathedral MS. C. iv. 27) and to the Dean and Chapter of Lincoln (Cathedral MS. H. 18). The Royal MS. was printed in full by Mr. T. Wright for the Caxton Society in 1850. Portions of it have also been

<sup>1</sup> Lines 1–36 really belong to another book by Gaimar, viz. his translation of *The Brut*, from Geoffrey of Monmouth.

printed by M. Michel, in his *Chroniques Anglo-Normandes*, 8vo, Rouen, 1835; by Sir F. Madden, in his edition of *Havelok* (as above); and by Mr. Petrie in 1848, for which see *Monumenta Historica Britannica*, vol. i, p. 764. The latest complete edition of Gaimar is that by Sir T. Duffus Hardy and C. T. Martin in *Rerum Britannicarum Medii Aevi Scriptores*.<sup>1</sup>

§ 6. **Le Lai d'Havelok.** This Anglo-French version likewise belongs to the twelfth century, and gives a similar story, with some variations. There are two MS. copies, of which one belongs to the collection made by Sir T. Phillipps, and the other is known as the Arundel MS. (or the Norfolk MS.), and is preserved in the Heralds' College, where it is marked E. D. N. no. 14. It was printed in Sir F. Madden's edition of *Havelok*, pp. 105-146; by M. Michel, Paris, 1833; in the Appendix to T. Wright's edition of *Gaimar*; and by Hardy and Martin (as above) i. 290 ff.<sup>2</sup> A brief sketch of its contents is here subjoined.

The Britons made a lay concerning King Havelok, who is surnamed Cuaran. His father was Gunter, King of the Danes. Arthur crossed the sea, and invaded Denmark. Gunter perished by the treason of Hodulf, who gained the kingdom, and held it of Arthur. Gunter had a fine castle, where his wife and son were guarded, being committed to the protection of Grim. The child was but seven years old; but ever as he slept, an odorous flame issued from his mouth. Hodulf sought to kill him, but Grim prepared a ship, wherein he placed the queen and the child, and furnished it with provisions, and set sail from Denmark. On their voyage they encountered pirates ('out-laghes'), who killed them all after a hard fight, excepting Grim, who was an acquaintance of theirs, and Grim's wife and

<sup>1</sup> The Introduction gives a full description of the MSS., of which the Durham copy is the earliest in script and language. The second volume contains a translation of Gaimar and *Le Lai d'Havelok*.

<sup>2</sup> The less accessible Phillipps MS. is the earlier. The Arundel MS., f. 148 b, has: 'Athelwold auoit vne fille Goldeburgh, et il regna vi anz. Haueloc esposa meisme cele Goldeburgh, et regna iij. anz.'

children. Havelok also was saved. They at last arrived at the haven, afterwards named 'Grimesbi' from Grim. Grim there resumed his old trade, a fisherman's, and a town grew up round his hut, which was called Grimsby. The child grew up, and waxed strong. One day Grim said to him, 'Son, you will never thrive as a fisherman; take your brothers with you, and seek service amongst the King's servants'. He was soon well apparelled, and repaired with his two foster-brothers to Nicole [Lincoln]. Now at that time there was a king named Alsi, who ruled over all Nicole and Lindesie;<sup>1</sup> but the country southward was governed by another king, named Ekenbright, who had married Alsi's sister Orewen. These two had one only daughter, named Argentille. Ekenbright, falling ill, committed Argentille to the care of Alsi, till she should be of age to be married to the strongest man that could be found. At Ekenbright's death, Alsi reigned over both countries, holding his court at Nicole. Havelok, on his arrival there, was employed to carry water and cut wood, and to perform all menial offices requiring great strength. He was named Cuaran, which means—in the British language—a scullion. Argentille soon arrived at marriageable age, and Alsi determined to marry her to Cuaran, which would sufficiently fulfil her father's wish—Cuaran being confessedly the strongest man in those parts. To this marriage he compelled her to consent, hoping thereby to disgrace her for ever. Havelok was unwilling that his wife should perceive the marvellous flame, but soon forgot this, and ere long fell asleep. Then had Argentille a strange vision—that a savage bear and some foxes attacked Cuaran, but dogs and boars defended him. A boar having killed the bear, the foxes cried for quarter from Cuaran, who commanded them to be bound. Then he would have put to sea, but the sea rose so high that he was terrified. Next she beheld two lions, at seeing which she was frightened, and she and Cuaran climbed a tree to avoid them; but the lions submitted themselves to him, and called him their lord. Then a great cry was raised, whereat she awoke, and beheld the miraculous flame. 'Sir,' she exclaimed, 'you burn!' But he reassured her, and attempted to give an ordinary explanation of her dream. The next day, however, she again told her dream to a chamberlain, her friend, who said that he well knew a holy hermit who could explain it. The hermit explained to Argentille that Cuaran must be of royal lineage. 'He will be king,' he said, 'and you a queen. Ask him concerning his parentage. Remember also to repair to his native place.' On being questioned, Cuaran replied that

<sup>1</sup> The northern part of Lincolnshire is called *Lindsey*.

he was born at Grimsby; that Grim was his father, and Saburc his mother. 'Then let us go to Grimsby,' she replied. Accompanied by his two foster-brothers, they came to Grimsby; but Grim and Saburc were both dead. They found there, however, a daughter of Grim's, named Kelloc, who had married a tradesman of that town. Up to this time Havelok had not known his true parentage, but Kelloc thought it was now time to tell him, and said: 'Your father was Gunter, the King of the Danes, whom Hodulf slew. Hodulf obtained the kingdom as a grant from Arthur. Grim fled with you, and saved your life; but your mother perished at sea. Your name is HAVELOK. My husband will convey you to Denmark, where you must inquire for a lord named "Sigar l'estal"; and take with you my two brothers.' So Kelloc's husband conveyed them to Denmark, and advised Havelok to go to Sigar and show himself and his wife, as then he would be asked who his wife is. They went to the city of the seneschal, the before-named Sigar, where they craved a night's lodging, and were courteously entertained. But as they retired to a lodging for the night, six men attacked them, who had been smitten with the beauty of Argentille. Havelok defended himself with an axe which he found, and slew five, whereupon the sixth fled. Havelok and his party fled away for refuge to a monastery, which was soon attacked by the townsmen who had heard of the combat. Havelok *mounted the tower*, and defended himself bravely, *casting down a huge stone on his enemies*.<sup>1</sup> The news soon reached the ears of Sigar, who hastened to see what the uproar was about. Beholding Havelok fixedly, he called to mind the form and appearance of Gunter, and asked Havelok of his parentage. Havelok replied that Grim had told him he was by birth a Dane, and that his mother perished at sea; and ended by briefly relating his subsequent adventures. Then Sigar asked him his name. 'My name is Havelok,' he said, 'and my other name is Cuaran.' Then the seneschal took him home, and determined to watch for the miraculous flame, which he soon perceived, and was assured that Havelok was the true heir. Therefore he gathered a great host of his friends, and sent for the horn which none but the true heir could sound, promising a ring to any one who could blow it. When all had failed, it was given to Havelok, who blew it loud and long, and was joyfully recognized and acknowledged to be the true King. Then with a great army he attacked Hodulf

<sup>1</sup> Hence the obvious origin of the legend of 'Havelok's stone', and a local tradition about Grim's casting down stones from the tower of Grimsby church. See § 11.

the usurper, whom he slew with his own hand. Thus was Havelok made King of Denmark.

But after he had reigned four years, his wife incited him to return to England. With a great number of ships he sailed there, and arrived at Carleflure;<sup>1</sup> and sent messengers to Alsi, demanding the inheritance of Argentille. Alsi was indeed astonished at such a demand as coming from a scullion, and offered him battle. The hosts met at Theford,<sup>2</sup> and the battle endured till nightfall without a decisive result. But Argentille craftily advised her lord to support his dead men by stakes, to increase the apparent number of his army;<sup>3</sup> and the next day Alsi, deceived by this device, treated for peace, and yielded up to his former ward all the land, from Holland<sup>4</sup> to Gloucester. Alsi had been so sorely wounded that he lived but fifteen days longer. Thus was Havelok king over Lincoln and Lindsey, and reigned over them for twenty years. Such is the lay of Cuaran.

§ 7. **Robert Manning of Brunne.** It is convenient to consider next the translation of Peter Langtoft's Chronicle made by Robert Manning, of Brunne or Bourne in Lincolnshire, and completed in the year 1338. Manning is the well-known author of the poem entitled *Handlyng Synne*, written in 1303; and he was well acquainted with our poem, as he quotes it or imitates it at least twice; see notes to ll. 679, 819. The later portion of Manning's translation was printed at Oxford by T. Hearne in 1725, in 2 vols.; and the first part (British history) has since been edited, for the Master of the Rolls, by Dr. Furnivall. Now Langtoft mentions casually *Gountere le pere Hauelok, de Danays Ray clamez*, i.e. 'Gunter, father of Havelok,

<sup>1</sup> Possibly Saltfleet, suggests Mr. Haigh. Such, at least, is the position required by the circumstances.

<sup>2</sup> In the Durham MS. it is Tiedfort, i.e. Tetford, not far from Horn-castle, in Lincolnshire.

<sup>3</sup> This is an important parallel to a story told about Amleth (Hamlet) in the History by Saxo Grammaticus, bk. iv. 'He resorts to a device to increase the apparent number of his men. He puts stakes under some of the dead bodies of his comrades, to prop them up,' &c.—Gollancz, *Hamlet in Iceland*, p. xxviii.

<sup>4</sup> A name given to the south-east part of Lincolnshire.

called King of the Danes', which Gunter he identifies with the Danish invader Godrum, defeated by Alfred in 878. See the edition by T. Wright (Rolls Series, i. 318). When Manning comes to this passage, he translates the French line by *Hauelok fader he was, Gunter was his name*; where Hearne prints the former name as 'Hanelok'. Then follows the usual account, how Gunter (Godrum) made peace with Alfred, and submitted to be baptized, A.D. 878. After which we have the following interpolated passage, written by Manning on his own account. See ed. Hearne, i. 25:—

Bot I haf grete ferly þat I fynd no man,  
 Þat has written in story how Hauelok þis lond wan.  
 Noþer Gildas, no Bede, no Henry of Huntinton,  
 No William of Malmesbiri, ne Pers of Bridlynton,  
 Writes not in þer bokes of no kyng Athelwold,  
 Ne Goldeburgh his douhtere, ne Hauelok not of told,  
 Whilk tyme þe were kynges, long or now late,  
 Þei mak no menyng whan, no in what date.  
 Bot þat þise *lowed men vpon Inglish tellis*,  
 Right story can me not ken, þe certeynte what spellis.  
 Men sais in Lyncoln castelle ligges ȝit a stone,  
 Þat Hauelok kast wele forbi euerilkone.  
 & ȝit þe chapelle standes þer he weddid his wife,  
 Goldeburgh þe kynges douhter, *þat saw is ȝit rife*.  
 & of Gryme a fisshere *men redes ȝit in ryme*,  
 Þat he bigged Grymesby, Gryme þat ilk tyme.  
 Of alle stories of honoure, þat I haf þorgh souht,  
 I fynd þat no compiloure of him tellis ouht.  
 Sen I fynd non redy þat tellis of Hauelok kynde,  
 Turne we *to þat story þat we writen fynde*.

There cannot exist the smallest doubt that by the 'Ryme' here mentioned, 'that lowed men vpon Inglish tellis', the identical English romance, now before the reader, is referred to. We see also that, in 1338, the traditions respecting Havelok at Lincoln were so strongly preserved, as to point out various localities to which the story had affixed a name; and similar traditions connected with the legend, as we shall



find hereafter, existed also at Grimsby. The doubts expressed by the Chronicler, as to their authenticity, or the authority of the 'Ryme', are curious, but only of value so far as they prove that he was ignorant of the existence of a French romance on the subject, or of its reception in Gaimar's historical poem.

§ 8. **The Lambeth Interpolation.** On comparing the Lambeth MS. of Manning's translation, Sir F. Madden found that this passage had been omitted and replaced by a summary of the *Havelok* story, which is here printed after Madden's text. Obviously the interpolator had access to sources of which Manning knew nothing.

Forth wente Gounter & his folk al in to Denemark :  
 Sone fel ther hym vpon a werre styth & stark,  
 Thurgh a Breton kyng, th<sup>t</sup> out of Ingeland cam,  
 & asked (the) tribut of Denmark, th<sup>t</sup> Arthur whylom nam.  
 They wythseide hit schortly, and non wolde they zelde, 5  
 But rather they wolde dereyne hit wyth bataill y the felde.  
 Both partis on a day to felde come they stronge :  
 Desconfit were the Danes, Gounter his deth gan fonge.  
 When he was ded they schepe brynge al his blod to schame ;  
 But Gatferes doughter the kyng, *Eleyne* was hure name, 10  
 Was kyng Gounteres wyf, and had a child hem bytwene,  
 Wyth wham scheo scapede vnethe, al to the se with tene.  
 The child hym highte HAUELOK, th<sup>t</sup> was his moder dere ;  
 Scheo mette with Grym atte hauene, a wel god marinere. 14  
 He hure knew & highte hure wel to helpe hure with his might,  
 To brynge hure saf out of the lond wythinne th<sup>t</sup> ilke night.  
 When they come in myd se, a gret meschef gan falle :  
 They metten wyth a gret schip, lade wyth outlawes all.  
 Anon they fullen hem apon, & dide hem mikel peyne, 19  
 So th<sup>t</sup> wyth strengthe of their assaut ded was quene Eleyne.  
 But ȝyt ascapede from hem Grym, wyth Hauelok & other fyue,  
 & atte the hauene of Grymesby, ther they gon aryue.  
 Ther was brought forth child Hauelok, wyth Grym & his fere,  
 Right als hit hadde be ther owen, for other wyste men nere,  
 Til he was mykel & mighti, & man of mykel cost, 25  
 Th<sup>t</sup> for his grete sustinaunce nedly serue he most.  
 He tok leue of Grym & Seburc, as of his sire & dame,  
 And askede ther blessinge curteysly, ther was he nought to blame.

Thenne drow he forth northward, to kynges court Edelsie, 29  
 Th<sup>t</sup> held fro Humber to Rotland the kyngdam of Lyndesye.  
 Thys Edelsy of Breton kynde had Orewayn his sister bright  
 Maried to a noble kyng of Northfolk, Egelbright.  
 Holly for his kyngdam he held in his hand  
 Al the lond fro Colchestre right in til Holand.  
 Thys Egelbright th<sup>t</sup> was a Dane, & Orewayn the quene, 35  
 Hadden gete on Argill, a doughter, hem bytwene.  
 Sone then deyde Egelbright, and his wyf Orewayn,  
 & therfore was kyng Edelsye bothe joyful & fayn.  
 Anon their doughter & here Eyr, his nece dame Argill,  
 & al the kyngdam he tok in hande, al at his owene will. 40  
 Ther serued Hauelok as quistron, & was y-cald Coraunt,  
 He was ful mykel & hardy, & strong as a Geaunt.  
 He was bold curteys & fre, & fair & god of manere,  
 So th<sup>t</sup> alle folk hym louede th<sup>t</sup> anewest hym were.  
 But for couetise of desheraison of damysele Argill, 45  
 & for a chere th<sup>t</sup> the kyng sey scheo made Coraunt till,  
 He dide hem arraye ful symplely, & wedde togydere bothe ;—  
 For he ne rewarded desparagyng were manion ful wrothe.  
 A while they dwelt after in court, in ful pore degre ; 49  
 The schame & sorewe th<sup>t</sup> Argill hadde, hit was a deol to se.  
 Then seyde scheo til hure maister, ‘of whenne sire be 3e ?  
 Haue 3e no kyn ne frendes at hom, in 3oure contre ?  
 Leuer were me lyue in pore lyf, wythoute schame & tene,  
 Than in schame & sorewe lede the astat of quene.’  
 Thenne wente they forth to Grymesby, al by his wyues red, 55  
 & founde th<sup>t</sup> Grym & his wyf weren bothe ded.  
 But he fond ther on Aunger, Grymes cosyn hend,  
 To wham th<sup>t</sup> Grym & his wyf had teld word & ende,  
 How th<sup>t</sup> hit stod wyth Hauelok, in all manere degre,  
 & they hit hym telde, & conseilled to drawe til his contre, 60  
 Tasaye what grace he mighte fynde among his frendes there,  
 & they wolde ordeyne for their schipyng, and al th<sup>t</sup> hem nede  
 were.  
 When Aunger hadde y-schiped hem, they seilled forth ful swythe,  
 Ful-but in-til Denemark, wyth weder fair & lithe.  
 Ther fond he on sire Sykar, a man of gret pouste, 65  
 Th<sup>t</sup> hey styward somtyme was of al his fader fe.  
 Ful fayn was he of his comyng, & god help hym bihight,  
 To recouere his heritage of Edulf kyng & knyght.  
 Sone asembled they gret folk of his sibmen & frendes ;  
 Kyng Edulf gadered his power, & ageyn them wendes. 70  
 Desconfynt was ther kyng Edulf & al his grete bataill,  
 & so conquered Hauelok his heritage saunz faille.

Sone after he schep hym gret power in toward Ingelond,  
 His wyues heritage to wynne ne wolde he nought wonde.  
 Th<sup>t</sup> herde the kyng of Lyndeseye, he was come on th<sup>t</sup> cost, 75  
 & schop to fighte wyth hym sone, & gadered hym gret host.  
 But atte day of bataill Edelsy was desconfit,  
 & after, by tretys, gaf Argentill hure heritage al quit.  
 & for scheo was next of his blod, Hauelokes wyf so feyr,  
 He gaf hure Lyndesey after his day, & made hure his Eyr. 80  
 & atte last so byfel, th<sup>t</sup> vnder Hauelokes schelde  
 Al Northfolk & Lyndeseye holy of hym they helde.

MS. Lamb. 131, leaf 76.

### § 9. Relations of the chief versions of the Story.

The following table of the names assigned to the chief characters, which is adapted from Heyman, p. 16, shows at a glance that *Gaimar*, *Le Lai d'Havelok*, and the *Lambeth Interpolation* agree together against the English *Havelok*. Grim and Havelok are the only names common to all versions.

<i>Gaimar</i>	<i>Lai</i>	<i>Lambeth Interpolation</i>	<i>Havelok</i>
Adelbrict	Ekenbright	Egelbright	Athelwold
Edelsi	Alsi	Edelsi	Godrich
Gunter	Gunter	Gunter	Birkabeyn
Edulf, Odulf	Hodulf	Edulf	Godard
Sigar	Sigar	Sykar	Ubbe
Sebrug	Saburc	Seburc	Leue
Argentille	Argentille	Argill, Argentille	Goldeboru <sup>1</sup>

The relation of the French versions to each other was examined by M. Kupferschmidt in Böhmer's *Romanische Studien*, iv, pp. 411 ff. But Putnam first pointed out that *Gaimar*, the *Lai*, and the *Lambeth Interpolation* are all derived from a lost French version in rimed couplets. Heyman—who gives an excellent analysis—and Deutschbein agree in essentials with Putnam's results. It is scarcely possible to determine the relation of the French versions to the English poem; nor, on the evidence of a single

<sup>1</sup> Observe that the story known to Robert Manning had the names Athelwold and Goldeboru (see § 7).

complete manuscript, can the earlier history of the English poem be demonstrated.

§ 10. **Minor Versions.** Some dozen minor versions are discussed by Madden. One of these, from *Le Petit Bruit* by Rauf de Boun, a Lincolnshire man, bases on the English story, as the names show. Another from the prose *Brut d'Engleterre* is the subject of an interesting article by Brie in *Englische Studien*, vol. xxxv. 359 ff. Brie shows that this version, though it agrees in the main with the French story, borrows certain traits from the English, including the name Birkebeyn for Havelok's father. The rest are of little importance for our present purposes, as practically all represent the French, and not the English version of the story, in a more or less debased form.

§ 11. **Local traditions.** We find that Camden briefly alludes to the story in a contemptuous manner (p. 353; ed. 8vo, Lond. 1587); but Gervase Holles is far from being disposed to regard it as fabulous. 'In his MSS. collections for Lincolnshire' (says Sir F. Madden) 'preserved in MS. Harl. 6829, he thus speaks of the story we are examining<sup>1</sup> :—

And it will not be amisse, to say something concerning y<sup>e</sup> Common tradition of her first founder Grime, as y<sup>e</sup> inhabitants (with a Catholique faith) name him. The tradition is thus. *Grime* (say they) a poore Fisherman (as he was launching into y<sup>e</sup> Riuer for fish in his little boate vpon Humber) espyed not far from him another little boate, empty (as he might conceaue) which by y<sup>e</sup> fauour of y<sup>e</sup> wynde & tyde still approached nearer & nearer vnto him. He betakes him to his Oares, & meetes itt, wherein he founde onely a Childe wrapt in Swathing Clothes, purposely exposed (as it should seeme) to y<sup>e</sup> pittylesse [rage] of y<sup>e</sup> wilde & Wide Ocean. He, moued with pitty, takes itt home, & like a good foster-father carefully nourisht itt, & endeauoured to nourishe it in his owne occupation: but y<sup>e</sup> childe contrarily was wholly deuoted to exercises of Actiuity, & when he began to write man, to Martiall sports, & at length by

<sup>1</sup> 'His account has been printed in the *Topographer*, V. i. p. 241, sq. 8vo, 1789. We follow' (says Sir F. Madden) 'the MS. itself, p. 1.'

his Signall Valour obteyned such renowne, y<sup>t</sup> he marryed y<sup>e</sup> King of England's daughter, & last of all founde who was his true Father, & that he was Sonne to y<sup>e</sup> King of Denmarke; & for y<sup>e</sup> Comicke close of all, that *Haueloke* (for such was his name) exceedingly aduanced & enriched his Foster-father Grime, who thus enriched, builded a fayre Towne neare the place where Hauelocke was founde, & named it Grimesby. Thus say some: others differ a little in y<sup>e</sup> Circumstances, as namely, that Grime was not a Fisherman, but a Merchant, & that Hauelocke should be preferred to y<sup>e</sup> King's Kitchin, & there liue a longe tyme as a Scullion: but however y<sup>e</sup> Circumstances differ, they all agree in y<sup>e</sup> consequence, as concerning y<sup>e</sup> Towne's foundation, to which (sayth y<sup>e</sup> Story) Hauelocke y<sup>e</sup> Danish prince afterward graunted many immunities. This is y<sup>e</sup> famous Tradition concerning Grimsby w<sup>ch</sup> learned Mr. Cambden gives so little credit to, that he thinkes it onely *illis dignissima, qui anilibus fabulis noctem solent protrudere.*'

And a little farther on he makes the remark, 'that Hauelocke did sometymes reside in Grimsby, maybe gathered from a great blew Boundry-Stone, lying at y<sup>e</sup> East ende of Briggowgate, which retaines y<sup>e</sup> name of *Hauelock's-Stone* to this day. Agayne y<sup>e</sup> great Priuiledges & Immunities, that this Towne hath in Denmarke aboue any other in England (as freedome from Toll, & y<sup>e</sup> rest), may fairely induce a Beleife, that some preceding favour or good turne called on this remuneration. But lastly (which prooffe I take to be *instar omnium*) the Common Seale of y<sup>e</sup> Towne, & that a most auncient one,' &c.

§ 12. **The Grimsby seal.** The copy of this seal, as it appears in the present edition, is due to the courtesy of J. Hopkin, Esq., of Grimsby, whose description of it (first printed, in a slightly different form, in *Notes and Queries*, 2nd Series, vol. xi, p. 41; see also p. 216) is here reproduced (with some abridgement) from Professor Skeat's edition.

The ancient Town Seal of Grimsby is engraven on a circular piece of brass, not very thick, inscribed 'Sigillvm Communitatis

Grimebye'. Gryme ('Gryem') is represented as a man of gigantic stature, with comparatively short hair, a shaven chin and a moustache, holding in his right hand a drawn sword, and bearing on his left arm a circular shield with an ornate boss and rim. Between his feet is a conic object, possibly intended for a helmet, as it resembles the chapel-de-fer worn by William Rufus on his Great Seal. On the right hand of Gryme stands Haveloc ('Habloc').<sup>1</sup> Above Gryme is represented a hand, being emblematical of the hand of Providence by which Haveloc was preserved, and near the hand is the star which marks the point where the inscription begins and ends. Above Haveloc is represented a crown, and in his right hand is a battle-axe. In his left hand is a ring which he is presenting to Goldburgh ('Goldebvrgh'), who stands on the left side of Gryme, and whose right hand is held towards the Ring. Over her head is a Regal Diadem, and in her left hand is a Sceptre. Sir F. Madden states that it is certain that this seal is at least as old as the time of Edward I., and therefore contemporaneous with the MS., as the legend is written in a character which after the year 1300 fell into disuse.

§ 13. **Localization of the Story.** Lincoln and Grimsby are the centres of Havelok's activities; and the poet speaks familiarly of the former town, its bridge, ll. 875, 881, and its green, ll. 2828-9. The earliest French version is that of Gaimar, whose patroness, Constance FitzGilbert, was a Lincolnshire lady. Robert Manning, who first mentions the English story, and imitates lines from it, lived at Brunne (Bourne) in Lincolnshire. The local traditions mentioned by him and by Holles, with the Grimsby seal, point in the same direction. There, too, we should expect the strong Norse influence, and such grammatical forms as the rimes establish for the original draft of the poem. It is true that the extant MS. has probably passed through many copies, and no longer presents a pure dialect; but there is every reason to believe that *Havelok* was originally written in

<sup>1</sup> From a clear wax impression of this seal, Dr. Bradley points out that the letter hitherto read as *B* is really a combination of *U* and *E*. The combination is an unnatural one, and probably due to an after-thought. Perhaps after completing *U* the engraver found the space too short for the remaining letters.

Lincolnshire. If, then, it be admitted that the name Havelok is in itself a sufficient evidence of Celtic influence (see below, § 16), it is probable that this influence came from Cumberland rather than from Wales.

§ 14. *Date.* The date of the MS., which belongs to the early fourteenth century, gives a latter limit. The echoes of the poem in Robert Manning's *Handlyng Synne*<sup>1</sup> fix the date before 1303, in which year *Handlyng Synne* was written. In a letter to the *Athenaeum*, Feb. 23, 1889, Hales attempts to establish the earlier limit from internal evidence. He argues that Roxburgh first became a border fortress in 1296, and therefore could not well be referred to as marking the northern frontier before that date.<sup>2</sup> Again, the Parliament at Lincoln (l. 1178) must be the Parliament of 1301 (at which the Archbishop of York was present). And at l. 2521 there may be an allusion to the foundation of a Friary of Black Monks about 1280. For these and slighter reasons he would date the present poem about 1301.

The decisiveness of Hales's arguments, doubted at the time by Liebermann (*Deutsche Zeitschrift für Geschichtswissenschaft*, 1890, pp. 154 ff.), has been lessened by later research. In *Englische Studien*, vol. xxxii. 319 f., Van der Gaaf points out that there was a Parliament at Lincoln as early as 1226. Deutschbein, in a very interesting discussion of the date, pp. 159 ff., shows that Roxburgh came into English hands as early as 1174, in ransom for William of Scotland, and himself inclines to a date in the second half of the thirteenth century. The whole subject is one of

<sup>1</sup> See notes to ll. 679-80, 819-20. The whole question of imitation is difficult in Middle English romances which are full of conventional phrases. But Manning's special connexion with the *Havelok* story makes these lines fairly sure evidence of imitation.

<sup>2</sup> See ll. 139, 265.

great difficulty, and a most valuable contribution is made by Professor Skeat in his discussion of final *-e*.<sup>1</sup>

§ 15. 'If we were to accept the date as being about 1300, and the dialect as that of Lincolnshire, it would follow that the grammar of the *Lay* and that of the *Handlyng Synne* must be practically identical. But we are confronted by the obvious fact that they are nothing of the kind, nor could ever have been so. Compare, for example, ll. 1-100 with the ll. 5575-674 of *Handlyng Synne*, as given in *Specimens of English*, ed. Morris and Skeat, pp. 50-3. In ll. 1-100 of the *Lay* (omitting examples of final *-en*) there are at least 32 instances in which the scansion of the line is incomplete unless we suppose a final *-e* to be sounded (as e.g. in l. 10, we must read *purt-è*); and there are at least 66 lines with feminine rhymes, of which all but 10 involve a final *-e*. But in the 100 lines of *Handlyng Synne*, there are only 18 cases (not at the end of a line) where the scansion requires a final *-e*; and hardly 40 lines with true feminine rhymes, 6 of which involve no final *-e*. In other words, the *Lay* has 88 examples in which the final *-e* constitutes a syllable where Manning has but 52.<sup>2</sup> If we compare another 100 lines, we shall obtain similar results; and even if these calculations be somewhat inexact, the general conclusion is not much affected. The difference in grammatical usage is very clearly marked. It seems to follow that, if the two poems were written in the same dialect, the *Lay* must have been *originally* written at a considerably earlier date; and that it acquired additions and alterations in the process of transmission from one

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Schmidt, pp. 89-97.

<sup>2</sup> In 100 lines of *The Owl and Nightingale* (in Morris, *Specimens of English*) there are about 150 examples of final *-e*. But this is a Southern poem, and perhaps as early as 1250.



reciter to another. Compare, for example, the following lines from *Havelok* and from Manning's *Handlyng Synne*, as regards the treatment of final *-e* :—

All-e gret-en swiþ-e sor-e; *Hav.* 236.

But son-e ded-e hir-e fet-e; 316.

Þin-e cherl-es, þin-e hin-e; 620.

Grim-es son-es all-e þre; 1399.

But to þe por' boþ' mek' and kynde; *H. S.* 5692.

Þat þe por' man of hym had; 5730.

And þoght' gret wunder and seþen seyð; 5740.

Unto a cherch-e boþ' þey yede; 5777.

‘We can only conclude that the extant copy shows the poem in quite a late stage, with just a few interpolations in it to bring it up to date.<sup>1</sup> The first draft of the poem must surely have been composed earlier than 1300; but how much earlier it is impossible to say. That the dialect was, in the first instance, that of Lincolnshire, is consistent with the fact that we can still detect the characteristic suffix *-es* of the pres. s. indicative as occurring in fifteen unambiguous rhymes (306, 396, 597, 1359, 1443, 1693, 1781, 1851, 1913, 2105, 2323, 2341, 2392, 2573, 2983); and the pl. suffix *-e* at the end of ll. 1325, 2099, and 2583.’

§ 16. **Historical Basis of the Story.** In the French versions *Havelok* is called *Cuaran* (*Cuheran*, *Coraunt*); and *Cuaran*, which is a Celtic word meaning ‘a sock, a brogue of untanned leather or skin’, is the surname of a famous Viking, *Olaf Sictricson*, who was on the defeated side at *Brunanburh* in 937, and died in 981 (see *Dictionary of National Biography*). In *Englische Studien*, vol. iii. 533 ff., Storm first proved that *Havelok* is a form of the Celtic name *Abloc*, *Abloec*, &c., which is often substituted for the

<sup>1</sup> Lines 138, 139, 264, 265, can be omitted without injury to the sense. And l. 1176 has to be emended, in order to make ll. 1177–1180 fit in.

Norse name *Olaf-r*, OE. *Anlaf*. Whether they are phonetically equivalent is open to doubt, as M. Förster points out in *Anglia*, *Beiblatt*, vol. xiv, p. 13.

Hence until recently it has been assumed that the story of Havelok was the story of Olaf Sictricson, though the points of connexion were not very clear. Heyman, however, puts forward a new theory. He shows that the facts of Olaf's life have little in common with the events related in *Havelok*; and supposes that the deeds of King Swein, who became King of England in 1013, are really the basis of the *Havelok* tale, but have been fathered upon Olaf Sictricson. He considers further that in some points stories connected with Olaf Tryggvason, the conqueror at Maldon, have been fused into the lay. Quite independently, Deutschbein also denies anything more than a nominal connexion with Olaf Sictricson, and sees in the *Havelok* tale the deeds of Olaf's uncle Reginwald, again with some features from the life of Olaf Tryggvason.

If these divergent views point to any result, it is that the *Havelok* story corresponds to no history at all. Popular romances must not be taken too seriously, even when they contain historical names. Only two such names occur in the English story: Havelok, who on the evidence of other versions is identified with Olaf Sictricson, a tenth-century king; and his father Birkabeyn—Roger Hoveden's *Swerre Birkebain*, chief of the *Birkibeinar*,<sup>1</sup>—who became King of Norway in 1184. The peculiar parallelism of the main events of the story, the repeated happy coincidences which are of its essence, belong not to history, but to the story-book.

§ 17. **Legendary Elements.** To discuss all the analogues of the *Havelok* story would require a volume in itself, for it uses many of the stock themes of romance.

<sup>1</sup> The name means 'wearing leggings of birch-bark'.

The flame of fire issuing from Havelok's mouth as he lay asleep (ll. 591, 1256) reminds us of Servius Tullius, around whose infant head flames were seen to play in his slumbers. The birth-mark which discloses his rank at a critical moment, his visions of conquest, the descriptions of the games and festivals, all these have their analogues in many mediaeval romances. More characteristic features of the story are also met with elsewhere. In the Introduction to his *Hamlet in Iceland*, London, 1898, Professor Gollancz discusses the possible connexion between Hamlet and Havelok; and more recently R. Zenker, *Boeve-Amlethus*, Berlin and Leipzig, 1905, has considered the same point, and extended the comparison to the Beves Romance. Deutschbein claims kinship with the Celtic *Meriaduc Saga*; and there are many points of contact with French romances. It cannot, however, be said in any one case that a definite relation in essential incidents has been proved beyond doubt.

§ 18. **Metre.** The natural method of scansion followed by Professor Skeat is fully explained in his article on 'The Scansion of English Poetry', printed in the *Phil. Soc. Transactions* for 1908; and in his *Chaucer*, vol. vi, p. lxxxiv. As yet many points in the history of Anglo-French and Middle English metres remain controversial, and our knowledge is certainly not precise enough to decide such minute points as the order of words in the verse, or the omission and addition of unstressed syllables, against the authority of the single manuscript. Smoothness to a modern ear is not a sufficient defence for emendation, because it is not known what the poet's ideal of smoothness was, or to what extent he attained his aim in practice.

The poem is written in rimed couplets, with occasional larger groups of verses riming together, as for instance ll. 87-105. Alliteration, the native habit, is rare, though

it appears in a few phrases like *stark and strong*; *lef and loth*; *sory and sorful*; *felede his foos*. Each line contains four stresses. For the rest, where the text is sound in grammar and sense, it is safest to give the MS. the benefit of any doubt, and to allow such normal licences as inversion of the accent, and substitution of one or three syllables for the typical disyllabic foot.

§ 19. **The Rimes.** The study of rime-words is of great importance; for while the body of the line, especially in a popular tale, is subject to continual alterations, the rime-words are comparatively stable. This may be seen by comparing the text of the later Cambridge Fragments. Hence the importance of rimes for determining the original text and dialect of the poem.

Many couplets as they stand in the MS. do not rime. Sometimes we have to do with conventional rimes, as at ll. 21-2 *rym : fyn*. Sometimes scarcity of rime-words may account for the deficiency, as at ll. 1101-2 *shop : hok*. The remainder were once explained as assonances; but in early texts which rime carefully—and *Havelok* is such a text—assonance is only to be assumed in the last resort. In general, a false rime in *Havelok* indicates corruption. Scribes sometimes substitute an English for a Norse word or form, as in the instances pointed out in the notes to ll. 1037-8 and 1397-8; sometimes they write an English alternative form instead of the original riming form; sometimes they blunder hopelessly.

So whenever a pair of words give a defective rime, it is necessary to consider the possible alternatives. In ll. 1698-9, for instance, the MS. has *shewe : lowe*. The source of the first word, OE. *scēawian*, according as the diphthong is stressed on the first or second element, yields ME. *shēwe* or *shāwe*; and *shāwe* remains in the North, but

elsewhere becomes *shōwe*. In the same way OE. *hlāw* gives ME. *lāw* or *lōw*; but its by-form *hlāw* would give ME. *lēw*. Hence any of the rimes *schewe : lewe*; *shawe : lawe*; *showe : lowe* may have been in the original, as far as can be judged from this case. Again, ll. 2698-9 show *gres : is*; where *gres* has an alternative form *gras*, and *is* has an alternative Northern form *es*. Here we must choose the points of contact *gres : es*.

For inflexions and phonology, too, rimes are of the highest importance. But it is necessary to distinguish those which are decisive from those which are ambiguous. Thus in ll. 2282-3 *plattinde : gangande*, the rime might be restored by making both participles end in *-inde*, or *-ande*, or *-ende*, or *-ing*. The instance merely proves that the extant manuscript does not retain the original forms. But at ll. 1692-3 *nedes : fedes*, because *nedes* is the adverb, it is clear that the maker of the rime used the ending *-es* in the third person present indicative singular *fedes*. Or, to take a point of phonology, ll. 1924-5 *her : þer* are ambiguous, since the known alternative forms *har : þar* or *hor : þor* would rime perfectly. But in ll. 234-5 *sor : hor*, the Norse form *hor* (*har*) is proved, since *sor* (*sar*) < OE. *sār* can have no *e* forms.

§ 20. **Phonology.** With this help it is possible to deal with some points in the phonology of the original.

(1) OE. and ON. *ā* remains *ā* in the North, but becomes open *o* [*ō*] in the South and most of the Midlands. In *Havelok* both forms appear in the extant MS., *ō* predominating. But the rimes show *bāþe* (*bōþe*) at ll. 2595, 2936, riming with *raþe* < OE. *hrāþe*, which has *ā* by lengthening in ME., but never *o*. On the other hand OE. *swā* gives in ME. *swā* and *s(w)ō*, which latter, owing to the influence of *w*, has a by-form *s(w)ō* with close *ō*. This form

must be present in the rimes with ll. 713, 2739 *do* < OE. *dōn*, and with ll. 325, 2136, 2961 *to* < OE. *tō*. These instances are sufficient to prove that OE. *ā* had in some cases become *ȣ* in the dialect of the original. Hence presumably *Havelok* was written in a district where both *ā* and *ȣ* were possible, that is to say, in the North Midlands.

(2) OE. *ȝ* (umlaut of *ū*) remains in the South-west with the spelling *u*; appears as *ē* in the South-east; and as *ī* in the Midlands and North. Therefore the frequent rimes like ll. 587-8, 1253-4 *fir:schir* (OE. *fȝr, scīr*), and ll. 1379-80, 1419-20 *inne:sinne* (OE. *innan, synn*) are decisive, in the absence of conflicting evidence, for the North or Midlands.

(3) ME. *ō* has two values, open *ȣ* (the sound in *law*), and close *ȣ̄*, as in French *tôt*. Open *ȣ* normally derives from OE. or ON. *ā*, and *ȣ* lengthened in open syllables. Close *ȣ̄* derives from OE. *ō*; and the two sounds are so different that they can hardly rime together. Apparent instances in *Havelok* are common *so* and l. 1805 *two*, where the close sound is due to the influence of *w* as explained above under (1); and ll. 789-90 *hom:grom*, a difficult rime.

(4) In the same way ME. *ē* has two values, open *ē̄* and close *ē̄̄*, with sounds corresponding to *air* (roughly) and French *été*. Open *ē̄* normally corresponds to OE. (Mercian) *ǣ, ēa*, and *ē* lengthened in open syllables. Close *ē̄̄* corresponds to OE. (Mercian) *ē, ēo*. In *Havelok* the word *se* < OE. *sǣ*, 'sea' rimes close, e.g. at ll. 519, 553, 561, 581, 673, 719; as it does in other ME. texts which generally keep *ē̄* and *ē̄̄* apart. But in *Havelok* normal *ē̄* and *ē̄̄* commonly rime together, perhaps because in certain parts of the North and Midlands *ē̄̄* > *ē̄* before dental consonants *d, t, s, n, r, l*; see Bülbring, *Furnivall Miscellany*, p. 42. Observe

for instance ll. 11-12 *y-here : y-lere* ; ll. 244-5 *reden : leden* ; ll. 2084-5 *bede : rede* ; ll. 995-6 *clene : grenē*.

(5) Where a text has any claims to belong to the thirteenth century, it is worth noticing what evidence it contains for the lengthening of short vowels in open syllables. In the great majority of cases such vowels in *Havelok* rime only with themselves. There are only two clear indications of lengthening in Teutonic rime pairs : ll. 2594, 2937 *raþe < OE. hræþe* which rimes with *bāþe*. Further see the notes to ll. 55-6, 1311-12, and 2496-7.

§ 21. The Phonology of some Norse words. *Havelok* is saturated with Norse words. Indeed their number is so great as to be in itself evidence of composition in some stronghold of Norse influence, such as Lincolnshire is known to have been. Here we have indeed a mixed dialect. The poet uses at will a Norse flexional form like the plural *hend*, 'hands', and prefers Norse words where the English would pass as well for rime, e.g. ll. 240-1, *laten : graten* or ll. 1800-1, *coupe : loupe*, where the English *leten : greten*, *chepe : lepe* would, in form at least, have served. In many cases, as is shown in the Notes, English copyists have removed the Norse forms, often spoiling the rimes. A few general tests of Norse loan-words are here given, and the references must be sought in the Glossary.

(1) To Non-WS. *ē* (WS. *æ*), which becomes *ē* in ME., corresponds an ON. *ā*, which in ME. becomes *ȃ* in the South and South Midlands, but remains *ā* in the North.

Hence ON. *ār*, *wārum*, *hār* ('hair'), *lāta*, *grāta*, *rāða*, *rāð*, yield in the poem *ōr* (*āre*-), *wōre* (*wāre*), *hōr*, *lāte*, *grāte*, *rōþe*, *rāþ*, while the corresponding English words with *æ* or *ē* yield *ēr*, *wēre*, *hēr*, *lēte*, *grēte*, *rēden*, *rēd*, all of which occur in *Havelok*.

(2) To OE. *ā*, which yields in ME. *ā* or *ȃ* as above,

corresponds ON. *ei*. Hence ON. *ei*, *greifi*, *bleik-r*, *weik-r*, *-leik-r* (suffix), *leik-r*, *leika*, *svein-n*, *keisari*, *teit-r*, *beita*, *leita*, *greiða* appear as *ay*, *greyue*, *bleike*, *wayke*, (hende)-*leik*, *leyk*, *layke*, *sweyn*, *caysere*, *teyte*, *beite*, *leite*, *greyþe*, of which words *bleike* has a corresponding English form *blake*, 'white', in the poem, while *bon* corresponds to (Birki)þein.

(3) To OE. *ēa*, which yields in ME. *ē*, corresponds an ON. *au* (*ō*), which appears in ME. as *ou*, *ow*, (*ō*). Hence \*þauh (*þōh*), *auk* (*ōk*), *gaula*, *kaupa*, *laupa*, *rauta*, *blaut-r* appear as *þou(h)*, *ok*, *goulen*, *coupe*, *loupe*, *rowte*, *bloute*; besides which occur the English forms *þey(h)*, *ek*, *lepe*.

(4) OE. *k*+a front vowel yields in ME. *ch*, whereas ON. *k* remains unpalatalized. Hence ON. *kirkja*, *serk-r*, *kriki* give *kirke*, *serk*, *crice*. *Havelok* shows no instance of *chirche* < OE. *cirice*.

(5) In the same way ON. has *g*, where OE. has the palatalized sound in modern *bridge*. Hence, as the rimes prove, *rig* is ON. *hrygg-r*, not OE. *hrycg*, modern *ridge*; *leng* is ON. *lengja*, not OE. *lengān*.

Other divergent forms are *wil* < ON. *vill-r*, not OE. *wilde*; *sterne* < ON. *stjarna*, not OE. *steorra*; *brini* < ON. *brynja*, not OE. *byrne*. For further borrowings see the Glossary.

§ 22. **Inflexions. Nouns.** As regards the nouns employed, we may remark that the final *e* is almost always sounded in the oblique cases, and especially in the dative case; as in *nedè*, *stedè*, &c. (see ll. 86-105); *willè*, 85; *wisè*, 1713; *blissè*, 2187; *cricè*, 2450; cf. the adjectives *lessè*, 1830; *longè*, 2299; also the nominatives *rosè*, 2919; *newè*, 2974; and the genitives *herte*, 70; *mere*, 2478; with *-e* < OE. *-an*. In the plural, the final *e* is fully pronounced in adjectives: *allè*, 2; *hardè*, 143; *bleikè*, 470; *starkè*, 1015; &c.; and it is common in weak singulars such as (*þe*) *beste*,



87. Not only does the phrase *none kines*, of no kind, occur in ll. 861, 1140, but we find the unusual phrase *neuere kines*, of never a kind, in l. 2691; though *neuere* is here almost certainly an error for *none*. Among the numerals, we find not only *pre* (1399), but ON. *prinne*.

**Pronouns.** In the MS. the first personal pronoun occurs in many forms in the nominative, as *i*, *y*, *hi*, *ich*, *ic*, *hic*, and even *ihc*; the oblique cases take the form *me*. For the second person, we have *þu*, *þou*, in the nominative, and also *tu*, when preceded by *þat*, as in l. 2903. We may notice also *hijs* for *his*, 47; *he* for *they* (generally); *sho*, 112, *scho*, 126, *sche*, 1721, for *she*. The forms *she* and *sho* are explained in the New Eng. Dict. as different developments of OE. *sēo*, feminine article. Note the peculiar dual form *unker*, of you two, 1882; and the pl. *es*, 'them', for which see the Glossary. This *es* or *is* is possibly short for *his*, actually used in the accusative plural, though some equate it to the G. *sie*; see the two articles on †*His* in the New Eng. Dict. The most noteworthy possessive pronouns are *minè*, pl. 1365; *þinè*, pl. 620; *his* or *hise*, pl. *hisè*, 34; *urè*, 606; *youres*, 2801; *hirè*, 84, 2918, with which cf. the dat. sing. *hirè* of the personal pronoun, 300. *þis* is plural, and means *these*, in l. 1145; but in l. 606 it is short for *þis is*. As in other old English works, *men* is frequently an impersonal pronoun, answering to the French *on*, and is followed by a singular verb; as in *men ringes*, 390; *men seyth and suereth*, 647; *men fetes*, 2341; *men nam*, 900; *men birþe*, 2101; *men dos*, 2434; cf. *folk sau*, 2410; but there are a few instances of its use with a plural verb, as *men haueden*, 901, *men shulen*, 747. The former is the more usual construction.

**Verbs.** The infinitives of verbs rarely have *y-* prefixed; three examples are *y-here*, 11; *y-lere*, 12; *y-se*, 334. Nor

is the same prefix common before past participles ; yet we find *i-gret*, 163 ; *i-groten*, 285 ; and *i-maked*, 5, as well as *maked*, 23. ' Infinitives end commonly in *-en* or *-e*, as *riden*, 26, *y-lere*, 12 ; also in *-n*, as *don*, 117, *leyn*, 718 ; notice also forms like *flo*, 612 ; *slo*, 1364 ; *fle*, 1195. The present singular, 3rd person, of the indicative, ends both in *-es* or *-s*, and *-eth* or *-th*, the former being the more usual. Examples are *longes*, 396, 1443, *haldes*, 1382, *fedes*, 1693, *bes*, 1744, *comes*, 1767, *leues*, 1781, 2105, *glides*, 1851, *barnes*, 1913, *haues*, 1952, *etes*, 2036, *beres*, 2323, *fetes*, 2341, *bedes*, 2392, *ledes*, 2573, *strenes*, 2983 ; *dos*, 1913 ; also *eteth*, 672, *haueth*, 804, *bikenneth*, 1269, *suereth*, *dereth*, 647, 648 ; *lip*, 673, *doth*, 1876. The form of the 2nd person is *-est*, in *louest* (before a vowel), 1663 ; but it is commonly *-es*, as *haues*, 688, *etes*, 907, *getes*, 908, *slepes*, 1283, *weldes*, 1359 ; cf. *dos*, 2390, *slos*, 2706, *mis-gos*, 2707 ; and this still more marked in rime, as *wenes*, 598. The same ending is observable in the past tense, as in *dedes*, 2393, *reftes*, 2394, *feddes* and *claddes*, 2907. The AS. *meaht*, *miht*, answers to *maght*, 1348 ; cf. ll. 689, 852, 1219. The subjunctive mood shows the forms *bute þou gonge*, 690, *þat þu fonge*, 856, &c. ; cf. *bede*, 668. In the 3rd person, present tense, of the same mood, we have the *-e* fully pronounced, as in *shildè*, 16, *yeuè*, 22, *lesè*, 333, *leuè*, 334, *redè*, 687 ; and in l. 544 *wreken* should undoubtedly be *wrekè*, since the *-en* belongs to the plural, as in *moten*, 18. The plural of the indicative present commonly ends in *-en*, as, *we hauen*, 2798, *ye witen*, 2208, *þei taken*, 1833 ; or, very rarely, in *-eth*, as *ye bringeth*, 2425, *he* (they) *strangleth*, 2584. Sometimes the final *-n* is lost ; note *wone*, 1325, *to-deyle*, 2099, *binde*, 2583 (in rimes). The present tense has often a future signification, as in *eteth*, 672, *etes*, 907, *getes*, 908 ; and in *beth*, 1260, *bes*, 1744.

NOTE. The rimes show that the third person singular

in *-es* belongs to the original dialect of the poem (examine the examples). It was afterwards copied out in the south of England, by a scribe who frequently turned *-es* into *-eth*. The only examples at the end of a line are *suereth*, *dereth*, 647-8; instead of *sweres*, *deres*.

*Past tense.* Of the third person singular and plural of the past tense the following are selected examples. WEAK VERBS: *hauede*, 770, *sparede*, 898, *yemedè*, 975, *semedè*, 976, *sparkede*, 2144, *bankede*, 2189; pl. *loueden*, 955, *leykeden*, 954, *woundeden*, 2429, *stareden*, 1037, *yemedede*, 2276, *makeden*, 554, *sprauleden*, 475. Also *calde*, 2115, *gredde*, 2417, *herde*, 2410, *kepte*, 879, *fedde*, 786, *ledde*, 785, *spedde*, 756, *clapte*, 1814, *kiste*, 1279; *auhte*, 743, *lauhte*, 744, *bitauhte*, 2212; pl. *herden*, 150, *brenden*, 594, *kisten*, 2162, *ledden*, 1246. Compare the past participles *hosed*, 971, *mixed*, 2533, *parred*, 2439, *gadred*, 2577; *reft*, 1367, *keft*, 2005, *wend*, 2138, *hyd*, 1059; *told*, 1036, *sold*, 1638, *wrouht*, 1352. There are also at least three past participles in *-et*, as *spuset*, 1266, *slenget*, 1923, *grebet*, 2615; to which add MS. *weddeth*, *beddeth*, 1127; this *-et* or *-eth* is an AF. form of *-ed*. In l. 2057, *knawed* seems to represent the modern 'knowed'; see the note.

STRONG VERBS: third person singular, past tense, *bar*, 815, *bad*, 1415, *yaf* or *gaf*, 218, 315, *spak*, 2389, *kam*, 766 (spelt *cham*, 1873), *nam*, 900, *kneu*, 2468, *hew*, 2729, *lep*, 1777, *let* (spelt *leth*), 2651, *slep*, 1280, *wex*, 281; *drou*, 705, *for*, 2943, *low*, 903, *slow*, 1807, *hof*, 2750, *stod*, 986, *tok*, 751, *wok*, 2093; pl. *beden*, 2774, *youen* or *gouen*, 164, *comen*, 1017 (spelt *keme*, 1208), *nomen*, 2790 (spelt *neme*, 1207), *knewen*, 2149, *lopen*, 1896, *slepen*, 2128; *drowen*, 1837, *foren*, 2380, *lowen*, 1056, *slowen*, 2414, &c. By way of further examples, we may instance the singular forms *bigan*, 1357, *barw*, 2022, *karf*, 471, *swank*, 788, *warþ*, 1061, *shon*, 2144, *clef*, 2643, *sau*, 2410, *grop*, 1965, *drof*, 725, *shof*, 892, *fauth* (= *fauht*),

1990; pl. *bigunnen*, 1011, *sowen*, 1055, *gripen*, 1790, *driue* for *driuen*, 1966; also *bunden*, 2436, *schuten*, 2431 (also *schoten*, 1864, *shoten*, 1838), *leyen*, 2132, &c. Compare the past participles *boren*, 1878, *youen* or *yeuen*, 1643, *cumen*, 1436, *nomen*, 2265 (also *numen*, 2581), *laten*, 1925, *waxen*, 302, *drawen*, 1925, *slawen*, 2000. The two last become *drawe*, *slawe* in ll. 1802, 1803.

We should also observe the past tenses *spen* (i. e. *spende*), 1819; *stirt*, 812, *citte*, 942, *bere* (subj.), 974, *kipte*, 1050, *flow*, 2502; and the past participles *demd* for *demed*, 2488, *giue* for *giuen*, 2488, *henced*, 1429, *plat*, 2755.

*Imperative Mood.* Examples of the imperative mood singular, 2nd person, are *et*, *sit*, 925, *late*, 1376, *bringge*, 1381; in the plural, the usual ending is *-es*, as in *lipēs*, 2204, *comes*, 1798, *folwes*, 1885, *lokes*, 2292, *bes*, 2246, to which set belong *slos*, 2596, *dos*, 2592; but there are instances of the ending *-eth* also, as in *cometh*, 1885, *yeueþ*, 911, to which add *doth*, 2037, *goth*, 1780; MS. *herknet* (for *herkneth*), 1. Indeed, both forms occur in one line; as in *Cometh swiþe*, and *folwes me* (1885).

Of reflexive verbs, we meet with *me dremede*, 1284, *me haueth met*, 1285, *me þinkes*, 2169, *him hungrede*, 654, *him semede*, 1652, *him stondes*, 2983, *him rewede*, 503. The present participles, curiously enough, end mostly in *-inde*, as *fastinde*, 865, *grotinde*, 1390, *lauhwinde*, 946, *plattinde*, 2282, *starinde*, 508; but we also find *gangande*, 2283, *driuende*, 2702. Compare the noun *tīþande*, 2279, which is a Norse form, *tīðindi* (pl.) being the Icelandic for 'tidings'. The suffix *-ing* occurs as a noun-ending *only*, never in the present participle. Examples of it are *gretīng*, 166, *drepīng*, i. e. slaughter, 2684, *buttinge*, *skirmīng*, *wrastling*, *putting*, *harpīng*, *pipīng*, *redīng*, see ll. 2322-7; also *corūning*, 2948, *ioyīng*, 2949. Amongst the auxiliary verbs may be noted

the use of *cone*, 622, as the subjunctive form of *canst*; *we mone*, 840, answering to prov. E. *mun*, i.e. must. We should particularly observe the use of the comparatively rare verbs *birþ*, it behoves, pa. t. *birde*, it behoved, and *þurte*, he need; for which see the Glossary.

The prefix *to-* is employed in two senses, as explained in the Glossary, s. v. *To-*. In *to-brised*, *to-deyle*, &c., it is equivalent to the German *zer-* and Latin *dis-*; of its other and rarer use, wherein it answers to the German *zu-* and to the Gothic *du-*, there is but *one* instance, viz. in the word *to-yede*, 765, which signifies 'went to'; cf. Germ. *zugehen*, 'to go to', *zugang* (AS. *tōgang*), 'access', 'approach'. There are several instances of the peculiar syntax whereby the infinitive mood active partakes of a passive signification, as in *he made him kesten in feteres*, 'he caused him to be cast into fetters'; l. 81. It may be considered as a phrase in which we should *now* supply the word *men*, and we may interpret it by 'he caused [men] to cast him into fetters and to fasten him securely'; for in ll. 1784, 1785, the phrase is repeated in a less ambiguous form. See also l. 86. So also, in ll. 2611, 2612, we must consider *keste*, *late*, *sette*, to be in the infinitive mood. This construction is at once understood by comparing it with the German *er liess ihn binden*, he caused him to be bound. In l. 2352 appears the most unusual form *ilker*, written for *ilk here*, i.e. each of them. The word *þrie*, 730, answers to the ME. adverb *thrie*, thrice, but it must be an error, possibly for *yete*; *lives*, 509, is an adverb ending in *-es*, originally a genitive case. *Þus-gate* is, according to Dr. Morris, unknown to the Southern dialect; it occurs in ll. 785, 2419, 2586; cf. *hwilgat*, 836.

§ 23. **The Spelling.** The manuscript spelling appears, at first sight, to be of a very lawless character, but is easily understood in the light of Professor Skeat's discovery (in

1897) that many of our earlier MSS., especially those of the thirteenth century, abound with spellings which can only be understood rightly when we observe that the scribe was of Norman birth, and more accustomed to the spelling of Anglo-French than to that of the native language of the country, which he had acquired with some difficulty, and could not always correctly pronounce. This curious phenomenon, due to the resolute attempt on the part of the Norman to acquire English, is fully explained in Professor Skeat's paper on 'The Proverbs of Alfred', read on May 7, 1897, and printed in the Transactions of the Philological Society for that year (p. 399). See also the canons in an Appendix to 'Notes on English Etymology', p. 471. With this clue, the spelling of our MS. becomes perfectly intelligible, and the English consonants are so easily recovered, that it seems convenient to restore the usual Middle-English spelling in a number of instances, and to relegate the Anglo-French spellings of the MS. to the bottom of the page, where *every* variation between the printed text and the MS. is carefully recorded, according to the notice at the bottom of p. 1. The correspondences between the AF. and ME. spellings are easily tabulated.

#### MS. SPELLINGS REMOVED TO THE FOOT-NOTES.

(1) *g* occasionally appears as *gh* in *ghod*, 255; *bringhe*, 65; *þinghe*, 66.

(2) *h* is omitted in *aueden*, 163; *auelok*, 503; &c. Conversely *h* is added inorganically in *her*, 15; *holde*, 30; *hayse*, 59; &c.

(3) *hw* frequently appears as *w* in *Wo*, 4; *Wil*, 6; *with*, 48; &c.

(4) *-ht*, commonly written *ht* or *ȝt* in ME., appears as :—*ht* very rarely, e. g. *Riht*, 1826.

*th* commonly, e. g. *brouth*, 84; *nouth*, 149; &c.

*þ* is not used in this value.<sup>1</sup>

*cht* in *mouchte*, 147 (*þouthte*, 1073, may be a slip).

*cth* in *micth*, 35; *knicth*, 77, 80; *ricth*, 78; &c.

*ct* in *bitaucte*, 206; *awcte*, 207; *mowcte*, 210; &c.

*t* in *browt*, 58; *nowt*, 123; *knit*, 2427; &c.

(5) *sh* as *s* in *sal*, 628; *same*, 1941; *sule*, 2419; &c., and in *fleys*, 216, *neys*, 217.

(6) *t* as *th* in *with*, 48; *woth*, 213; *leth*, 252; *neth*, 808; &c.

(7) *th* as *t* finally in *Herknet*, 1; *wit*, 19, 52, 113; &c.

(8) *u* as *w* in *Hw*, 93; &c., and, with loss of *h*, as *w*, 120; &c. Note the MS. in l. 288.

(9) *wu* appears as *w* in *wman*, 174, 281; *swngen*, 226; *wrþe*, 434; *wnden*, 546; *wlf*, 573.

There are also a great many careless spellings, the commonest of which is the omission of a final consonant, here enclosed in brackets, e. g. *hel[d]*, 109; *gol[d]*, 357; *forthwar[d]*, 731; *lon[d]*, 340; *we[l]*, 115, 287, 392; *þe[r]*, 142, 476, 639; *bes[t]*, 354.

Less common is the omission of a medial consonant, as in *k[n]aue*, 481; *b[r]igge*, 881; *goldebo[r]w*, 1103.

Confusion between letters of similar form occurs in *kayn* for *þayn*,<sup>2</sup> 31, 1327; and in *Ke* for *He* at the beginning of ll. 86, 87.

A certain number of the spellings consigned to the footnotes represent genuine English forms: such are *drinchen*, 553; *dreinchen*, 561, with common raising of the stem vowel; *wilte*, 528, 1135; *þenkeste*, 578, with normal weakening of unstressed *u* to *e*; *may(h)t*, 641, 689, 845, 852, &c. Very likely here belong regular *eueril-del*, which seems to show an assimilation; and common *an* for *and*.

<sup>1</sup> The MS. has *rithe*, not *ripe*, at l. 1201.

<sup>2</sup> On confusion of *k*:*þ* see Zupitza, *Anglia*, vol. iii. 375.

## MS. SPELLINGS RETAINED.

(1) *qu* for OE. *hw* is a common spelling in the North and Midlands, and points to strong aspiration. Examples are *qui*, 1650; *qual*, 753; *Quanne*, 134, 162; &c.

(2) *r* strongly trilled is indicated in the spellings *boren*: *koren*, 1878-9; *arum*: *harum*, 1982-3, 2408-9.

(3) *ũ* in the neighbourhood of letters of similar form like *m*, *n*, *u*, is written *o* for the sake of distinctness. Hence *gome*: *trome*, 7-8, represent OE. *gūma*, *trūma*; and *wone*: *sone*, 246-7, 1325-6, represent OE. *wūnian*, *sūnu*. In ll. 2580-1, *comen*: *numen*, both representations are found. This spelling first becomes common in the second half of the thirteenth century; see Napier, *History of the Holy Rood-tree*, E. E. T. S., 103, p. 85. The pronunciation remains [*ũ*].

(4) *ū* appears sometimes as *u* (*w*), sometimes as *ou* (*ow*), the French spelling. The riming pairs often show both forms, e. g. *mouth*: *suth*, 433-4; *down*: *tun*, 1630-1; *crus*: *hous*, 1966-7; *wounde*: *grunde*, 1978-9. This spelling hardly becomes general till the fourteenth century (see Napier, *loc. cit.*), and the pronunciation is of course always [*ū*].

## NOTE.

The following abbreviations are used in the foot-notes:—

*E.* = Ellis, 'Early English Pronunciation', London, 1869, Part ii, p. 470.

*G.* = Garnett; see E. E. T. S. edn., 1868, pp. liv f.

*H.* = Holthausen; the references are to Holthausen's *first* edition (1901), not the *second* (1910).

*K.* = Kölbing; see above, p. vii.

*Mb.* = Morsbach; see above, p. vii.

*Z.* = Zupitza; see above, p. vii.



# INCIPIT VITA HAUELOK

QUONDAM

## REX ANGLIE ET DENEMARCHIE

HERKNETH to me, gode men, [Fol. 204, col. 1.]

Wiues, maydnes, and alle men,  
Of a tale ich you wil telle,  
Hwo-so it wile here, and þer-to duelle.

þe tale of Hauelok is i-maked; 5  
Hwil he was litel, he yedeþ ful naked.

Hauelok was a ful god gome,  
He was ful god in eueri trome,  
He was þe wihtest man at nede

þat þurte rideþ on ani stede. 10

þat ye mowen nou y-here,  
And þe tale ye mowen y-lere.

At þe biginning of vre tale,  
Fil me a cuppe of ful god ale;  
And [y] wilþe drinken, er y spelle, 15

þat Crist vs shilde alle fro helle!

Krist late vs euere so to do  
þat we moten comen him to;

And, with-þat it mote ben so,

[Wherever corrected forms are given in the text, the exact forms in the MS. are quoted in the footnotes.]

- |                      |   |                             |
|----------------------|---|-----------------------------|
| 1. Herknet.          | 3. tale þat ich (þat is <i>superfluous</i> ); wile. | 4. Wo.                      |
| 5. is of hauelok.    | 6. Wil.   | 9. wicteste.                |
| 15. I supply y; her. | 17. heuere so for to.                               | 13. biginig ( <i>sic</i> ). |
|                      |   | 19. wit.                    |

*Benedicamus domino !*

20

Here y schal biginnen a rym,

Krist us yeue wel god fyn !

The rym is maked of Hauelok,

A stalworþi man *in* a flok ;

He was þe [wihtest] man at nede

25

þat may riden on ani stede.

**I**T was a king bi are dawes,

þat *in* his time werę gode lawes ;

He dede maken, and ful wel holden ;

Him louęde yung, him louęden olde,

30

Erl and barun, dreng and thayn,

Kniht, [and] bondeman, and swain,

Wydues, maydnes, prestes and clerkes,

And al for hise gode werkes.

He louęde god with al his miht,

35

And holi kirke, and soth, and riht ;

Riht-wise men he louede alle,

And oueral made hem forto calle ;

Wreieręs and robberęs made he falle,

And hated hem so man doth galle ;

40

Vtlawes and theues made he bynde,

Alle that he mihte fynde,

And heye hengen on galwe-tre ;

For hem ne yede gold ne fe.

In þat time a man þat bore

45

[Wel fifty pund, y wot, or more,]

Of rede gold up-on his bac,

[Fol. 204, col. 2.]

25. stalworþeste (*read* wihtest, *as in* l. 9). 29. an. 30.  
 Hym ; louede holde. 31. kayn (!). 32. Knict. 35. micth.  
 36. ant rich. 37. Rirth (!). 39. wrobberes (!). 42.  
 micthe. 46. *Supplied from conjecture ; cf. ll. 653, 787.*  
 47. red ; hijs.

In a male hwit or blac,  
 Ne funde he non þat him misseyde,  
 N[e] hond on [him] with iuele leyde.

50

þanne mihte chapmen fare  
 þurhut Englund with here ware,  
 And baldelike beye and sellen,  
 Oueral þer he wilen dwellen,

In gode burwes, and þer-fram

55

Ne funden he non þat dede hem sham,  
 þat he ne weren to sorwe brouht,  
 And pouere maked, and browht to nouht.  
 þanne was Englund at ayse;

5 Michel was swich a king to preyse,

60

þat held so Englund in grith!

Krist of heuene was him with.

He was Englonde's blome;

Was non so bold lond to rome,

þat durste upon his [menie] bringe

65

Hunger, ne [othere] wicke þinge.

Hwan he felede hise foos,

He made hem lurken, and crepen in wros:

þei hidden hem alle, and helden hem stille,

And diden al his herte wille.

70

Riht he louede of alle þinge,

To wronge might him no man bringe,

Ne for siluer, ne for gold:—

So was he his soule hold.

To þe faderles was he rath,

75

48. with.

50. N with iuele on hond leyde; *but see* l. 994.

51. micthe.  
 sone); brouth.

52. þuruth; wit.

57. weren sone to (*omit*

58. An; browt; nouth.

59. athayse (*sic*).

61. englund.  
*read* othere); þinghe.

65. *I supply* menie; bringhe.

66. here (*but*

69. þe (*for* þei).

71. Ricth.

Hwo-so dede hem wrong or lath,  
 Were it clerc, or were it kniht,  
 He dede hem sone to hauen riht;  
 And hwo-[so] dide widuen wrong,  
 Were he neure kniht so strong 80  
 þat he ne made him sone kesten  
 In feteres, and ful faste festen;  
 And hwo-so dide maydne shame  
 Of hire bodi, or brouht *in* blame,  
 Bute it were bi hire wille, 85  
 He made him sone of limes spille.  
 He was þe beste kniht at nede  
 þat euere mihte riden on stede,  
 Or wepne wagge, or folc vt lede;  
 Of kniht ne hauede he neuere drede, 90  
 þat he ne sprong forth so sparke of glede,  
 And lete him [knaue] of hisē hand-dede,

[Fol. 204 b, col. 1.]

Hu he coupe with wepne spede;  
 And oþer he refte him hors or wede,  
 Or made him sone handes sprede, 95  
 And 'louerd, *merci!*' loude grede.  
 He was large, and no wiht gnede;  
 Hauede he [neure] so god brede,  
 Ne on his bord *non* so god shrede,  
 þat he ne wolde þorwith fede 100  
 Poure þat on fote yede;  
 Forto hauen of him þe mede  
 þat for vs wolde on rode blede,

- |                           |                            |                    |               |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|--------------------|---------------|
| 76. Wo.                   | 77. knieth.                | 78. rieth.         | 79. wo; didē. |
| 80. knieth.               | 82. And in feteres ful.    | 83. wo.            | 84. brouth.   |
| 86. Ke (!).               | 87. Ke waste; knieth.      | 88. heuere micthe. | 90.           |
| knith.                    | 92. <i>I supply</i> knawe. | 93. Hw.            | 97. wicth.    |
| non ( <i>read</i> neure). | 99. ñ ( <i>for non</i> ).  | 100. þorwit.       | 98.           |

Crist, that al kan wisse and rede  
 þat euere woneth *in* ani þede. 105

¶ Þe king was hoten Apelwold,  
 Of word, of wepne he was bold;  
 In Engeland was neure kniht,  
 þat betere held þe lond to riht.  
 Of his bodi ne hauēde he eyr 110  
 Bute a mayden swiþe fayr,  
 þat was so yung þat sho ne couþe  
 Gon on fote, ne speke with mouþe.  
 þan him tok an iuel strong,  
 þat he wel wiste, and under-fong, 115  
 þat his deth was comen him on:  
 And seyde, 'Crist, hwat shal y don?  
 Louerd, hwat shal me to rede?  
 I wot ful wel ich haue mi mede.  
 Hu shal nou mi douhter fare? 120  
 Of hire haue ich michel kare;  
 Sho is mikel in mi þouht,  
 Of me self is me riht nowht.  
 No selcouth is, þouh me be wo;  
 Sho ne kan speke, ne sho kan go. 125  
 Yif scho couþe on horse ride,  
 And a thousand men bi hire syde;  
 And sho werē comen in-til elde,  
 And Engeland sho couþe welde;  
 And don of hem [þat] hire werē queme, 130  
 And hire bodi couþe yeme,

108. knieth.	109. hel; rieth.	113. wit.	115. we(!);
fong; <i>see</i> note.	117. wat.	118. wat.	119. woth.
120. W (= Hw = Hu).	122. þouth.	123. rith nowt.	124.
þou.	127. <i>Perhaps omit</i> And (H.);	thousande.	128. helde.
130. don hem of þar; (read þat G.).	131. An.		

Ne wolde me neuere iuele like,  
 Ne þouh ich were *in* heuene-rike!

QUAUNE he hauede þis pleinte maked,  
 Þer-after stronglike [he] quaked. 135

He sende writes sone on-on

After his erles euere-ich on; [Fol. 204 b, col. 2.]

And after his̅e baruns, riche and poure,

Fro Rokesburw al into Douere,

That he shulden comen swiþe 140

Til him, that was ful vnblife,

To þat stede þer he lay

In harde bondes, niht and day.

He was so faste with yuel fest,

þat he ne mouhte hauen no rest; 145

He ne mouhte no mete ete,

Ne he ne mouhte no lyþe gete;

Ne non of his iuel þat coupe red;

Of him ne was nouht buten ded.

ALLE þat þe writes herden 150

Sorful and sori til him ferden;

He wrungen hondes, and wepen sore,

And yerne preyden Cristes ore,

þat he [wolde] turnen him

Vt of þat yuel þat was so grim! 155

þanne he weren comen alle

Bifor þe king into the halle,

At Winchestre þer he lay :

133. Me þou; riche; (*cf.* ll. 2400, 2804). 142. þe (!). 143.  
 niht. 144. wit. 145, 146. mouthe. 146. hete.  
 147. mouchte. 149. nouth. 151. an. 153. hore.  
 154. I *supply* wolde.

'Welcome,' he seyde, 'be ye ay!  
 Ful michel þank kan [y] yow 160  
 That ye ařen comen to me now!'

QUAUNE he weren alle set,  
 And þe king hauēden i-gret,  
 He greten, and gouleden, and gouen hem ille,  
 And he bad hem allē ben stille; 165  
 And seyde, 'þat greting helpeth nouht,  
 For al to dede am ich brouht.  
 Butē nou ye sen þat i shal deye,  
 Nou ich willē you alle preye  
 Of mi douhter þat shal be 170  
 Yure leuēdi after me,  
 Hwo may yemen hire so longe,  
 Bopen hire and Engelonde,  
 Til þat she wuman [be] of elde,  
 And þat she mowe [hir] yemen and welde?' 175  
 He ansuerēden, and seyden an-on,  
 Bi [Iesu] Crist and bi seint Ion,  
 That þerl Godrigh of Cornwayle  
 Was trewe man, with-uten faile;  
 Wis man of red, wis man of dede, 180  
 And men hauēden of him mikel drede.  
 'He may alþer-best hire yeme, [Fol. 205, col. 1.]  
 Til þat she mowe wel ben quene.'

þ<sup>E</sup> king was payed of that rede;  
 A wel fair cloth bringen he dede, 185  
 And þer-on leyde þe messebok,

163. aueden.	166. nouth.	167. brouth.	168. nov.
170. douthther.	172. Wo.	174. wman; <i>supply</i> be (Z.);	
helde.	175. þa; <i>supply</i> hir (H.).	177. <i>Supply</i> Iesu (E.).	
179. wit.	182. hire alþer-best.	184. Rede.	185. wol.

þe caliz, and þe pateyn ok,  
 þe corporaus, þe messe-gere;  
 þer-on he garte þe erl suere,  
 þat he sholde yemen hire wel, 190  
 With-uten lac, with-uten tel,  
 Til þat she were tuelf winter old,  
 And of speche were bold;  
 And þat she coupe of curteysye  
 [Don,] and speken of luue-drurye; 195  
 And til þat she louen mouhte  
 Hwom so hire to gode thouhte;  
 And þat he shulde hire yeue  
 þe [hexte] man þat mihte liue,  
 þe beste, fayreste, the strangest ok:— 200  
 þat dede he him sweren on þe bok.  
 And þanne shulde he Engelond  
 Al bitechen in-to hire hond.

QUAAVNE þat was sworn on [þis] wise,  
 þe king dede þe mayden arise, 205  
 And þe erl hire bitauhte,  
 And al the lond he euere awhte  
 [Of] Engelonde, eueri del;  
 And preide, he shulde yeme hire wel.

þE king ne mowhte don no more, 210  
 But yerne preyede Godes ore;  
 And dede him hoslen wel and shriue

191. wit. 192. For tuelf *perhaps read* twenti; see l. 259 (*if so, omit þat*); hold. 194. covpe. 195. Gon (*read* Don).  
 196. mithe(!); see l. 257. 197. Wom; thoucte. 199. beste (*read* hexte, as in l. 1080); micthe. 204. Ouanne(!); his (*read* þis). 206. bitauhte. 207. awcte. 208. I supply Of. 210. mowcte.



I wot, fif hundred sipe and fue;  
 And ofte dede him sore swinge,  
 And with hondes smerte dinge; 215  
 So þat þe blod ran of his fleysh,  
 þat tendre was, and swiþe neysh.  
 He made his quiste swiþe wel,  
 And sone gaf it euere-ilk del.  
 Hwan it was gouen, ne mihte men finde 220  
 So mikel men mihte him in winde,  
 Of his in arke, ne in chiste,  
 In Engeland, þat noman wiste:  
 For al was youen, faire and wel,  
 þat him was leued no catel. 225

**P**AUNE he hauēde ben ofte swungen,  
 Ofte shriuen, and ofte dungen, [Fol. 205, col. 2.]  
 ‘*In manus tuas,*’ loude he seyde,  
 Er þat he þe speche leyde;  
 To Iesu Crist bigan to calle, 230  
 And deyēde biforn his heymen alle.  
 þan he was ded, þerē mihte men se  
 þe meste sorwe that mihte be;  
 þer was sobbing, siking, and sor,  
 Handes wringing, and drawing bi hor. 235  
 Alle greten swiþe sore,  
 Riche and poure þat þerē wore;  
 And mikel sorwe hauēden alle,  
 Leuēdyes in boure, knihtes in halle.

213. woth; sipes.      214. An.      215. wit.      216. fleys.  
 217. neys.      218, 219. *MS. transposes.*      220. Wan; michte.  
 221. michte.      226. swngen.      229. Her.      232, 233. michte.  
 238. An.      239. knictes.

**Q**UAN þat sorwe was somdel laten, 240  
 And he hauēden longe graten,  
 Belles deden he sone ringen,  
 Monkes and prestes messe singen;  
 And sauteres deden he manie reden,  
 þat God self shulde his soule leden 245  
 Into heuene, biforn his sone,  
 And þer with-uten ende wone.  
 þan he was to þe erþe brouht,  
 þe riche erl ne foryat nouht,  
 þat he ne dede al Engeland 250  
 Sone sayse intil his hond;  
 And in þe castels let he do  
 þe knihtes he mihte tristen to;  
 And alle þe Englis dede he sweren,  
 þat he shulden him god fey beren; 255  
 He yaf allē men þat god [him] þouhte,  
 Liuen and deyen til þat [he] mouhte,  
 Til þat þe kinges dowhter wore  
 Tuenti winter old, and more.

**P**AVNE he hauēde taken þis oth 260  
 Of erles, baruns, lef and loth,  
 Of knihtes, cherles, fre and þewe,  
 Iustises dede he maken newe,  
 Al Engeland to faren þorw,  
 Fro Douere into Rokesborw. 265  
 Schiréues he sette, bedels, and greyues,  
 Grith-sergeans, with longe gleyues,

247. wit uten hende.	248. brouht.	249. nouth.	252. leth.
253. knictes; michte.	254. swere (see l. 255).	255. ghod.	
256. I supply him; þoucte.	257. him (read he); moucte.	258.	
dowter.	259. hold.	262. knictes.	267. wit.

To yemen wilde wodes and papes  
 Fro wicke men, that wolde don scapes;  
 And forto hauen alle at his cri, 270  
 At his wille, at his merci;  
 þat non him durste ben ageyn, [Fol. 205 b, col. 1.]  
 Erl ne barun, kniht ne sweyn.  
 Wislike, for sothe, was him wel  
 Of folc, of wepne, of catel. 275  
 Soplike, in a litel þrawe,  
 Al Engeland of him stod awe;  
 Al Engeland was of him adrad  
 So is þe beste fro þe gad.

**P**E kinges douhter gan [to] priue, 280  
 And wex þe fayrest wuman on liue.  
 Of alle þewes was she wis,  
 þat gode weren, and of pris.  
 þe mayden Goldeboru was hoten;  
 For hire was mani a ter igroten. 285

**Q**UAAVE þe Erl Godrich him herde  
 Of þat mayden, hu wel she ferde;  
 Hu wis sho was, hu chaste, hu fayr,  
 And þat sho was þe rihte eyr  
 Of Engeland, of al þe rike:— 290  
 þo bigan Godrich to sike,  
 And seyde, 'Hweþer she sholde be  
 Quen and leuēdi ouer me?  
 Hweþer sho sholde al Engeland,

272. durste *ben* him. 273. knict. 274. soth. 276.  
 lite (!). 278. adred, *altered to* adrad. 279. his. 280. douthter  
 bigan; *read* douhter gan to H. 281. wman. 282. w (!); *for* was.  
 287. hw we he ferde (!). 288. Hw; w (*for 2nd* hu); hw. 289.  
 rithe. 292. weþer.

And me, and mine, hauen *in* hire hond? 295  
 Dapeit hwo it hire thaue!  
 Shal sho it neuere more haue.  
 Sholde ic yeue a fol, a þerne,  
 Engeland, þouh sho it yerne?  
 Dapeit hwo it hire yeue 300  
 Euere-more hwil i liue!  
 Sho is waxen al to prud,  
 For gode metes, and noble shrud,  
 Þat ic haue youen hire to ofte;  
 Ic haue yemed hire to softe. 305  
 Shal it nouht ben als sho þenkes:  
 "Hoþe maketh fol *man* ofte blenkes."  
 Ich haue a sone, a ful fayr knaue,  
 He shal Engeland al haue.  
 He shal [ben] king, he shal ben sire, 310  
 So brouke i euere mi blake swire!'

**H**WAN þis trayson was al þouht,  
 Of his oth ne was him nouht.  
 He let his oth al ouer-ga,  
 Þerof ne yaf he nouht a stra; 315  
 But sone dede hire fete,  
 Er he wolde eten ani mete, [Fol. 205 b, col. 2.]  
 Fro Winchéstre, þer sho was,  
 Also a wicke traytúr Iudas;  
 And dede leden hire to Doure, 320  
 Þat standeth on þe seis oure;  
 And þerinne dede hire fede  
 Pourelike in feble wede.

299. þou.	302. alto.	304. hic; offte.	305. Hic.
306. nouth.	310. <i>I supply</i> ben.	312. þouth.	313.
nouth.	315. nouth.	317. heten.	322. þerhinne.

þe castel dede he yemen so  
 þat non ne mihte comen hire to 325  
 Of hire frend, with [hir] to speken,  
 þat euere mihte hire bale wreken.

OF Goldeboru shul we nou laten,  
 þat nouht ne blinneth forto graten  
 þer sho liggeth in prisoun : 330  
 Iesu Crist, that Lazarun  
 To liue brouhte fro dede bondes,  
 He lese hire with hise hondes ;  
 And leue sho mo[te] him y-se  
 Heye hangen on galwe-tre, 335  
 þat hire haued in sorwe brouht,  
 So as sho ne misdede nouht !

SAY we nou forth in ure spelþ !  
 In þat time, so it bifelleþ,  
 Was in þe lond of Denemark 340  
 A riche king, and swyþe stark.  
 þe name of him was Birkabeyn,  
 He hauede mani kniht and sueyn ,  
 He was fayr man, and [swipe] wiht,  
 Of bodi he was þe beste kniht 345  
 þat euere mihte leden ut here,  
 Or stede on ride, or handlen spere.  
 þre children hauede he bi his wif,  
 He hem louede so his lif.

325. michte. 327. heuere michte. 329. nouth. 332.  
 broucte. 333. wit. 334. mo (!) ; see l. 406 (Z.). 336.  
 brouth. 337. nouth. 338. Sawe nou ; hure. 340. lon.  
 342. þ (for þe). 343. knicht. 344. I supply swipe (see l. 1651) ;  
 wicth. 345. knicth. 346. michte ; uth. 347. onne. 348.  
 he hauede ; read hauede he H.

He hauȝde a sone [and] douhtres two, 350  
 Swiȝe fayre, as fel it so.  
 He ȝat wile non forbere,  
 Riche ne poure, king ne kaysére,  
 Deth him tok ȝan he best wolde  
 Liuen, but hyse ȝayes were fulde; 355  
 ȝat he ne mouhte no more liue,  
 For gold ne siluer, ne for no gyue.

**H**WAN he ȝat wiste, raȝe he sende ;  
 After prestes fer and hende,  
 Chanounes gode, and monkes beȝe, 360  
 Him for to wisse, and to rede ;  
 Him for to hoslen, and forto shriue, [Fol. 206, col. 1.]  
 Hwil his bodi were on liue.

**H**WAN he was hosled [wel] and shriuen,  
 His quiste maked, and for him gyuen, 365  
 His knihtes dede he alle site;  
 For ȝorw hem he wolde wite  
 Hwo mihte yeme hisȝ children yunge,  
 Til ȝat he kouȝen speken with tunge;  
 Speken and gangen, on horse riden, 370  
 Knihtes and sweynes bi herȝ siden.  
 He spoken ȝer-of, and chosen sone  
 A riche man [ȝat,] under mone,  
 Was ȝe trewest, [as] he wende,  
 Godard, ȝe kinges ounne frende; 375

354. bes (l). 356. moucte. 357. gol. 359. an.  
 360. boȝe. 361. forthm to (the hm being expuncted); Rede.  
 362. hoslon an. 364. Insert wel H. 366. knictes. 368.  
 michte. 369. wit. 371. Knictes an. 372. offe.  
 373. was under; read ȝat under Z. 374. ȝat he; read as he Z.

And seyden, he mouchte hem best loke,  
 Yif þat he hem vndertoke,  
 Til hiſe ſone mouhte bere  
 Helm on heued, and leden vt here,  
 In his hand a ſpere ſtark, 380  
 And king ben maked of Denemark.  
 He wel trowede þat he ſeyde,  
 And on Godard handes leyde ;  
 And ſeyde, ‘ Here bi-teche i þe  
 Mine children alle þre, 385  
 Al Denemark, and al mi fe,  
 Til þat mi ſone of elde be ;  
 But þat ich wille, þat þou ſuere  
 On auter, and on meſſe-gere,  
 On þe belles þat men ringes, 390  
 On meſſe-bok þe preſt on ſinges,  
 þat þou mine children ſhalt wel yeme,  
 þat hire kin be ful wel queme,  
 Til mi ſone mowe ben kniht ;  
 þanne biteche him þo his riht, 395  
 Denemark, and þat þertil longes,  
 Caſteleſ and tunes, wodes and wonges.’

**G**ODARD ſtirt up, and ſwor al þat  
 þe king him bad, and ſipen ſat  
 Bi þe knihtes, þat þer ware, 400  
 þat wepen alle ſwiþe ſare  
 For þe king þat deide ſone :  
 Ieſu Criſt, that makede mone  
 On þe mirke niht to ſhine,

376. Mouchte.  
 392. we (1).  
 400. knictes.

378. Mouthe.  
 394. knicth.  
 404. nith.

387. helde.  
 395. Ricth.

388. þo.  
 398. an.

Wite his soule fro helle pine; 405  
 And leue þat it mote wone  
 In heuene-riche with Godes sone! [Fol. 206, col. 2.]

**H**WAN Birkabeyn was leyd in graue,  
 þe erl dede sone take þe knaue,  
 Hauelok, þat was þe eir, 410  
 Swanborow, his sister, Elfled, þe [fair,  
 And in þe castel dede hem do,  
 þer non ne mihte hem comen to  
 Of here kyn, þer þei sperd wore;  
 þer he greten ofte sore, 415  
 Boþe for hunger and for kold,  
 Or he weren þre winter old.  
 Feblelike he gaf hem cloþes,  
 He ne yaf a note of hise oþes;  
 He hem [ne] cloþede riht, ne fedde, 420  
 Ne hem dede richelike be-bedde.  
 þanne Godard was sikerlike  
 Vnder God þe moste swike,  
 þat eure in erþe shaped was,  
 With-uten on, þe wike Iudas. 425  
 Haue he þe malisun to-day  
 Of alle þat eure speken may!  
 Of patriarke, and of pope,  
 And of prest with loken kope,  
 Of monkes and hermites boþe! . . . 430  
 And of þe leue holi rode  
 [þar] God him-selue ran on blode!

411. helfled þe toþer (*which will not rhyme*); read þe fair; cf.  
 ll. 605-6. 412. he hem; omit he. 413. miete. 414. were;  
 but see l. 237. 417. hold. 420. I supply ne; rith. 421.  
 ne dede; omit ne. 428. patriarch. 431. holi rode written  
 over an erasure. 432. þat.



Crist him warie with his mouth !  
 Waried wurthe he of norþ and suth !  
 Of alle men, þat speken kunne, 435  
 Of Crist, þat made mone and sunne !  
 þanne he hauēde of al þe lond  
 þe folk al tilled in-til his hond,  
 And alle hauēden sworn him oth,  
 Riche and poure, lef and loth, 440  
 þat he sholden hiſe wille freme,  
 And þat he shulden him nouht greme,  
 He þouhte a ful strong trechery,  
 A trayson and a felony,  
 Of þe children forto make : 445  
 þe deuel of helle him sone take !

**H**WAN þat was þouht, onon he ferde  
 To þe tour þer he worēn sperde,  
 þer he greten for hunger and cold :  
 þe knaue, þat was sumdel bold, 450  
 Kam him ageyn, on knes him sette,  
 And Godard ful feyre he þer grette. [Fol. 206 b, col. 1.]  
 And Godard seyde, 'Hwat is you?  
 Hwi grete ye and goulē nou?'  
 'For us hungreth swiþe sore,' 455  
 Seyden he, '[We] wolden more :  
 We ne hauē to ete, ne we ne haue  
 Herinne neyther kniht ne knaue  
 þat yeuēth us drinken, ne no mete,  
 Haluendel þat we moun ete. 460

433. warie him.	434. wrthe.	435. Offe; man.	436.
maude.	438. Al þe folk.	442. shulde; nouth.	443.
þouthe.	447. þouth.	453. wat; yw.	456. supply
We.	457. hete.	458. knith.	

Wo is us þat we werē born!  
 Weilawei! nis it no korn  
 þat men mihte maken of bred?  
 Us hungreth [so], we aŕen ney ded.'

GODARD herde here wa, 465  
 Ther-of yaf he nouht a stra,  
 But tok þe maydnes bothe samen,  
 Al-so it were up-on his gamen;  
 Al-so he wolde with hem leyke,  
 þat werē for hunger grene and bleike. 470  
 Of bopen he karf on-two here protes,  
 And siþen hem alto grotes.  
 þer was sorwe, hwo so it sawe,  
 Hwan þe children bi þe wawe  
 Leyen and spraleden in þe blod: 475  
 Hauelok it saw, and þer-bi stod.  
 Ful sori was þat seli knaue,  
 Mikel dred he mouhte haue;  
 For at hiŕe herte he saw a knif,  
 For to reuen him hiŕe lyf. 480  
 But þe knaue, þat litel was,  
 He kneledę bifore þat Iudas,  
 And seyde, 'Louerd, merci nou!  
 Manrede, louerd, biddi you!  
 Al Denemark i wilę you yeue, 485  
 To þat forward þu latę me liue;  
 Here i wile on boke swere,  
 þat neure more ne shal i bere

463. michte.      464. þs (for ws=us); see l. 455: supply so.      466.  
 offe; nouth.      468. hiis.      473. wo.      474. þ (for þe).  
 476. þe (for þere=þer).      478. mouthe.      481. kaue (!).  
 482. bifer.      483. nov.      487. hi.

Ayen þe, louerd, sheld ne spere,  
 Ne oþer wepne that may you dere. 490  
 Louerd, haue merci of me!  
 To-day i wilę fro Denemark fle,  
 Ne neuere more comen ageyn:  
 Sweren y wolę, þat Bircabein  
 Neuere yete me ne gat:— 495  
 Hwan þe deucl herde þat,  
 Sum-del bigan him forto rewe; [Fol. 206 b, col. 2.]  
 With-drow þe knif, þat was lewe  
 Of þe seli children blod.  
 Þer was miracle fair and god, 500  
 Þat he þe knaue nouht ne slou,  
 But for rewnesse him with-drow.  
 Of Hauelok rewede him ful sore,  
 And þouh he wolde þat he ded wore,  
 But on þat he [nolde] with his hend 505  
 Ne drepe him nouht, þat fule fend!  
 Þouhte he, als he him bi-stod,  
 Starinde als he were wod:  
 ‘Yif y late him liues go,  
 He mihte me wirchen michel wo. 510  
 Grith ne get y neuere mo,  
 He may [me] waiten for to slo;  
 And yf he weis brouht of liue,  
 And mine children wolden thriue,  
 Louerdinges after me 515  
 Of al Denemark mihten he be.

489. shel.

501. nouth.

w (p), not þ.

505. nouth wit.

512. I supply me.

490. wepne bere; omit bere.

502. fo (*sic*); wit, where the initial letter is an A.S.

503. auelok.

506. nouth.

513. brouct.

496. hede.

504. And poucte; read And þouh.

507. Poucte.

516. micten.

510. michte.

God it wite, he shal ben ded,  
 Wile i taken non oþer red;  
 I shal do casten him in þe se,  
 Þer i wilę þat he drenched be; 520  
 Abouten his hals an anker god,  
 Þat he ne flete in the flod.  
 Þer anon he dede sende  
 After a fishere, þat he wende  
 Þat wolde al his wille do, 525  
 And sone anon he seyde him to:  
 'Grim, þou wost þu art mi þral;  
 Wiltu don mi wille al  
 Þat i wilę [nou] bidden þe,  
 To-morwen [i] shal maken þe fre, 530  
 And auhte þe yeuen, and riche make,  
 With-þan þu wilt þis [knaue] take,  
 And leden him with þe to-niht,  
 Þan þou sest þe mone-liht,  
 In-to þe se, and don him þer-inne; 535  
 Al wile [i] taken on me þe sinne.'  
 Grim tok þe child, and bond him faste,  
 Hwil þe bondes mihte laste,  
 Þat weren of ful stronge line:—  
 Þo was Haelok in ful strong pine. 540  
 Wiste he neuere er hwat was wo:  
 Iesu Crist, þat makedę go [Fol. 207, col. 1.]  
 Þe halte, and þe doumbe speke,  
 Haelok, þe of Godard wreke!

519. she (!); *read se.* 520. drench. 528. Wile; see 681. 529. *Supply nou.* 530. *Supply i.* 531. aucte. 532. child; *read knaue.* 533. nicht. 534. se (*sic*). Mone lith. 536. *Supply i.* 538. micte. 539. strong. 540. *For* ful strong *read* stronge. 541. her wat. 542. to go; *om.* to H. 543, 544. *speken, wreken (with n in later hand).*

**H**WAN Grim him hauȝde faste bounden, 545  
 And siȝen in an old cloth wounden, . .

A keuel of clutes, ful un-wraste,  
 ꝑat he [ne] mouhte speke, ne fnaste,  
 Hwere he wolde him bere or lede.

Hwan he hauȝde don ꝑat dede, 550

[As] ꝑe swike him [bad], he yede,

ꝑat he schulde him forth [lede]

And him drenchen in ꝑe se—

ꝑat forwardȝ [pan] makȝden he.

In a poke, ful and blac, 555

Sone he caste him on his bac,

And bar him hom to hise cleue,

And bi-taucte him dame Leue,

And seyde, ‘Wite ꝑou ꝑis knaue,

Al-so thou [wilt] mi lif [nou saue]; 560

I shal him drenchen in ꝑe se,

For him sholȝ we ben maked fre,

Gold hauen ynou, and oȝer fe;

ꝑat hauȝth mi louerd bihoten me.’

**H**WAN dame [Leue] herde ꝑat, 565

Vp she stirte, and nouht ne sat,

And caste ꝑe knaue so harde adoune,

ꝑat he crakedȝ ꝑer his croune

Ageyn a gret ston, ꝑer it lay:

ꝑo Hauelok mihtȝ sei, ‘Weilaweil! 570

ꝑat euere was i kinges bern—

546. eld; wnden. *A line or two lost; see note.* 548. *Supply*  
 ne; mouthe. 551. Hwan (*read* As); hauede; *read* bad. 552.  
*Supply* lede (*see* l. 533). 553. drinchen (*see* l. 583). 554. *Supply*  
 þan. 557. Ant. 560. with; *read* wilt G.; *supply* nou; haue;  
*read* saue H. 561. dreinchen him (*see* l. 553). 564. haueȝ.  
 565. *Supply* Leue. 566. nouth. 567. adoun so harde. 568.  
 ꝑat hise croune he ꝑer crakede. 570. michte.

þat him ne hauēde grip or ern,  
 Leoun or wulf, wuluine or bere,  
 Or oþer best, þat wolde him dere!  
 So lay þat child to middel niht, 575  
 þat Grim bad Leue bringen liht,  
 For to don on [him] his cloþes:  
 'Ne thenkestu nowht of mine oþes  
 þat ich haue mi louerd sworn?  
 Ne wile i nouht be [nou] forloren. 580  
 I shal him beren to þe se,  
 þou wost þat [so bi-]houes me;  
 And i shal drenchen him þer-inne;  
 Ris up swiþe, and go þu binne,  
 And blou þe fir, and liht a kandel:' 585  
 Als she schulde hiſe cloþes handel  
 On forto don, and blawe þe fir, [Fol. 207, col. 2.]  
 She saw þer-inne a liht ful shir,  
 Also briht so it werē day,  
 Aboutē þe knaue þer he lay. 590  
 Of hiſe mouth it stod a stem  
 Als it were a sunnebem;  
 Also liht was it þer-inne  
 So þer brenden cerges inne.  
 'Iesu Crist!' [quath] dame Leue, 595  
 'Hwat is þat liht in ure cleue!  
 [Ris] up, Grim, loke hwat it menes,  
 Hwat is þe liht [here], as þou wenes?'  
 He stirten boþe up to the knaue—

573. wlf wluine.	575. nichth.	576. lict.	577. Supply
him.	578. thenkeste nowt.	580. nouth; supply nou.	581.
beren him.	582. Supply so bi.	584. an.	585. lith.
þer (for þe).	588. lith.	589. brith.	593. lith.
595. wat; read quath, as in l. 606.		596. lith; vre.	597. Sir
(for Ris); and loke (om. and); wat.		598. lith; supply here.	

'For *man* shal god wille haue'— 600  
 Vnkeueleðen him, and swiþe unbounden,  
 And sone anon [upon] him funden,  
 Als he tiruðen of his serk,  
 On his riht shuldre a kyne-merk;  
 A swiþe briht, a swiþe fair : 605  
 'Goddot!' quath Grim, 'þis ure eir  
 þat shal [ben] louerd of Denemark,  
 He shal *ben* king, strong and stark;  
 He shal hauen *in* his hand  
 Al Denemark and Engeland; 610  
 He shal do Godard ful wo,  
 He shal him hangen, or quik flo;  
 Or he shal him al quic *graue*,  
 Of him shal he no *merci* haue.'  
 Þus seide Grim, and sore gret, 615  
 And sone fel him to þe fet,  
 And seide, 'Louerd, haue *merci*  
 Of me, and Leue, þat is me bi!  
 Louerd, we aræn boþe þine,  
 þine cherles, þine hine. 620  
 Lowerd, we sholæn þe wel fede,  
 Til þat þu conne riden on stede,  
 Til þat þu conne ful wel bere  
 Helm on heued, sheld and spere.  
 He ne shal neuere, sikerlike, 625  
 Godard, wite, þat fule swike.  
 Þoru oper *man*, louerd, than þoru þe  
 Shal i neuere freman be.

602. *Supply* upon.þis is (*read* ur-ë).622, 623. *con*.  
*where I insert it.*604. *rith*.607. *Supply* ben.625, 626. *neuere wite; but wite belongs to l. 626,*628. *Sal*.605. *brith*.

606. þis=

610. A (*for* Al).

þou shalt me, louerd, fre [man] maken,  
 For i shal yemen þe, and waken; 630  
 þoru þe wile i [mi] fredom haue.  
 þo was Haueloc a bliþe knaue; [Fol. 207 b, col. 1.]  
 He sat him up, and crauedę bred;  
 And seide, 'ich am [wel] ney ded,  
 Hwat for hunger, hwat for bondes 635  
 þat þu leidest on min hondes;  
 And for [þe] keuel at þe laste,  
 þat in mi mouth was þrist [so] faste.  
 Y was þer-with so harde prangled,  
 þat i was þer-with ney strangled' 640  
 'Wel is me þat þu maght ete:  
 Goddot!' quath Leue, 'y shal þe fete  
 Bred and chese, butere and milk,  
 Pastees and flaunes; al with suilk  
 Sholę we sone þe wel fede, 645  
 Louerd, in þis mikel nede;  
 Soth is, þat men seyth and suereth:  
 "þer God wilę helpen, nouht ne dereth."

**P**ANNE sho hauęde brouht þe mete,  
 Haueloc anon bigan to ete 650  
 Grundlike, and was ful bliþe;  
 Couþe he nouht his hunger miþe.  
 A lof he et, y wot, and more,  
 For him hungredeþ swiþe sore.  
 þre dayes þer-biforn, i wene, 655

- |                         |                           |                         |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| 629. <i>Supply</i> man. | 631. <i>Supply</i> mi.    | 634. <i>Supply</i> wel. |
| 635. wat.               | 637. <i>Supply</i> þe.    | 638. <i>Supply</i> so.  |
| (for þere = þer).       | 640. þe (for þere = þer). | 639. þe                 |
| 642. Goddoth.           | 643. an (for 1st and).    | 641. mayth hete.        |
| seyt.                   | 648. nouth.               | 647. it is (om. it);    |
| 653. het; woth.         | 649. brouth.              | 652. nouth; Miþe.       |



**Y**owas havelok abire knave  
**H**e sat him up and aauede leed  
**A**nd seide ich am neyded  
**H**war for hunger war for woundes  
**Y**et yuledest on myn hondes  
**A**nd for heucl at ye laste  
**Y**et in mi mouth was yust faste  
**P**war yelwath so hande prangled  
**Y**et was ye lwrth ney strangled  
**W**el ic me yat yu mayth lere  
**G**oddoth quath leue yshal yefere  
**B**ird au chere butere and milk  
**P**astres and flauner al wrth sulh  
**S**hole we lone yelwel fed  
**I**ouerd myn mikel nede  
**S**oth it is yat me seyt and sueteth  
**Y**er god wile helpe nouth nedereð  
**A**ne slo hauede wouth ye mete  
**H**aueloc anon biga to ete  
**G**undlike and was ful blise  
**E**oure le nouth his hunger gyle  
**A**lof be let ylsot and more

THE LAY OF HAVELOK; LINES 632-653

*From MS. Laud Misc. 108; fol. 207, back*



Et he no mete, þat was wel sene.  
 Hwan he hauȝde eten, and was fed,  
 Grim dede maken a ful fayr bed;  
 Vncloþede him, and dede him þer-inne,  
 And seyde, 'Slep, sone, with michel winne! 660  
 Slep wel faste, and dred þe nouht,  
 Fro sorwe to ioie art þu brouht.'  
 Sone so it was liht of day,  
 Grim it under-tok, þe wey  
 To þe wicke traitour Godard, 665  
 þat was [of] Denemark stiward,  
 And seyde, 'Louerd, don ich haue  
 þat þou me bede of þe knaue;  
 He is drenched in þe flod,  
 Abouten his hals an anker god; 670  
 He is witer-like ded,  
 Eteth he neure more bred;  
 He liþ drenched in þe se:—  
 Yif me gold [and] oþer fe,  
 þat y mowe riche be; 675  
 And with þi chartre make fre;  
 For þu ful wel bi-hetet me, [Fol. 207 b, col. 2.]  
 þanne i laste spak with þe.'  
 Godard stod, and lokȝde on him  
 þoruh-like, with eyne grim; 680  
 And seyde, 'Wiltu [nou] ben erl?  
 Go hom swiþe, fulȝ drit-cherl;  
 Go heþen, and be euere-more  
 þral and cherl, als þou er wore.

661. nouth.      662. brouth.      663. lith.      666. *Supply* of  
 H; denemak a (*om.* a).      674. *Supply* and; cf. l. 1225.      677.  
 bi-hetet = bi-hete it.      678. last.      680. þoruth.      681.  
*Supply* nou.

Shaltu haue non oþer mede ; 685  
 For litel [shal] i do þe lede  
 To þe galues, so God me rede !  
 For þou hauęs don a wicke dede.  
 Þou maght stonden her to longe,  
 Butę þou swiþe heþen gonge.' 690

G RIM thouhtę to late þat he ran  
 Fro þat traytůr, þat wicke man ;  
 And þouhte, 'hwat shal me to rede ?  
 Wite he him [liues], he wile [us] beþe 695  
 Heye hangen on galwe-tre :  
 Betere us is of londę to fle,  
 And berwen boþen ure liues,  
 And mine children, and mine wiues.'  
 Grim solde sone al his corn,  
 Shep with wolfe, net with horn, 700  
 Hors, and swin, [and geet] with berd,  
 Þe gees, þe heznes of þe yerd ;  
 Al he solde, þat ouht douhte,  
 Þat he eure selle mouhte,  
 And al he to þe peni drou. 705  
 Hişę ship he greyþedę wel inow,  
 He dede it tere, and ful wel pike,  
 Þat it ne doutedę sond ne krike ;  
 Þer-inne [he] dide a ful god mast,  
 Stronge kables, and ful fast, 710  
 Ores gode, and ful god seyl ;

685. Shal (*read* Shaltu). 686. *Supply* shal; ig (*with g expuncted*).  
 689. Mait (*for* maght). 690. eþen. 691. þoucte. 692. þa  
 (*for 2nd* þat). 693. þoucte wat. 694. onliue; *read* liues (*see* l. 509)  
 H; *supply* us H. 700. wit; neth wit. 701. *Supply* and  
 geet; wit. 703. outh douth. 704. moucte. 707. an.  
 709. *Supply* he. 711. an.

þer-inne wantede nouht a nayl,  
 þat euere he sholdþ þer-inne do :  
 Hwan he hauēdet greyþed so,  
 Hauelok þe yunge he dede þer-inne, 715  
 Him and his wif, hiſe ſones þrinne,  
 And hiſe two douhtres, þat faire wore ;  
 And ſone dede leyn in an ore,  
 And drou him to þe heye ſe,  
 þere he miht alþer-beſte fle. 720  
 Fro londe woren he bote a mile,  
 Ne were [it] neuere but ane hwile, [Fol. 208, col. 1.]  
 þat it ne gan a wind to riſe  
 Out of þe north, men calleth ‘biſe,’  
 And drof hem intil Engeland, 725  
 þat al was ſipen in his hond,  
 Hiſ, þat Hauelok was þe name ;  
 But or, he hauēde michel ſhame,  
 Michel ſorwe, and michel tene,  
 And [yete] he gat it al bidene ; 730  
 Als ye ſhulēn nou forthward [lere],  
 Yf that ye wilen þer-to here.

I N Humber Grim bigan to lende,  
 In Lindēseye, riht at þe north ende.  
 þer ſat hiſ ſhip up-on þe ſond, 735  
 But Grim it drou up to þe lond ;  
 And þere he made a litel cote  
 To him and to hiſe flote.

712. nouth.      714. hauedet = hauede it.      717. doutres.  
 718. dede he (*I omit* he).      720. mith ; beſt.      722. *Supply* it.  
 723. bigan ; Riſe.      730. þrie ; *read* yete H.      731. forthwar ;  
 here (*read* lere) ; *cf.* ll. 12, 1640.      734. Rith.      735. is.

Bigan he þere for to erde,  
 A litel hus to maken of erþe, 740  
 So þat he wel þore were  
 Of here herboru *her*borwed þere;  
 And for þat Grim þat place auhte,  
 Þe stede of Grim þe name lauhte;  
 So þat Grimesbi [it] calle 745  
 [He] þat þer-of speken alle;  
 And so shule<sup>n</sup> men it callen<sup>n</sup> ay,  
 Bituene þis and domesday.

**G** RIM was fishere swiþe god,  
 And mikel coupe on the flod; 750  
 Mani god fish þer-inne he tok,  
 Boþe with net, and [ek] with hok.  
 He tok þe sturgiun, and þe qual,  
 And þe turbut, and lax with-al,  
 He tok þe sele, and [ek] þe el; 755  
 He spedde ofte swiþe wel:  
 Keling he tok, and tumberel,  
 Hering, and þe makerel,  
 Þe butte, þe schulle, þe þornbake:  
 Gode paniers dede he make, 760  
 On til him, and oþer þrinne  
 Til hiþe sones, to beren fish inne,  
 Vp o-londe to selle and fonge;  
 Forbar he neyper tun, ne gronge,  
 Þat he ne to-yede with his ware; 765

739. erþe; *read* erde (*see* note).     743. aute.     744. laute.  
 745. calleth alle; *read* it calle.     746. *Supply* He; offe.     747.  
 callen it.     752. neth; *supply* ek.     755. *Supply* ek; hwel  
 (*for* hel = el = eel).     759. Butte; þornbake (*pronounced*  
 þorenbak); *cf.* l. 832.     764. neyper (!).

Kam he neuere hom hand-bare,  
 þat he ne brouhte bred and sowel [Fol. 208, col. 2.]  
 In his shirte, or in his couel;  
 In his poke benes and korn:—  
 Hisę swink ne hauęde he nowht forlorn. 770  
 And hwan he tok þe grete laumprei,  
 Ful wel he coupe þe rihte wei  
 To Lincólne, þe gode boru;  
 Ofte he yede it þoru and þoru,  
 Til he hauęde [al] wel sold, 775  
 And þer-fore þe penies told.  
 Þanne he com þenne, he werę blipe,  
 For hom he brouhte fele siþe  
 Wastels, simenels with þe horn,  
 Hisę pokes fulle of mele and korn, 780  
 Netes flesh, shepes, and swines;  
 And hemp to maken of gode lines,  
 And stronge ropes to hisę netes;  
 In þe se he ofte setes.

**P**US-GATE Grim him fayre ledde. 785  
 Him and his genge wel he fedde  
 Wel twelue winter, oþer more:  
 Hauelok was war þat Grim swank sore  
 For his mete, and he lay at home:  
 Thouhte [he], 'ich am nou nō grome; 790  
 Ich am wel waxen, and wel may eten  
 More þan euere Grim may geten.  
 Ich ete more, bi God on liue,

767. broucte. 770. nowt. 772. we (!); rithe. 775.  
 wol (*read* al). 778. brouthe. 780. an. 784. se weren  
 (*om. weren*): setes = set es. 787. twelf. 789. hom; *see* l. 822.  
 790. Thouthe; *supply* he; grom.

þan Grim and hise children fíue!  
 It ne may nouht ben þus longe, 795  
 Goddot! y wile with [hem] gange,  
 For to leren sum god to gete;  
 Swinken ich wolde for mi mete.  
 It is no shame forto swinken;  
 Þe man þat may wel eten and drinken 800  
 [þar] nouht ne haue but on swink long;  
 To liggen at hom it is ful strong.  
 God yelde him, þer i ne may,  
 þat hauēth me fed [un]to þis day!  
 Gladlike i wile þe paniers bere; 805  
 Ich wot, ne shal it me nouht dere,  
 Þey þer be inne a birpenę gret  
 Al so heui als a net.  
 Shal ich neuere lengerę dwelle,  
 To-morwen shal ich forth pelle.' 810

ON þe morwen, hwan it was day,  
 He stirt up sone, and nouht ne lay;  
 And cast a panier on his bac, [Fol. 208 b, col. 1.]  
 With fish giuéled als a stac;  
 Also michel he bar him one 815  
 So he foure, bi mine mone!  
 Wel he it bar, and solde it wel,  
 Þe siluer he brouhte hom ilk del;  
 [Of] al þat he þer-fore tok  
 With-held he nouht a ferþinges nok. 820  
 So yede he forth ilke day,

794. an.	795. nouth.	796. þe; read hem (or þem).
801. þat; read þar H;	nouth.	803. ine (for i ne).
to; read unto.	806. woth; nouth.	808. neth.
nouth.	814. giueled; see note.	816. Cf. ll. 1711, 1972.
818. brouthe; il.	819. Supply Of H.	820. nouth.



þat he neuere at home lay.  
 So wolde he his mester lere.—  
 Bifel it so, a [ful] strong dere  
 Bigan to rise of korn of bred, 825  
 Thāt Grim ne coupe no god red,  
 Hu he sholde his meiné fede;  
 Of Hauelok hauēde he michel drede:  
 For he was strong, and wel mouhte ete  
 More þanne euere mouhte he gete; 830  
 Ne he ne mouhte on þe se take  
 Neyþer lenge, ne þornbake,  
 Ne non oþer fish þat douhte  
 His meyné feden with he mouhte.  
 Of Hauelok he hauēde kare, 835  
 Hwilkgat þat he mihte fare;  
 Of his children was him nouht,  
 On Hauelok was al hisē þouht,  
 And seyde, ‘Hauelok, dere sone,  
 I wene that we deye mone 840  
 For hunger, þis dere is so strong,  
 And ure mete is uten long.  
 Betere is þat þu herne gonge  
 þan þu here dwelle longe;  
 Hepen þow maght gangen to late; 845  
 Thou canst ful wel þe rihte gate  
 To Lincólne, þe gode boru,  
 þou hauēst it gon ful ofte þoru;  
 Of me, ne is me nouht a slo.  
 Betere is þat þu þider go, 850

824. *Supply* ful H. 827. Hw. 829. mouthe. 830.  
 heuere mouthe. 831. mouthe. 832. *Pronounced* þorenbak;  
*cf.* l. 759. 833. douthe. 834. mouthe. 836. Hwilgat;  
 micthe. 837, 838. nouth; þouth. 842. hure; H. *has* eten (MS.  
 uten). 845. mayt. 846. ricthe. 847. borw. 849. nouth.

For þer is mani god man inne,  
 þer þou maght þi mete winne.  
 But wo is me! þou art so naked,  
 Of mi seyl y woldę werę maked  
 A cloth, þou mihtest izne gongen,  
 Sone, no cold þat þu ne fonge.' 855

**H**E tok þe sheres of þe nayl, [Fol. 208 b, col. 2.]  
 And made him a couel of þe sayl,  
 And Hauelok dide it sone on;  
 Hauęde [he] neyþer hosen ne shon, 860  
 Ne none kinnes oþer wede;  
 To Lincólne barfot he yede.  
 Hwan he kam þer, he was ful wil,  
 Neþ hauęde he no frend to gangen til;  
 Two dayes þer fastinde he yede, 865  
 þat non for his werk wolde him fede;  
 Þe þridde day he herde calle:  
 'Bermen, bermen, hider forth alle!'  
 [Poure þat on fote yede]  
 Sprongen forth so sparke [of] glede. 870  
 Hauelok shrof dun[e] nyne or ten  
 Riht amideward þe fen,  
 And stirte forth to þe kok,  
 [þer the erles mete he tok]  
 þat he bouhte at þe brigge: 875  
 Þe bermen let he alle ligge,  
 And bar þe mete to þe castel,  
 And gat him þere a ferþing wastel.

852. mayt (*cf.* l. 1348). 854. þe were (*I omit þe*). 855.  
 mithest. 857. shres (!). 860. *Supply* he (*cf.* l. 864).  
 861. kines oþe (*sic*). 863. þe (*for þere = þer*). 867. herde he  
 (*cf.* l. 887). 869. *Supplied from* l. 101. 870. on; *read of (as in*  
 l. 91). 872. Riht amidewarde. 874. *Supplied*. 875. bouthe.

**p**ET oþer day he kepte ok  
 Swiþe yerne þe erles kok, 880  
 Til þat he say him on þe brigge,  
 And bi him mani fishes ligge.  
 Þe erles mete hauðe he bouht  
 Of Cornwaile, and kalde oft:  
 ‘Bermen, bermen, hider swiþe!’ 885  
 Hauelok it herde, and was ful bliþe  
 Þat he herde ‘bermen’ calle;  
 Alle he made hem dune falle  
 Þat in his gate yeden and stode,  
 Wel sixtene laddes gode. 890  
 Als he lep þe kok [un-]til,  
 He shof hem alle upon an hyl;  
 Astirte til him with his rippe,  
 And bigan þe fish to kippe.  
 He bar up wel a carte-lode 895  
 Of segges, laxes, of playces brode,  
 Of grete laumprees, and of eles;  
 Sparede he neyþer tos ne heles  
 Til þat he to þe castel cam,  
 Þat men fro him his birþene nam. 900  
 Þan men hauðen holpen him doune  
 With þe birþene of his croune,  
 Þe kok [bi] stod, and on him low,  
 And pouhte him stalworþe man ynow, [Fol. 209, col. 1.]  
 And seyde, ‘Wiltu ben with me?’ 905  
 Gladlike wile ich feden þe;  
 Wel is set þe mete þu etes,  
 And þe hire þat þu getes.’

879. kepte he. 881. bigge (!). 883. herles; bouth. 884.  
 cornwalie (*for* Corenwaile). 888. made he; dun. 901. doun.  
 902. croun. 903. *Supply* bi. 904. þoute. 905. wit.

'GODDOT!' quoth he, 'leue sire,  
 Bidde ich you non oþer hire; 910  
 But yeueþ me inow to ete,  
 Fir and water y wilę yow fete,  
 þe fir blowe, and ful welę maken;  
 Stickes kan ich breken and kraken,  
 And kindlen [ek] ful wel a fyr, 915  
 And maken it to brennen shir;  
 Ful wel kan ich cleuen shides,  
 Eles to-turuen of hereþ hides;  
 Ful wel kan ich dishes swilen,  
 And don al þat ye euere wilen.' 920  
 Quoth þe kok, 'Wile i no more;  
 Go þu yunder, and sit þore,  
 And y shal yeue þe ful fair bred,  
 And make þe broys in þe led.  
 Sit now doun and et ful yerne: 925  
 Dapeit hwo þe mete werne!'

HAELOK sette him dune anon,  
 Also stille als a ston,  
 Til he hauęde ful wel eten;  
 þo hauęde Hauelok fayre geten. 930  
 Hwan he hauęde eten inow,  
 He kam to þe welle, water up-drow,  
 And filde þer a michel so;  
 Bad he non ageyn him go;  
 Bi-twen his hondes he bar it in, 935  
 Al him one, to þe kichin.

909. Soddot. 913. an.  
 turuen (*sic*). 927. dun.  
 But bi-twen (*om.* But); barit.

915. *Supply* ek.  
 933. þe (*for* þere = þer).  
 936. A (*for* Al).

918. to  
 935.

Bad he non him water fete,  
 Ne fro brigge to bere þe mete.  
 He bar þe turues, he bar þe star,  
 Þe wode fro the brigge he bar; 940  
 Al that euere shulden he nytte,  
 Al he drow, and al he kitte;  
 Wolde he neuere hauen rest,  
 More þan he were a best.  
 Of alle men was he mest meke, 945  
 Lauhwinde ay, and bliþe of speke;  
 Euere he was glad and bliþe,  
 His sorwe he couþe ful wel miþe.  
 It ne was non so litel knaue, [Fol. 209, col. 2.]  
 For to leyken, ne forto plawe, 950  
 Þat he ne wolde with him pleye:  
 Þe children that yeden in þe weie  
 Of him he deden al her wille,  
 And with him leykeden herę fille.  
 Him loueden alle, stille and bolde, 955  
 Knihtes, children, yunge and olde;  
 Alle him loueden þat him sowen,  
 Boþen heye men and lowe.  
 Of him þe word ful wide sprong,  
 Hu he was mikel, hu he was strong, 960  
 Hu fayr man God him hauede maked,  
 But-on þat he was almost naked:  
 For he ne hauede nouht to shride,  
 But a kouel ful unride,  
 Þat [was] ful, and swiþe wicke, 965

937. to fete (*om.* to). 938. bigge (!); *cf.* l. 940. 942. citte.  
 949. *Perhaps two lines are lost here.* 951. wode (*for* wolde).  
 952. yden (!). 953. he (*for here* = her). 956. Knictes; holde.  
 958. heyemen; *cf.* ll. 2431, 2471. 959. ful wide þe word. 960.  
 Hw; mike (!); hw. 961. Hw. 963. nouth. 965. *Supply* was.

Was it nouht worth a fir-sticke.  
 Þe cok bigan of him to rewe,  
 And bouhte him clopes, al spannewe;  
 He bouhte him boþe hosen and shon,  
 And sone dide him dones on. 970  
 Hwan he was cloped, hoscd, and shod,  
 Was non so fayr under God,  
 Þat euere yete in erþe were,  
 Non þat euere moder bere;  
 It was neuere man þat yemedc 975  
 In kineriche, þat so wel semede  
 King or cayser forto be,  
 Þan he was shrid, so semede he;  
 For þanne he weren alle samen  
 At Lincólne, at þe gamen, 980  
 And þe erles men worcn alle þore,  
 Was Hauelok bi þe shuldren more  
 Þan þe meste þat þer kam:  
 In armes him noman [ne] nam  
 Þat he doune sonc ne caste; 985  
 Hauelok stod ouer hem als a mast.  
 Als he was heie, al[s] he was long,  
 He was boþe stark and strong;  
 In Engelond [was] non hisc per  
 Of strengþc þat euere kam him ner. 990  
 Als he was strong, so was he softe;  
 Þey a man him misdcdc ofte,  
 Neuere more he him [misseydc],  
 Ne hond on him with yuele leydc. [Fol. 209 b, col. 1.]

966. nouth.	968. bouthe.	969. bounthe.	971. osed.
976. kinneriche.	981. al.	982. þan was; omit þan H.	
984. Supply ne.	987. al.	987 ends with long; 988 ends	
with strong (cf. l. 1063).	989. Supply was.	993. misdcd;	
read misseydc E.; see ll. 49, 1688.			

Of bodi was he mayden clene; 995  
 Neuere yete in game, ne in grene,  
 With hire ne wolde [he] leykē ne lye,  
 No more þan it were a strie.  
 In þat time al Engelond  
 þerl Godrich hauēde in his hond, 1000  
 And he gart komen into þe tun  
 Mani erl, and mani barun;  
 And alle [men] þat liues were  
 In Engelond, þanne were þere,  
 þat þey hauēden after sent 1005  
 To ben þer at þe parlement.  
 With hem com mani champioun,  
 Mani wiht ladde, blac and brown;  
 And fel it so, þat yunge men,  
 Wel abouten nine or ten, 1010  
 Bigunnen þere for to layke:  
 þider komen stronge and wayke;  
 þider komen lesse and more,  
 þat in þe borw þanne werē þore;  
 Chaumpiouns, and starke laddes, 1015  
 Bondemen, with here gaddes,  
 Als he comen fro þe plow;  
 þere was sembling i-now!  
 For it ne was non horse-knaue,  
 þouh þei sholden in honde haue, 1020  
 þat he ne kam þider, þe leyk to se:  
 Biforn herē fet þanne lay a tre,  
 And putten with a mikel ston

996. *Read* Neuere in gardine (Kölbing). 997. wit (pit); *read*  
 With; for hire *read* hore (Kölbing); *supply* he. 999. hengelond.  
 1003. *Supply* men. 1004. england; wer. 1007. chābioun (*sic*).  
 1009. An. 1011. þe (*for* þere). 1012. komen boþe; *om.* boþe.  
 1015. Chaunpiouns. 1020. þo. 1023. pulten; *read* putten; *cf.* l. 1031.

þe starke laddes, ful god won.  
 þe ston was mikel, and ek gret, 1025  
 And al so heui so a net;  
 Grund-stalwurþe man he sholde be  
 þat mouhte it liften to his kne;  
 Was þer neyþer clerc, ne prest,  
 þat mihte it liften to his brest: 1030  
 þerwith putten the chaumpiouns  
 þat þider comen with þe barouns.  
 Hwo-so mihte putten þore  
 Biforn a-noþer, an inch or more,  
 Wore he yung, [or] wore he old, 1035  
 He was for a kempe told.  
 Al-so þei stoden, and ofte staræden,  
 þe chaumpiouns, and ek the ladden,  
 And he maden mikel strout [Fol. 209 b, col. 2.]  
 Abouten þe alþerbeste bout, 1040  
 Hauelok stod, and lokede þer-til;  
 And of puttingge he was ful wil,  
 For neuere yete ne saw he or  
 Putten the stone, or þanne þor.  
 Hiþe mayster bad him gon þer-to, 1045  
 Als he couþe þer-with do.  
 þo hiþe mayster it him bad,  
 He was of him [ful] sore adrad;  
 þerto he stirte sone anon,  
 And kipte up þat heui ston, 1050  
 þat he sholde putten wiþe;  
 He putte, at þe firste siþe,

1025. greth.      1026. neth.      1027. -wrþe.      1028. mouthe  
 liften it.      1030. mithe liften it.      1031. þerwit; chaumpiouns.  
 1033. mithe.      1035. *Supply* or; hold.      1037. þe (*for* þei); an;  
*for* stareden *read* gradden (K.).      1038. chaumpiouns.      1040. but.  
 1048. *Supply* ful H.      1051. puten.



Ouer alle þat þer wore,  
 Twelue fote, and sumdel more.  
 Þe chaumpiouns þat [þat] put sowen, 1055  
 Shuldreden he ilc oþer, and lowen;  
 Wolden he no more to putting gange,  
 But seyde, 'we dwellen her to longe!'  
 Þis selkouth mihte nouht ben hyd,  
 Ful sone it was ful loude kid 1060  
 Of Hauelok, hu he warp þe ston  
 Ouer þe laddes euerilkon;  
 Hu he was fayr, hu he was long,  
 Hu he was wiht, hu he was strong;  
 Þorhut England yede þe speke, 1065  
 Hu he was strong, and ek [ful] meke;  
 In the castel, up in þe halle,  
 Þe knihtes speken þer-of alle,  
 So that Godrich it herde wel  
 Þer speken of Hauelok, eueri del, 1070  
 Hu he was strong man and hey,  
 Hu he was strong, and ek [ful sley],  
 And þouhte Godrich, 'þoru þis knaue  
 Shal ich Engelond al haue,  
 And mi sone after me; 1075  
 For so i wile þat it be.  
 King Apelwald me dide swere  
 Vpon al þe messe-gere,  
 Þat y shulde his douhter yeue

1054. Twel. 1055. chaumpiouns; *supply* þat. 1058. *we*  
 (pe). 1059. mithe nouth. 1061. hw. 1063. Hw; hw.  
 1064. Hw; with hw. 1065. þoruth; speche; *read* speke, *as in*  
 l. 946. 1066. Hw; *supply* ful. 1068. knithes. 1070. þe (*for*  
*pere* = þer). 1071. Hw. 1072. Hw; *for* strong *read* fayr H.;  
 ek fri (!); *read* ek ful sley; *see* l. 1084. 1073. þouthte. 1077.  
 The king (*om.* The). 1079. shude; douthe.

þe hexte [man] þat mihte liue, 1080  
 þe beste, þe fairest, þe strangest ok;  
 þat gart he me sweren on þe bok.  
 Hwerę mihte i finden ani so hey  
 So Hauelok is, or so sley? [Fol. 210, col. 1.]  
 Þouh y souhte heþen in-to Ynde, 1085  
 So fayr, so strong, ne mihte y finde.  
 Hauelok is þat ilke knaue  
 þat shal Goldeborw haue.  
 Þis þouhte [he] with trechery,  
 With traysoun, and with felony; 1090  
 For he wende, þat Hauelok wore  
 Sum cherles sone, and no more;  
 Ne shulde he hauen of Engellond  
 Onlepi forw in his hond  
 With hire, þat was þer-of [þe] eyr, 1095  
 þat boþe was god and swiþe fair.  
 He wende, þat Hauelok wer a þral,  
 þer-þoru he wende hauen al  
 In Engellond, þat hire riht was;  
 He werse was þan Sathanas 1100  
 þat Iesu Crist in erþe shop:  
 Hanged worþe he on an hok!

A FTER Goldęborw sone he sende,  
 þat was boþe fayr and hende,  
 And dide hire to Lincólne bringe, 1105  
 Belles dede he ageyn hire ringen,  
 And ioie he made hire swiþe mikel,  
 But neþeles he was ful swikel.

1080. *Supply* man; see l. 199 (H.); mithe. 1083. mithe.  
 1085. þou; southe. 1086. mithe. 1089. þouthe; *supply* he.  
 1090. wit. 1095. *Supply* þe. 1099. rith. 1100. was werse;  
 see l. 1134. 1103. goldebow.

He seyde, þat he sholde hire yeue  
 þe fayrest man that mihte liue. 1110  
 She answerede, and seyde anon,  
 Bi [Iesu] Crist, and bi seint Iohan,  
 þat hire sholde noman wedde,  
 Ne noman bringen hire to bedde,  
 But he were king, or kinges eyr, 1115  
 Were he neuere man so fayr.

GODRICH þe erl was swiþe wroth  
 þat she swor [þer] swilk an oth,  
 And seyde, 'Hweþer þou wilt be  
 Quen and leuēdi ouer me? 1120  
 þou shalt hauen a gadeling,  
 Ne shalt þou hauen non oþer king;  
 þe shal spusen mi cokes knaue,  
 Shalt þou non oþer louerd haue.  
 Dapeit þat þe oþer yeue 1125  
 Euere-more hwil i liue!  
 To-morwe sholen ye ben weddet,  
 And, maugre þin, to-gidere beddet.'  
 Goldeborw gret, and *was* hire ille, [Fol. 210, col. 2.]  
 She wolde þen ded bi hire wille. 1130  
 On the morwen, hwan day was sprungen,  
 And day-belle at [þe] kirke rungen,  
 After Hauelok sente þat Iudas,  
 þat werse was þanne Sathanas:  
 And seyde, 'Mayster, wiltu wif?' 1135  
 'Nay,' quoth Hauelok, 'bi my lif!

1110. mithe. 1112. *Supply* Iesu; cf. l. 1101. 1114. to  
 hire; *read* hire to H. 1118. *I supply* þer. 1119. hwor;  
*read* hweþer; cf. ll. 292, 294. 1124. Ne shalt; *omit* Ne.  
 1127. To mowe ye sholen; weddeth. 1128. beddeth. 1129.  
*was* (pas). 1132. *Supply* þe; as in l. 1355. 1135. wille.

Hwat sholde ich with wiue do?

I ne may hire fede, ne cloþe, ne sho.

Hwider sholde ich wimman bringe?

I ne haue none kinnes þinge. 1140

I ne haue hus, y ne haue cote,

I ne haue stikke, y ne haue sprote,

I ne haue neyþer bred ne sowel,

Ne cloth, but of an old whit couel.

Þis cloþes, þat ich onne haue, 1145

Aren þe kokes, and ich his knaue.'

Godrich stirt up, and on him dong

[With dintes swiþe hard and strong,]

And seyde, 'But þou hire take

þat y wolþe yeuen þe to make, 1150

I shal hangen þe ful heye,

Or y shal þristen ut þin eie.'

Hauelok was one, and was adrad,

And grauntede him al þat he bad.

þo sende he after hire sone, 1155

þe fayrest wymman under mone;

And seyde til hire, [fals] and slike,

þat wicke þral, þat foule swike:

'But þu þis man [wel] under-stonde,

I shal flemen þe of londe; 1160

Or þou shalt to þe galwes renne,

And þer þou shalt in a fir brenne.'

Sho was adrad, for he so þrette,

And durste nouht þe spusing lette;

But þey hire likedþ swiþe ille, 1165

1137. wif. 1139. Wider. 1140. kines. 1141. hws.  
 1142. Ne i; omit Ne (H.). 1144. hold with. 1148. *Supplied*.  
 1152. vth; heie. 1153. odrat; see ll. 1048, 1163. 1157.  
*Supply* fals. 1159. *Supply* wel H. 1161. shal. 1164. nouth.

[Sho] pouhte, it was Godes wille :  
 God, þat makes growen þe korn,  
 Formede hire wimman to be born.  
 Hwan he hauēde him don, for drede,  
 þat he sholde hire spusen and fede, 1170  
 And þat she sholde til him holde,  
 þer weren penies picke tolde,  
 Mikel plenté upon þe bok :  
 He ys hire yaf, and she [is] tok.  
 He weren spused fayre and wel, [Fol. 210 b, col. 1.]  
 þe messe he dede, [and] eueridel 1176  
 þat fel to spusing, a god clerk,  
 þe erchebishop ut of Yerk,  
 þat kam [þer] to þe parlement,  
 Als God him hauēde þider sent. 1180

**H**WAN he weren togydere in Godes lawe  
 þat þe folc ful wel it sawe,  
 He ne wisten hwat he mouhten,  
 Ne he ne wisten hwat hem douhte,  
 þer to dwellen, or þenne to gonge. 1185  
 þer ne wolden he dwellen longe ;  
 For he wisten, and ful wel sawe,  
 Godrich hem hatede, þe deuel him awe !  
 And yf he dwelleden þer ouht—  
 þat fel Hauelok ful wel on pouht— 1190  
 Men sholde don his leman shame,  
 Or elles bringen in wicke blame ;

1166. *Supply* Sho; pouthe. 1167. to growen; *om.* to. 1169. don  
 him. 1174. as; *read* is H. 1176. deden; *read* dede, and *supply*  
 and H. 1177. and; *read* a Z; clek (!). 1178. uth. 1179. *Supply*  
 þer. 1183. mouhten. 1184. wat; douthe. 1188. þat  
 godrich; *I omit* þat; hawe. 1189. outh. 1190. pouht.

þat were him leuere to ben ded.  
 For-þi he token anoper red,  
 þat þei sholden þenne fle 1195  
 Til Grim, and til hisē sones þre;  
 þer wenden he alþer-beste spede,  
 Hem forto cloþe, and for to fede.  
 þe lond he token under fote,  
 Ne wisten he non oþer bote, 1200  
 And helden ay the rihte [sti]  
 Til he komen to Grimesby.  
 þanne he komēn þerē, þanne was Grim ded,  
 Of him ne hauēden he no red;  
 But hise children alle fyue 1205  
 Alle weren yet on liue;  
 þat ful fayre ayeyn hem neme,  
 Hwan he wisten þat he keme,  
 And maden ioie swiþe mikel,  
 Ne werēn he neuere ayeyn hem fikel. 1210  
 On knes ful fayre he hem setten,  
 And Hauelok swiþe fayre gretten,  
 And seyden, ‘Welkomē, louerd dere!  
 And welkomē be þi fayre fere!  
 Blessed be þat ilke þrawe 1215  
 þat þou hire toke in Godes lawe!  
 Wel is us we sen þe on lyue,  
 þou maght us boþe selle and yeue;  
 þou maght us boþe yeue and selle,  
 With-þat þou wilt here dwelle. [Fol. 210 b, col. 2.]  
 We hauēn, louerd, alle gode, 1221  
 Hors, and net, and ship on flode,

1197. best to spede; *read* beste spede. 1201. ripe (= rithe =  
 rihte); sti *erased* (*but see* l. 2618). 1207, 1210. ayen. 1217.  
 hus. 1218. mithe. 1219. mayt. 1222. neth.

Gold, and siluer, and michel auhte,  
 þat Grim ure fader us bitawhte.  
 Gold, and siluer, and oþer fe 1225  
 Bad he us bi-taken þe.  
 We hauen shep, we hauen swin,  
 Bi-leue her, louerd, and al be þin!  
 þou shalt ben louerd, þou shalt ben syre,  
 And we sholen *seruen* þe and hire; 1230  
 And ure sistres sholen do  
 Al that euere biddes sho;  
 He sholen hire cloþes washen and wringen,  
 And to hondes water bringen;  
 He sholen bedden hire and þe, 1235  
 For leuēdi wilē we þat she be.  
 Hwan he þis ioie hauēden maked,  
 Sithen stikes broken and kraked,  
 And þe fir brouht on brenne,  
 Ne was þer spared gos ne henne, 1240  
 Ne þe ende, ne þe drake,  
 Mete he deden plentē make;  
 Ne wantedē þere no god mete,  
 Wyn and ale deden he fete,  
 And maden hem [ful] glade and bliþe, 1245  
 Wesseyl he ledden fele siþe.

ON þe niht, als Goldēborw lay,  
 Sory and sorwful was she ay,  
 For she wende she were bi-swike,  
 þat she werē yeuen un-kyndelike. 1250

1223. auchte. 1224. bitawchte. 1229. þo. 1231. hure.  
 1233. cloþen; *read* cloþes, as in l. 2458. 1239. brouth. 1241.  
 hende. 1245. made; *supply* ful. 1246. ledden he. 1247. nith.  
 1250. shere, *evidently miswritten for* she were.

O niht saw she þer-inne a liht,  
 A swiþe fayr, a swiþe bryht,  
 Al so briht, al so shir  
 So it were a blase of fir.  
 She lokedeþ norþ, and ek south, 1255  
 And saw it comen ut of his mouth,  
 þat lay bi hire in þe bed:  
 No ferlikeþ þouh she were adred!  
 Þouhteþ she, 'Hwat may this bi-mene!  
 He beth heyman yet, als y wene, 1260  
 He beth heyman er he be ded:—  
 On hise shuldre, of gold red  
 She saw a swiþe noble croiz,  
 Of an angel she herde a uoyz:

'GOLDEBORW, lat þi sorwe be; [Fol. 211, col. 1.]  
 For Hauelok, þat hauēþ spuset þe, 1266  
 [Is] kinges sone and kinges eyr;  
 þat bikenneth þat croiz so fayr.  
 It bikenneth more þat he shal  
 Denemark hauen, and Englund al; 1270  
 He shal ben king, strong and stark,  
 Of Engeland and Denemark;  
 þat shalt þu with þin eyne sen,  
 And þou shalt quen and leuēdi ben!'

ÞANNE she hauēde herd the steuene 1275  
 Of þe angel ut of heuene,  
 She was so fele siþes blithe

1251. nith; lith.

1252. bryth.

1253. brith.

1255. nop.

1258. þou.

1259. þouthe; wat.

1267. He; read Is.

1273. shal; wit.

1274. þo.

1276. uth.



þat she ne mihte hirę ioie mythe;  
 But Hauelok sone anon she kiste,  
 And he slep, and nouht ne wiste 1280  
 Hwat þat aungel hauęde seyð.  
 Of his slep a-non he brayd,  
 And seide, 'Lemman, slepes þou?  
 A selkuth drem me dremedeþ nou.

**H**ERKNE nou hwat me haueth met: 1285  
 Me þouhte y was in Denemark set,  
 But on on þe moste hil  
 þat euere yete kam i til.  
 It was so hey, þat y wel mouhte  
 Al þe werd se, als me þouhte. 1290  
 Als i sat up-on þat lowe,  
 I gan Denemark for to awe,  
 þe borwes and þe castles stronge;  
 And mine armes weręn so longe,  
 That i fadmede, al at ones, 1295  
 Denemark, with mine longe bones;  
 And þanne y woldę mine armes drawe  
 Til me, and [þouhte hem] for to [awe],  
 Al that euere in Denemark liuęden  
 On mine armes faste clyuęden; 1300  
 And þe stronge castles alle  
 On knes bigunnen for to falle,  
 þe keyes fellen at mine fet:—  
 Anoper drem me dremedeþ ek,  
 þat ich fley ouer þe salte se 1305

1278. mithe. 1280. nouth. 1281. Hwan (!). 1284.  
 dremede me. 1286. þouthe. 1289. mouthe. 1290. þouthe.  
 1292. bigan; *read* gan H. 1298. *Supply* þouhte H.; hom (*read*  
 hem H.); haue (*read* awe), *as in* l. 1292 (Hupe). 1304. dremede me.

Til Engeland, and al with me  
 þat euere was in Denemark lyues,  
 But bondemen and here wiues;  
 And þat ich kom til Engeland,  
 Al closede it intil min hond, [Fol. 211, col. 2.] 1310  
 And, Goldeborw, y gaf [it] þe:—  
 Deus! lemman, hwat may þis be?  
 Sho answerede, and seyde sone:  
 'Iesu Crist, þat made mone,  
 þine dremes turne to ioye, . . . 1315  
 þat wite þw that sittes in trone!  
 Ne non [so] strong king, ne caysére  
 So þou shalt be, for þou shalt bere  
 In Engeland corune yet;  
 Denemark shal knele to þi fet; 1320  
 Alle þe castles þat areþ þer-inne  
 Shal-tow, lemman, ful wel winne.  
 I wot, so wel so ich it sowe,  
 To þe shole comen heye and lowe,  
 And alle þat in Denemark wone, 1325  
 Em and broþer, fader and sone,  
 Erl and baroun, dreng and þayn,  
 Knihtes, and burgéys, and sweyn,  
 And [make þe] king heyelike and wel;  
 Denemark shal be þin euere-ilk del. 1330  
 Haue þou nouht þer-of [no] doute  
 Nouht þe worth of one noute;  
 Þer-of with-inne þe firste yer

1311. *Supply* it. 1315, 1316. *Two lines perhaps lost; to make sense,*  
*alter* l. 1316 to And leue, þat þou sitte in trone! 1317. *Supply* so.  
 1318. fo (!). 1323. with. 1327. an kayn (*sic*); kayn = cayn,  
 for tain = thain. 1328. Knithes. 1329. mad; *read* make,  
 and *supply* þe. 1331. nouth; offe; *supply* no; douthe. 1332.  
 Nouth; nouth. 1333. offe.

Shalt þou ben king, [with-uten were].

But do nou als y wile rathe;

1335

Nimen wit to Denemark baþe,

And do þou nouht on frest þis fare;

"Lith and selthe felawes are."

For sha' ich neuere bliþe be

Til i with eyen Denemark se;

1340

For ich wot, þat al þe lond

Shalt þou hauē in þin hond.

Prey Grimes sones, alle þre,

That he wenden forþ with þe;

I wot, he wilen þe nouht werne,

1345

With þe wende shuleⁿ he yerne,

For he louēⁿ þe herte-like,

þou maght telle he aren quike,

Hworeⁿ-so he o worde aren;

Hereⁿ ship þou do hem swithe yaren,

1350

And loke þat þou dwelle nouht:

"Dwelling hauēth ofte scape wrouht."

**H**WAN Hauelok herde þat she radde,

Sone it was day, sone he him cladde,

And sone to þe kirke yede [Fol. 211 b, col. 1.] 1355

Or he dide ani oþer dede,

Bifor þe rode bigan [to] falle,

Croiz and Crist bi[gan] to kalle,

And seyde, 'Louerd, þat al weldes,

Wind and water, wodes and feldes,

1360

1334. king of euere-il del (*repeated from* l. 1330); *read* with-uten were (without doubt).

1336. Nim in with þe; *read* Nimen wit

(let us two go); denemak.

1337. nouth.

1341. woth.

1342. hon.

1345. nouth.

1348. til; *read* telle.

1350. þere;

*read* Here.

1351. dwellen nouth.

1352. wrouth.

1357.

And bifor; *om.* And; *supply* to.

1358. bi (*for* bi-gan).

For the holi milce of you,  
 Hauē merci of me, louerd, nou!  
 And wreke me yet on mi fo  
 Þat ich saw biforn min eyne slo  
 Mine sistres, with a knif, 1365  
 And sipen wolde me mi lyf  
 Hauē reft, for in the se  
 Bad he Grim hauē drenched me.  
 He [haldes] mi lond with mikel un-riht,  
 With michel wrong, with mikel pliht; 1370  
 For i ne misdede him neuere nouht,  
 And haueth me to sorwe brouht.  
 He hauēth me do mi mete þigge,  
 And ofte in sorwe and pine ligge.  
 Louerd, hauē merci of me, 1375  
 And latē [me] passe wel þe se—  
 [þouh] ich hauē ther-of doute and kare—  
 With-uten stormes ouer-fare,  
 Þat y ne drenched [be] þer-ine,  
 Ne forfaren for no sinne. 1380  
 And bringge me wel to þe lond  
 Þat Godard haldes in his hond;  
 Þat is mi riht, eueri del:  
 Iesu Crist, þou wost it well!

**Þ**AVNE he hauēde his bede seyð, 1385  
 His offrende on þe auter leyð,  
 His leue at Iesu Crist he tok,

1364. *Perhaps omit Þat.* 1369. *Supply haldes; vn-Rith.*  
 1370. plith. 1371. ine (*perhaps omit ne*). 1372. haueð (!);  
 brouht. 1373. to þigge (*omit to*). 1376. *Supply me; wel*  
 passe. 1377. Þat ihc; *read þouh ich; offe douthē.* 1379.  
*Supply be.* 1383. Rith.

And at his suete moder ok,  
And at þe croiz, þat he bi lay,  
Siþen yede sorę grotinde away. 1390

**H**WAN he com hom, he wore yare,  
Grimes sones, forto fare  
In-to þe se, fishes to gete,  
þat Haelok mihte wel of ete.  
But Haelok þouhte al anoper, 1395  
First he kalde þe eldestę broþer,  
Roberd þe Rede, bi his name,  
William Wendut, and H[uwe R]auen,  
Grimes sones alle þre,  
And seyde, 'Lipes nou to me ; [Fol. 211 b, col. 2.] 1400  
Louerdinges, ich wilę you showe  
A þing of me þat ye wel knowe.  
Mi fader was king of Denshe lond,  
Denemark was al in his hond  
þe day þat he was quik and ded ; 1405  
But þanne hauęde he wicke red,  
þat he me, and Denemark al,  
And mine sistres bi-tawhte a pral :  
A deueles lime [he] us bitawhte,  
And al his lond, and al hise auhte. 1410  
For y saw that fule fend  
Slo mine sistres with hisę hend ;  
First he shar a-two herę protes,

1389. biforn ; *read* bi.  
prefixed to the next line.

1396. kade (!) ; heldeste.

*Only an assonance, not a rime, seems intended.*  
seyde) ; nou alle to (*omit* alle).

1408. bi tawte.

1412. Mine sistres slo.

1391. In the MS. the capital letter is

1394. mithe.

1395. auelok pouthe.

1398. wenduth ; hauen ; *cf.* ll. 1868, 2528.

1400. seye (*read*

1401. sheue.

1402. knewe.

1409. *Supply* he ; hus bitawte.

1410. authe.

And siþen hem al to grotes,  
 And siþen bad [he] in þe se 1415  
 Grim, youre fader, drenchen me.  
 Deplike dede he him swere  
 On bok, þat he me sholde bere  
 Vnto þe se, and drenchen inne,  
 And [he] wolde taken on him þe sinne. 1420  
 But Grim was wis, and swiþe hende,  
 Wolde he nouht his soule shende ;  
 Leuere was him be for-sworen  
 þan drenchen me, and ben for-loren ;  
 But sonę bigan he forto fle 1425  
 Fro Denemark, forto berwen me.  
 For yif ich hauede þer ben funden,  
 Hauede [he] ben slayn, or harde bunden,  
 And heye ben hinged on a tre,  
 Hauede gon for him gold ne fe. 1430  
 For-þi fro Denemark hider he fledde,  
 And me ful fayre and ful wel fedde,  
 So þat vn-to þis [ilke] day  
 Haue ich ben fed and fostred ay.  
 But nou ich am up to þat elde 1435  
 Cumen, that ich may wepne welde,  
 And y may grete dintes yeue,  
 Shal i neuere, hwil ich lyue,  
 Ben glad, til that ich Denemark se ;  
 I preie you þat ye wende with me, 1440  
 And ich may mak you riche men ;

1415. *Supply* he. 1418. sholde me. 1419. an ; ine.  
 1420. *Supply* he. 1422. nouth. 1423. to be (*omit* to).  
 1424. lorn. 1426. MS. berpen (*the* A. S. *w being used here*) ; *cf.*  
 l. 697. 1427. yif (*with long s*). 1428. *Supply* he. 1430.  
 go ; *read* gon. 1433. *Supply* ilke. 1435. helde.

Ilk of you shal hauē castles ten,  
And þe lond þat þor-til longes,  
Borwes, tunes, wodes and wonges.'

[A leaf has here been cut out of the MS., containing 180 lines. The missing portion must have been to this effect. 'To this they gladly assented; and Havelok, accompanied by his wife Goldeborw and the sons of Grim, set sail for Denmark. Disembarking, they travel till they reach the castle of a great Danish earl, named Ubbe, who had formerly been a close friend to king Birkabeyn. Havelok begs that he will allow him to live in that part of the country, and to gain a livelihood by trading.']

'With swilk als ich byen shal : [Fol. 212, col. 1.] 1625  
þer-of bi-seche [ich] you nou leue ;  
Wile ich speke with non oþer reue,  
But with [you], þat iustise are,  
þat y mihte [sellēn] mi ware  
In gode borwes up and down, 1630  
And faren ich wilē fro tun to tun.'  
A gold ring drow he forth anon,  
An hundred pund was worth þe ston,  
And yaf it Ubbe for to spede :—  
'He was ful wis þat first yaf mede ;' 1635  
And so was Hauelok ful wis here,  
He solde his gold ring ful dere :  
Was neuere non so dere sold  
[Fro] chapmen, neyþer yung ne old :  
þat sholēn ye forthward ful wel [leren,] 1640  
Yif þat ye wile þe storie heren.

**H**WAN Ubbe hauēde þe gold ring,  
Hauēde he youenet for no þing,

1626. *Supply* ich. 1628. þe; *read* you H. 1629. mithe seken  
(*but read sellēn*). 1639 For; *read* Fro H. 1640. shoren (*read*  
sholen); heren (*read* leren, as in l. 12 where it *rimes* with heren H.).

Nouht for þe borw euere-ilk del:—  
 Hauelok bi-held he swiþe wel, 1645  
 Hu he was wel of bones maked,  
 Brod in þe sholdres, ful wel schaped,  
 Picke in þe brest, of bodi long;  
 He semedeþ wel to ben wel strong.  
 ‘Deus!’ quath Ubbe, ‘qui ne were he kniht? 1650  
 I wot, þat he is swiþe wiht!  
 Betereþ semedeþ him to bere  
 Helm on heued, sheld and spere,  
 þanne to beye and selle ware.  
 Allas! þat he shal þer-with fare! 1655  
 Goddot! wile he trowe me,  
 Chaffare shal he late be.’  
 Neþeles he seyde sone:  
 ‘Hauelok, haue [þou] þi bone,  
 And y ful wel rede þe 1660  
 þat þou come, and eteþ with me  
 To-day, þou, and þi fayre wif,  
 þat þou louest also þi lif.  
 And haue þou of hire no drede,  
 Shal hire no man shame bede. 1665  
 Bi þe fey y owe to þe,  
 þerof shal i [mi-self] borw be.’

**H**AUELOK herde þat he bad,  
 [Al]-thowh was he ful sore [a]drad  
 With him to ete, for hisþe wif; [Fol. 212, col. 2.] 1670  
 For him worþ leuereþ þat his lif

1644. Nouth; il.	1645. bi hel.	1646. Hw.	1650.
hwat ( <i>read</i> quath); knith.	1651. woth; with.	1659. <i>Supply</i>	
þou.	1660. þ ( <i>for</i> þe).	1666. fey that y; <i>omit</i> that.	1667.
me serf; <i>read</i> mi-self.	1669. And thow; drad.		



Him wore reft, þan she *in* blame  
 Felle, or lauhte ani shame.  
 Hwanne [þat] he his wille quath,  
 Þe stede, þat he onne sat, 1675  
 Smot Ubbe [þo] with spures faste,  
 And forth away, but at þe laste,  
 Or he [ferre] fro him ferde,  
 Seyde he, þat his folk [it] herde :  
 ‘Loke þat ye comen beþe, 1680  
 For ich it wile, and ich it rede.’

**H**AUELOK ne durste, þey he were adrad,  
 Nouht with-sitten þat Ubbe bad ;  
 His wif he dide with him lede,  
 Vn-to þe heye curt he yede. 1685  
 Roberd hire ledde, þat was red,  
 Þat hauede [þoled] for hire þe ded  
 Or ani hauede hire misseyd,  
 Or hand with iuele onne leyd.  
 William Wendut was þat oþer 1690  
 Þat hire ledde, Roberdes broþer,  
 Þat was wiht at alle nedes :  
 ‘Wel is him þat god man fedes !’  
 Þan he weren comen to þe halle,  
 Biforen Ubbe, and hisen men alle, 1695  
 Vbbe stirte hem ageyn,  
 And mani a kniht, and mani a sweyn,  
 Hem for to se, and forto shewe ;  
 Þo stod Hauelok als a lowe

1673. lauthe. 1674. *Supply* þat; he hauede his wille *wat* (þat);  
*om.* hauede, *and write* quath *for wat* (as in l. 595). 1676. *Supply* þo.  
 1678. *Supply* ferre, i e. farther. 1679. *Supply* it H. 1682. þe; adrad  
 (see l. 1669). 1683. Nouth. 1685. yde (!). 1687. haue; þarned (*cf.*  
 2492); *read* þoled. 1690. Willam. 1692. with. 1697. knith.

Aboven [þo] þat þer-inne wore, 1700  
 Riht al bi þe heued more  
 Þanne ani þat þer-inne stod :  
 Þo was Ubbe bliþe of mod,  
 þat he saw him so fayr and hende ;  
 Fro him ne mihte his herte wende, 1705  
 Ne fro him, ne fro his wif ;  
 He louþe hem sone so his lif.  
 Werē non in Denemark, þat him þouhte,  
 þat he so mikel loue mouhte ;  
 More he louþe Hauelok one 1710  
 þan al Denemark, bi mine wone !  
 Lokē nou, hu God helpen kan  
 O mani wise wif and man.

**H**WAN it was comen time to ete,  
 Hiſe wif dede Ubbe sone in fete, 1715  
 [Fol. 212 b, col. 1.]  
 And til hirē seyde, al on gamen :  
 ‘ Dame, þou and Hauelok shuleſ ete samen,  
 And Goldeboru shal ete with me,  
 þat is so fayr so flour on tre ;  
 In al Denemark is wimman [non] 1720  
 So fayr so sche, bi seint Iohan !’  
 Þanne [he] werē set, and bord leyð,  
 And þe beneysun was seyð,  
 Biforn hem com þe beste mete  
 þat king or cayser wolde ete ; 1725  
 Kranes, swannes, ueneysun,  
 Lax, lampreys, and god sturgion,

1700. *Supply* þo. 1701. Rith. 1705. mithe. 1708. þouthe.  
 1709. mouthe. 1712. hw. 1718. wit. 1720. *supply*  
 non E. 1722. *Supply* he ; bord (*pron.* borred). 1727.  
 sturgun ; see l. 753.

Pymment to drinke, and god claré,  
 Win hwit and red, ful god plenté.  
 Was þer-inne no page so lite 1730  
 þat euere wolde ale bite.  
 Of þe mete forto telle,  
 Ne of þe [win] bidde i nouht dwelle ;  
 þat is þe storie for to lenge,  
 It wolde anuye þis fayre genge. 1735  
 But hwan he hauēden ilk þing deyled,  
 And fele siþe hauēden wosseyled,  
 With gode drinkes seten longe,  
 And it was time for to gonge,  
 Ilk man to þer he cam fro, 1740  
 pouhte Ubbe, ‘Yf I late hem go,  
 þus one foure, with-uten mo,  
 So mote ich brouke finger or to,  
 For þis wimman bes mikel wo !  
 For hire shal men hire louerd slo.’ 1745  
 He tok sone knihtes ten,  
 And wel sixti oþer men,  
 With gode bowes, and with gleiues,  
 And sende him unto þe greyues,  
 þe beste man of al þe toun, 1750  
 þat was named Bernard Brun ;  
 And bad him, als he louēde his lif,  
 Hauelok wel yemen, and his wif,  
 And wel do wayten al þe niht,  
 Til þe oþer day, þat it were liht. 1755  
 Bernard was trewe, and swiþe wiht,

1733. metes (!); *read* win ; nout. 1736. þe kilþing (kil *for* ilk) ;  
*om.* þe ; deled (*but see* l 2099). 1737. siþes ; *read* siþe H. (*see* l. 778).  
 1738. And with ; *om.* And. 1740. Il. 1741. þouthe. 1744.  
 mike. 1746. knithes. 1748. Wit. 1753. ymen (!).  
 1754. nith. 1755. lith. 1756. with.

In al þe borw ne was no kniht  
 þat betereþ couþe on stede riden,  
 Helm on heued, ne swerd bi side.  
 Hauelok he gladlike under-stod [Fol. 212 b, col. 2.] 1760  
 With mikel loue and herte god,  
 And dide greyþe a super riche,  
 Also he was no wiht chiche,  
 To his bihoue euer-ilk del,  
 þat he mihtþe suþe swiþe wel. 1765

ALSO he seten, and sholde souþe,  
 So comes a ladde in a iouþe,  
 And with him sixti oþer stronge,  
 With swerdes drawen, and kniues longe,  
 Ilkan in hande a ful god gleiue, 1770  
 And seyde, 'Undo, Bernard þe greyue!  
 Vndo swiþe, and lat us in,  
 Or þu art ded, bi seint Austin!'  
 Bernard stirt up, þat was ful big,  
 And caste a brinie up-on his rig, 1775  
 And grop an ax, þat was ful god,  
 Lep to þe dore, so he worþe wod,  
 And seyde, 'Hwat areþ ye, þat areþ þer-oute,  
 þat þus biginnen forto stroute?  
 Goth herne swiþe, fule þeues, 1780  
 For, bi þe Louerd þat man on leues,  
 Shol ich casten þe dore open,  
 Summe of you shal ich drepen!  
 And þe oþre shal ich kesten  
 In feteres, and ful faste festen!' 1785

1757. knith. 1761. mike. 1763. with; chinche (*see*  
 N. E. D.). 1764. il. 1765. mithe. 1772. latus.  
 1776. ar; *read* ax (*see* l. 1894).

‘Hwat haue ye seid?’ quoth a ladde,

‘Wenestū þat we ben adradde?

We sholen at þis dore gonge  
Maugre þin, carl, or ouht longe.’

He gripen sone a bulder-ston, 1790

And let it fleȳe, ful god won,

Ageyn þe dore, þat it to-rof:

Hauelok it saw, and þider drof,

And þe barre sone vt-drow,

þat was unride and gret ynow, 1795

And castę þe dore open wide,

And seide, ‘Her shal y now abide:

Comes swiþe vn-to me!

Datheyt hwo you henne fle!’

‘No,’ quod on, ‘þat shaltou coupe,’ 1800

And bigan til him to loupe,

In his hond his swerd ut-drawe,

Hauelok he wende þore hauę slawe;

And with [him] comen oþer two,

þat him wolde of liue hauę do. [Fol. 213, col. 1.]

Hauelok lifte up þe dore-tre, 1806

And at a dint he slow hem þre;

Was non of hem þat hise hernes

Ne lay þer-ute ageyn þe sternes.

þe ferþe þat he siþen mette, 1810

With þe barre so he him grette,

Bifor þe heued, þat þe riht eye

Vt of þe hole made he fleȳe,

And siþe clapte him on þe crune

1788. shole. 1789. outh. 1792. Agen. 1793. Auelok.  
1798. me datheit; *but* datheit belongs to l. 1799 (*where it recurs*).  
1800. quodh. 1804. Supply him. 1808. his. 1811. Wit.  
1812. rith.

So þat he stan-ded fel þor dune. 1815  
 Þe fifte þat he ouer-tok  
 Gáf he a ful sor dint ok,  
 Bitwen þe sholdres, þer he stod,  
 þat he spende his herte blod.  
 Þe sixte wende for to fle, 1820  
 And he clapte him with þe tre  
 Riht in þe fule necke so,  
 þat he smot hiſe necke on to.  
 Þanne þe sixe werē doune feld,  
 Þe seuenþe brayd ut his swerd, 1825  
 And wolde Hauelok riht *in* the eye;  
 And Hauelok le[t þe] barre fleye,  
 And smot him sone ageyn þe brest,  
 þat hauēde he neuere schrifte of *preſt*;  
 For he was ded on lesse hwile 1830  
 Þan men mouhte renne a mile.  
 Alle þe oþere werē ful kene;  
 A red þei taken hem bi-twene,  
 þat he sholden him bi-halue,  
 And brisen so, þat with no salue 1835  
 Ne sholde him helen leche non:  
 Þey drowen ut swerdes, ful god won,  
 And shoten on him, so don on bere  
 Dogges, þat wolden him to-tere,  
 Þanne men doth þe bere beyte: 1840  
 Þe laddes were kaske and teyte,  
 And vm-bi-yeden him ilkon.  
 Sum smot with tre, and sum with ston;  
 Summe putten with gleyue *in* bac and side,

1819. spen.	1822. Rith.	1824. doun.	1826. Riht.
1827. le; <i>read</i> let þe.	1829. schifte.	1831. mouthe.	1834.
sholde.	1835. wit.	1842. un bi yeden.	1843. wit.

And yeuen wundes longe and wide 1845

In twenti stedes, and wel mo,

Fro þe croune til the to.

Hwan he saw þat, he was wod,

And was it ferlik, hu he stod,

For the blod ran of his sides [Fol. 213, col. 2.]

So water þat fro þe welle glides; 1851

But þanne bigan he for to mowe

With the barre, and let hem shewe

Hu he cowþe sore smite;

For was þer non, long ne lite, 1855

þat he mouhte ouer-take,

þat he ne garte his croune krake;

So þat, on a litel stund,

Felde he twenti to þe grund.

**P**O bigan gret dine to rise, 1860

For þe laddes on ilke wise

Asayleden him with grete dintes,

[Ful] fer he stoden, [and] with flintes

And gleyues schoten him fro ferne,

For drepen him he wolden yerne; 1865

But dursten he newhen him no more

þanne he bor or leun wore.

**H**UWE Rauen þat dine herde,

And þowhte wel, þat men mis-ferde

With his louerd, for his wif; 1870

And grop an ore, and a long knif,

And þider drof al-so an hert,

1849. hw.  
asayleden wit.  
l. 1864).

1854. Hw.  
1863. Fro  
1869. þowthe.

1856. Mouthe.  
1862. Him  
1871. ore is correct; see l. 1886.

And cam þer on a litel stert,  
 And saw how [þat] þe laddes wode  
 Hauelok his louerd umbistode, 1875  
 And beten on him so doth þe smith  
 With þe hamer on þe stith.

‘**A**LLAS!’ quath Huwe, ‘þat y was boren!  
 þat euere et ich bred of koren!  
 þat ich here þis sorwe se! 1880  
 Roberd! William! hware ar ye?  
 Gripeth eyþer unker a god tre,  
 And late we nouht þise dogges fle,  
 Til ure louerd wreke [be];  
 Cometh swiþe, and folwes me! 1885  
 Ich haue in honde a ful god ore:  
 Datheit hwo ne smite sore!’  
 ‘Ya! leue, ya!’ quod Roberd sone,  
 ‘We hauen ful god liht of þe mone.’  
 Roberd a staf grop, strong and gret, 1890  
 þat mouhte ful wel bere a net,  
 And William Wendut grop a tre  
 Mikel grettere þan his þe,  
 And Bernard held his ax ful faste;  
 I seye, was he nouht þe laste; [Fol. 213 b, col. 1.]  
 And lopen forth so he weren wode 1896  
 To þe laddes, þer he stode,  
 And yaf hem wundes swiþe grete;  
 Þer mihte men wel se boyes bete,

1873. cham. 1874. *I supply* þat; H. *supplies* al. 1878.  
 hwat hwe; *read* quath Huwe. 1881. willam. 1882. eþer; *see*  
 l. 2665. 1883. nouth; doges. 1884. *Supply* be. 1887. wo.  
 1889. lith; *perhaps omit* þe. 1890. grop a staf. 1891. mouthe.  
 1892. willam. 1893. þre (*due to tre in l. 1892*). 1895. nouth.  
 1899. mithe.



And ribbes in herę sides breke, 1900  
 And Hauelok on hem wel [be] wreke.  
 He broken armes, he broken knes,  
 He broken shankes, he broken thes.  
 He dide þe blodę þerę renne dune  
 To þe fet riht fro the crune, 1905  
 For was þer spared heued non:  
 He leyden on heuędes, ful god won,  
 And made croune[s] breke and crake  
 Of þe broune, and of þe blake;  
 He maden herę backes al-so bloute 1910  
 Als herę wombes, and made hem rowte  
 Als he weren kradelbarnes:  
 So dos þe child þat moder þarnes.

DAPPEIT hwo recke! for he it seruedę;  
 Hwat dide he þore? He weren werewed! 1915  
 So longe hauęden he but and bet  
 With neues under hernes set,  
 þat of þo sixti men and on  
 Ne wente away þer liues non.

ON þe morwen, hwan it was day, 1920  
 Ilc on other wirwed lay  
 Als it were dogges þat weręn henged;  
 And summe leye in dikes slenget,  
 And summe in gripes bi þe her  
 Drawen ware, and laten ther. 1925

1901. *Supply* be. 1905. rith. 1908. croune. 1911. he (*for*  
*here*). 1914. *we* (pe); *read* wo = hwo. 1915. *weren* he; *cf.*  
 l. 1921. 1917. *For* hernes *read* heres (= eres) H. 1919. þer  
*away*; *read* away þer H. 1920. hhan (*for* hwan = hwan).

Sket cam tiding in-til Ubbe,  
 þat Hauelok hauēde with a clubbe  
 Of hise slawen sixti and on  
 Sergaunz, þe beste þat mihten gon.  
 ‘Deus!’ quoth Ubbe, ‘hwat may þis be?                    1930  
 Beterē is i nime miself and se  
 [Hwat] þis baret [oweth on] wold,  
 þanne i sende yunge or old.  
 For yif i sende him un-to,  
 I wenē men sholde him shame do,                                1935  
 And þat ne wolde ich for no þing:  
 I loue him wel, bi heuēne king!  
 Me wore leuere i wore lame  
 þanne men dide him ani shame,  
 Or tok, or onne handes leyde                    [Fol. 213 b, col. 2.]  
 Vn-ornelike, or shame seyde.’                                1941  
 He lep up on a stede liht,  
 And with him mani a noble kniht,  
 And ferde forth un-to þe tun,  
 And dide calle Bernard Brun                                        1945  
 Vt of his hus, hwan he þer cam;  
 And Bernard sone ageyn [him] nam,  
 Al to-tused and al to-torn,  
 Ner also naked so he was born,  
 And al to-brised, bac and þe:                                        1950  
 Quoth Ubbe, ‘Bernard, hwat is þe?  
 Hwo haues þe þus ille maked,  
 þus to-riuen, and al mad naked?’

1929. mithen.                    1931. his inime.                    1932. þat þis baret on  
 hwat is wold; *read* Hwat þis baret haueth on wold H. (*rather* oweth  
 on wold; *see* note).                    1941. Vn ornelfke (*with long s for i*); same.  
 1942. lith.                    1943. knith.                    1946. wan.                    1947. *Supply*  
 him.

'LOUERD, merci,' quoth he sone,  
 'To-nicht, also ros þe mone, 1955  
 Comen her mo þan sixti þeues,  
 With lokene copes and wide sleues,  
 Me forto robben and to pine,  
 And for to drepe me and mine.  
 Mi dore he broken up ful sket, 1960  
 And wolde me binden hond and fet.  
 Hwan þe godemen þat sawe,  
 Haelok, and he þat bi þe wowe  
 Leye, he stirten up sone on-on,  
 And summe grop tre, and sum grop ston, 1965  
 And driue hem ut, þei he weren crus,  
 So dogges ut of milne-hous.  
 Haelok grop þe dore-tre,  
 And [at] a dint he slow hem thre.  
 He is þe beste man at nede 1970  
 Þat euere-mar shal ride [on] stede!  
 Als helpe God, bi mine wone,  
 A þousand men is he worth one!  
 Yif he ne were, ich were nou ded,  
 So haue ich don mi soule red! 1975  
 But it is of him mikel sinne;  
 He maden him swilke woundes þrinne,  
 Þat of þe alþer-leste wunde  
 Were a stede brouht to grunde.  
 He haues a wunde in the side, 1980  
 With a gleyue, ful un-ride;  
 And he haues on þoru his arum,  
 Þer-of is ful mikel harum;

1954. Iouerd (*with large capital*); quot. 1962. Wan. 1969.  
*Supply at.* 1971. *Supply on*; see ll. 10, 26. 1973. þhousend of;  
*read þousand, omitting of* (see l. 127); his. 1975. Mi. 1976. hof.

And he hauę on þoru his þe,  
 Þe vn-rideste þat men may se; [Fol. 214, col. 1.] 1985  
 And oþere wundes hauę he stronge,  
 Mo than twenti, swiþe longe.  
 But siþen he hauęde laucht þe sor  
 Of þe wundes, was neuere bor  
 Þat so fauht so he fauht þanne; 1990  
 Was non þat hauęde þe hern-panne  
 So hard, þat he ne dede alto-crusshe,  
 And alto-shiuere, and alto-frusshe.  
 He folwede hem so hund dos hare,  
 Daþeyt on he wolde spare, 1995  
 Þat [he] ne made hem euerilk on  
 Ligge stille so doth þe ston:  
 And þer nis he nouht to frie,  
 For oþer sholde he make hem lye  
 Ded, or þei him hauęde slawen, 2000  
 Or alto-hewen, or alto-drawn.

LOUERD, haui no more pliht  
 Þat ich was greyþed þus to-niht.  
 Þus wolde þe theues me hauę reft,  
 God þank, he hauęnet sure keft. 2005  
 But it is of him mikel scape:  
 I wot þat he bes ded ful rape.'

QUOTH Ubbe, 'Bernard, seyst þou soth?'  
 'Ya, sire, that i ne lepe oth.  
 Yif y, louerd, a word leye, 2010

1984. þhe.	1986. oþe ( <i>for</i> oþere).	1988. lauth.	1990.
fauht ( <i>twice</i> ).	1992. cruhsse.	1996. <i>Supply</i> he.	1998.
nouth.	2002. plith.	2003. Of þat ( <i>om.</i> Of); þus greþed; nith.	
2005. But god (But <i>from</i> l. 2006).	2007. woth.	2009. ine.	

To-morwen do me hengen heye.  
 Þe burgeys þat þer-bi stode þore  
 Grundlike and grete oþes swore,  
 Litle and mikle, yunge and olde,  
 Þat was soth, þat Bernard tolde. 2015  
 Soth was, þat he wolden him bynde,  
 And trusse al þat he mihten fynde  
 Of hise, in arke or in kiste,  
 Þat he mouhte in seckes þriste.  
 'Louerd, away he haueden al born 2020  
 His þing, and him-self alto-torn,  
 But als[o] God self barw him wel,  
 Þat he ne tinte no catel.  
 Hwo mihte so mani stonde ageyn  
 Bi nihter-tale, kniht or swein? 2025  
 He weren bi tale sixti and ten,  
 Starke laddes, stalworþi men,  
 And on, þe mayster of hem alle,  
 Þat was þe name Griffin Galle.  
 Hwo mouhte ageyn so mani stonde, [Fol. 214, col. 2.]  
 But als þis man of ferne londe 2031  
 Haueth hem slawen with a tre?  
 Mikel ioie haue he!  
 God yeue him mikel god to welde,  
 Boþe in tun, and ek in felde! 2035  
 "Wel is set, he etes mete."  
 Quoth Ubbe, 'Doth him swiþe fete,  
 Þat y mouhte his woundes se,  
 Yf that he mouhten holed be.

2014. holde.      2017. mithen.      2019. mouthe.      2020. he  
 haueden al away.      2022. als.      2024. mithe.      2025. nither tale  
 knith.      2029. giffin.      2030. mouthe agey (!).      2036. We  
 (see ll. 772, 907).      2038. mouthe.      2039. mouthen.

For yf he mouhte couere yet, 2040  
 And gangen wel up-on hise fet,  
 Mi-self shal dubben him to kniht,  
 For-þi þat he is so wiht.  
 And yif he liuēde, þo foule theues,  
 Þat weren of Kaymes kin and Eues, 2045  
 He sholden hange bi þe necke :  
 Of here ded daþeit hwo recke,  
 Hwan he yeden þus on nihtes  
 To binde boþe burgmen and knihtes.  
 For bynderes loue ich neuere mo, 2050  
 Of hem ne yeue ich nouht a slo.'

**H**AUELOK was [to] Ubbe browht,  
 þat hauēde for him ful mikel pouht,  
 And mikel sorwe in his herte  
 For hise wundes, þat werę so smerte. 2055

**B**UT hwan his wundes weren shewed,  
 And a leche hauēde knawed  
 þat he hem mouhte ful wel hele,  
 Wel make him gange, and ful wel mele,  
 And wel a palefrey bistride, 2060  
 And wel up-on a stede ride,  
 þo let Ubbe al his care  
 And al his sorwe ouer-fare ;  
 And seyde, 'Cum now forth with me,  
 And Goldeboru, þi wif, with þe, 2065  
 And pine seriaunz alle þre,

2040. mouthe. 2042. dubbe (*for* dubbē); knith. 2043.  
 with. 2045. kaym. 2047. wo. 2048. nithes. 2049.  
 knithes. 2052. biforn; *read* to; browth. 2053. þouth.  
 2055. we (*for* were). 2057. knawed (i. e. made known; *causal*);  
 perhaps *read* knawen. 2058. mouthe.

For nou wile y yourę warant be ;  
 Wile y [pat] non of here frend  
 Þat þu slowe with þin hend  
 Mouhte wayte þe [to] slo, 2070  
 Also þou gange to and fro.  
 I shal lene þe a bowr  
 Þat is up in þe heye tour,  
 Til þou mowe ful wel go,  
 And wel ben hol of al þi wo. [Fol. 214 b, col. 1.]  
 It ne shal no þing ben bitwene 2076  
 Þi bour and min, also y wene,  
 But a fayr firrenę wowe ;—  
 Speke y loude, or spek y lowe,  
 Þou shalt ful wel heren me, 2080  
 And þan þu wilt, þou shalt me se.  
 A rof shal hile us boþe o-niht,  
 Þat none of mine, clerk ne kniht,  
 Ne sholęn þi wif no shame bede,  
 No more þan min, so God me rede !' 2085

**H**E dide un-to þe borw bringe  
 Sone anon, al with ioyinge,  
 His wif, and [ek] his serganz þre,  
 Þe beste men þat mouhte be.  
 Þe firste niht he lay þer-inne, 2090  
 Hisę wif, and [ek] his serganz þrinne,  
 Aboute þe middel of þe niht  
 Wok Ubbe, and saw a mikel liht

2068. *Supply* pat. 2070. Moucte; *supply* to. 2076, 2077.  
 H. places ben in l. 2077, *after* min; *altering* also to als (*it is hardly necessary*). 2080. sahalt; *and the second a is expuncted by mistake, instead of the first.* 2082. nith. 2083. knith. 2087. ioynge.  
 2088, 2091. *Supply* ek H. 2089. mouthe. 2090, 2092. nith.  
 2093. lith.

In þe bour [þer] Hauelok lay,  
Also briht so it were day.

2095

'DEUS!' quoth Ubbe, 'hwat may þis be?

Betere is i go miself, and se:

Hweþer he sitten nou, and wesseylen,

Or ani sotshipe to-deyle,

þis tid nihtes, also foles;

2100

þan birþ men casten hem in poles,

Or in a grip, or in þe fen:

Nou ne sitten none but wicke men,

Glotuns, reueres, or wicke þeues,

Bi Crist, þat alle folk on leues!

2105

HE stod, and totede in at a bord

Er he spak anlepi word,

And saw hem slepen faste ilkon,

And lye stille so þe ston;

And saw [þat] al þat mikel liht

2110

Fro Hauelok cam, þat was so briht.

Of his mouth it com ilk del,

þat was he war ful swiþe wel.

'Deus!' quoth he, 'hwat may þis mene!'

He calde boþe arwe men and kene,

2115

Knihtes and serganz swiþe sleie,

Mo þan an hundred, with-uten leye,

And bad hem alle comen and se

Hwat þat selcuth mihte be.

2094. þat; *read* þer; *see* l. 2121. 2095. brith. 2099. Or  
of ani shotshipe; *omit* of, and *read* sotshipe. 2100. nihtes.  
2101. birþe. 2104. reures. 2105. onne. 2107. Her;  
anlepi. 2110. *Supply* þat H.; lith. 2111. brith. 2112. il.  
2116. Knithes. 2119. mithe.



**A**LS þe knihtes were comen alle [Fol. 214 b, col. 2.]  
 þer Hauelok lay, ut of þe halle, 2121  
 So stod ut of his mouth a glem,  
 Riht al swilk so þe sunne-bem;  
 þat al so liht was þare, bi heuene!  
 So þer brenden serges seuene 2125  
 And an hundred serges ok:  
 þat durste hi sweren on a bok.  
 He slepen faste alle fue,  
 So he weren brouht of liue;  
 And Hauelok lay on his lift side, 2130  
 In his armes his brihte bride.  
 Bi þe pappes he leyen naked:  
 So faire two werē neuere maked  
 In a bed to lyen samen:—  
 þe knihtes þouht of hem god gamen, 2135  
 Hem forto shewe and loken to.  
 Riht also he stoden alle so,  
 And his bac was toward hem wend,  
 So werē he war of a croiz ful gent  
 On his riht shuldre, swiþe briht, 2140  
 Brihter þan gold ageyn þe liht;  
 Sô þat he wiste, heye and lowe,  
 þat it was kunrik þat he sawe.  
 It sparkede, and ful brihte shon  
 So doth þe gode charbucle-ston, 2145  
 þat men se mouhte, by þe liht,  
 A peni chesen, so was it briht.  
 Þanne bihelden he him faste,

2120. knithes.	2123. Rith.	2124. lith; wa ( <i>for</i> was).
2129. brouth.	2130. <i>Read</i> lifte?	2131. brithē. 2135.
knithes þouth.	2137. Rith.	2138. <i>Read</i> went? 2140. rith;
swe ( <i>for</i> swiþe); brith.	2141. Brithter; lith.	2144. brith.
2146. Mouthe se; lith.	2147. brith.	

So þat he knewen, at þe laste,  
 Þat he was Birkabeynes sone, 2150  
 Þat was herē king, þat was hem wone  
 Wel to yemen, and wel were  
 Ageynes uten-laddes here.  
 'For it was neuere yet a broþer  
 In al Denemark so lich anoþer 2155  
 So þis man, þat is so fayr  
 Als Birkabeyn; he is hise eyr.'

HE fellen sone at hise fet,  
 Was non of hem þat he ne gret,  
 Of ioie he weren allē so fawen 2160  
 So he him hauēden of erpe drawen.  
 Hise fet he kisten an hundred syþes,  
 Þe tos, þe nayles, and þe lithes,  
 So þat he bigan to wakne,  
 And with hem ful sore to blakne; [Fol. 215, col. 1.]  
 For he wende he wolden him slo, 2166  
 Or elles binde him, and do wo.

QUOTH Ubbe, 'Louerd, ne dred þe nowht,  
 Me þinkes that I se þi pouht.  
 Dere sone, wel is me 2170  
 Þat y þe with eyen se.  
 Man-red, louerd, bede y þe,  
 Þi man auht i ful wel to be;  
 For þu art comen of Birkabeyn,  
 Þat hauēde mani kniht and sweyn; 2175  
 And so shalt þou, louerd, haue,

2152. yeme (*for* yemē). 2164. *Here follows the catchword*—And  
 wit hem. 2165. wit. 2168. nowth. 2169. þouth.  
 2171. eyn. 2175. knith. 2176. *For so read also?*

pouh þu be yet a ful yung knaue.  
 pou shalt be king of al Denemark,  
 Was þer-inne neuere non so stark.  
 To-morwen shaltu manrede take 2180  
 Of þe brune and of þe blake;  
 Of alle þat aren in þis tun,  
 Boþe of erl, and of barun,  
 And of dreng, and of thayn,  
 And of kniht, and of sweyn. 2185  
 And so shaltu ben maked kniht  
 With blisse, for þou art so wiht.'

ÞO was Hauelok swiþe bliþe,  
 And þankede God ful fele siþe.  
 On þe morwen, hwan it was liht, 2190  
 And gon was þisternesse of niht,  
 Vbbe dide up-on a stede  
 A ladde lepe, and þider bede  
 Erles, barouns, drenges, theynes,  
 Klerkes, knihtes, burgeys, sweynes, 2195  
 þat he sholden comen a-non  
 Biforen him sone euerilkon,  
 Also he loueden here liues,  
 And here children and here wiues.

HIS bodę ne durste he non at-sitte 2200  
 þat he ne neme, for to wite  
 Sone, hwat wolde þe iustise:  
 And [he] bigan anon to rise,

2177. pou. 2185. knith. 2186. mad; *read* maked (*see*  
 ll. 5, 23); knith. 2187. Wit; with. 2190. wan; lith. 2191.  
 þe niht; *omit* þe (Mb.). 2195. knithes bugeys. 2198. louen  
 (*for* loueden). 2200. Hise. 2201. meme (*for* neme); *see*  
 l. 1207. 2203. *Supply* he.

And seyde sone, 'Liþes me,  
 Alle samen, þeu and fre. 2205  
 A þing ich wile you hereþ shauwe,  
 þat [ye] alle ful wel knawe.  
 Ye witen wel þat al þis lond  
 Was in Birkabeynes hond,  
 Þe day þat he was quic and ded; [Fol. 215, col. 2.] 2210  
 And how þat he, bi youre red,  
 Bitauhte hise children þre  
 Godard to yeme, and al his fe.  
 Hauelok his sone he him [bi-]tauhte,  
 And hise two douhtres, and al his auhte. 2215  
 Alle herden ye him swere  
 On boke, and on messe-gere,  
 þat he shulde yeme hem wel,  
 With-uten lac, with-uten tel.

**H**E let his oth al ouer-go, 2220  
 Euere wurþe him yuel and wo!  
 For þe maydnes here lif  
 Refte he boþen, with a knif;  
 And him shulde ok hauē slawen,  
 Þe knif was at his herte drawen; 2225  
 But God him wolde wel hauē saue,  
 He hauēde reunesse of þe knaue,  
 So þat [þo] he with his hend  
 Ne drop him nouht, þat sori fend!  
 But sone dide he a fishére 2230  
 Swiþe grete oþes swere,  
 þat he sholde drenchen him  
 In þe se, þat was ful brim.

2207. he; *read* ye.      2214. *Supply* bi-.      2217. bok (*see* l. 2311).  
 2228. *Supply* þo, or þanne.      2229. nouth; sor.

H W A N Grim saw þat he was so fayr,  
 And wiste he was þe rihte eir, 2235  
 Fro Denemark ful sone he fledde  
 In-til Englund, and þer him fedde  
 Mani winter, þat til þis day  
 Hauę he ben fed and fostred ay.  
 Lokes, hware he stondes her: 2240  
 In al þis werd ne hauę he per;  
 [Is] non so fayr, ne non so long,  
 Ne non so mikel, ne non so strong.  
 In þis middelerd nis no kniht  
 Half so strong, ne half so wiht. 2245  
 Bes of him ful glad and bliþe,  
 And cometh alle hider swiþe,  
 Manredę yourę louerd forto make,  
 Boþe brune and þe blake!  
 I shal mi-self do first þe gamen, 2250  
 And ye siþen alle samen.'

O knes ful fayre he him sette,  
 Mouhte noþing him þer-fro lette,  
 And bi-cam his man riht þare,  
 Þat alle sawen þat þerę ware. [Fol. 215 b, col. 1.] 2255

A F T E R him stirt up laddes ten,  
 And bi-comen hise men;  
 And siþen euerilk a baroun  
 Þat euere weren in al that toun;  
 And siþen drenges, and siþen thaynes, 2260

2235. Rith; *read* rihte. 2242. *Supply* Nis H; *Is seems better.*  
 2244. knith. 2245. with. 2253. Mouthe. 2254. is; Rith  
 2257. *A word (beye?) is added after men in a late hand.*

And siþen knihtes, and siþen sweynes;  
 So þat, or þat day was gon,  
 In al þe tun ne was nouht on  
 þat [he] ne was his man bi-comen:  
 Manrede of alle hauēde he nomen.

2265

**H**WAN he hauēde of hem alle  
 Manrede taken in the halle,  
 Grundlike dide he hem swere  
 þat he sholden him god feyth bere  
 Ageynes alle þat worē on liue;  
 þer-yen ne wolde neuer on striue,  
 þat he ne maden sonē þat oth,  
 Riche and poure, lef and loth.  
 Hwan þat was maked, sone he sende,  
 Vbbe, writes fer and hende,  
 After allē þat castels yemēde,  
 Burwes, tunes, sibbe and fremde,  
 þat þider sholden comen swiþe  
 Til him, and heren tiþandes bliþe,  
 þat he hem alle shulde telle:  
 Of hem ne wolde neuere on dwelle,  
 þat he ne come sonē plattinde,  
 Hwo hors ne hauēde, com gangande.  
 So þat with-inne a fourteniht,  
 In al Denemark ne was no kniht,  
 Ne conestable, ne shirēue,  
 þat com of Adam and of Eue,  
 þat he ne com biforn sire Ubbe:  
 He dredden him so þef doth clubbe.

2270

2275

2280

2285

2261. knithes.      2263. nouth.      2264. it; *read* he.      2276.  
 castel.      2277. an.      2284. -nith.      2285. knith.      2289.  
 þef (*with long s*) = þhef = þef; *as in* l. 2434.

**H**WAN he þe king hauðen [i]-gret, 2290  
 And he werēn alle dune set,  
 þo seyde Ubbe, 'Lokes here  
 Vre louerd swiþe dere,  
 þat shal ben king of al þe lond,  
 And haue us alle under hond! 2295  
 For he is Birkabeynes sone,  
 þe king þat was vmbē stonde wone  
 [Us] for to yemen, and wel were  
 With sharpe swerd and longe spere.  
 Lokes nou, hu he is fayr; [Fol. 215 b, col. 2.] 2300  
 Sikerlike he is hise eyr.  
 Falles alle to hise fet,  
 Bicomēs hise men ful sket.'  
 He werēn for Ubbe swiþe adrad,  
 And dide sone al þat he bad, 2305  
 And yet he deden sumdel more;  
 O bok ful grundlike he swore  
 þat he sholde with him halde  
 Boþe ageynes stille and bolde,  
 þat euere wolde his bodi dere: 2310  
 þat dide [he] hem o boke swere.

**H**WAN he hauðe manrede and oth  
 Taken of lef and [ek] of loth,  
 Vbbe dubbede him to kniht  
 With a swerd ful swiþe briht; 2315  
 And þe folk of al þe lond  
 Bitauhte him al in his hond,

2290. he haueden alle þe king gret; *cf.* l. 163. 2291. dun; *read*  
 dune *or* adune; *cf.* l. 162. 2298. *Supply* Us H.; yeme; (*cf.*  
 l. 2152). 2299. Wit sharp. 2300. hw. 2306. deden he.  
 2310. wode. 2311. *Supply* he. 2313. *Supply* ek. 2314.  
 knith. 2315. brith.





Pat was ful strong and [ek] ful wiht;  
 And William Wendut ec, his broþer,  
 And Huwe Rauen, þat was þat oper;  
 And made hem barouns alle þre, 2350  
 And yaf hem lond, and oper fe,  
 So mikel, þat ilker twenti knihtes  
 Hauēde of genge, dayes and nihtes.

**H**WAN þat feste was al don,  
 A thusand knihtes wel o bon 2355  
 With-held þe king, with him to lede;  
 Pat ilkan hauēde ful god stede,  
 Helm and sheld and brinie briht,  
 And al þe wepne þat fel to kniht.  
 With hem [ek] fiue thusand gode 2360  
 Sergaunz, þat werē to fyhten wode,  
 With-held he [þer], al of his genge:  
 Wile I namore þe storie lenge.  
 Yet hwan he hauēde of al þe lond  
 Þe casteles alle in his hond, 2365  
 And conestables don þer-inne,  
 He swor, he ne sholde neuer bliuue  
 Til þat he were of Godard wreken,  
 Pat ich haue of ofte speken.  
 Half hundred knihtes dede he calle, 2370  
 And hise fif thusand sergaunz alle,  
 And dide [hem] sweren on the bok  
 Sone, and on þe auter ok,  
 Pat he ne sholde neuere bliuue,

2347. *Supply* ek; with.      2348. willam; hec.      2352. twent (!).  
 2353. nihtes.      2355. ful wel; *om.* ful.      2358. brith.      2359.  
 knith.      2360. *Supply* ek; *cf.* l. 2371.      2361. fyht.      2362.  
*Supply* þer.      2365. *Cf.* l. 2276.      2370. Hal; *read* Half H.;  
 knithes.      2372. *Supply* hem.

Ne for loue, ne for sinne, 2375  
 Til þat he hauēden Godard funde,  
 And brouht biforn him faste bunde.

**P**ANNE he hauēden sworn þis oth,  
 Ne leten he nouht, for lef ne loth,  
 Þat he ne foren swiþe rathe 2380  
 Þer he was, unto þe pape  
 Þer he yet on hunting for  
 With mikel genge, and swiþe stor.  
 Robert, þat was of al þe ferd  
 Mayster, girt was with a swerd, 2385  
 And sat up-on a ful god stede,  
 Þat vnder him riht wolde wede;  
 He was þe firste þat with Godard  
 Spak, and seyde, 'Hede, caynard!  
 Hwat dost þu here at þis pape? [Fol. 216, col. 2.] 2390  
 Cum to þe kinge, swiþe and rape,  
 Þat sendes he þe word, and bedes,  
 Þat þu þenke hwat þu him dedes,  
 Hwan þu restes with a knif  
 Hise sistres here lif, 2395  
 And siþen bede þu in þe se  
 Drenchen him; þat herde he!  
 He is to þe swiþe grim:  
 Cum nu swiþe un-to him  
 Þat king is of þis kunerike, 2400  
 þu fulē man! þu wicke swike!  
 And he shal yelde þe þi mede,  
 Bi Crist þat wolde on rode blede!'

2377. brouth.  
 was girt wit.  
 2390. Wat dos.  
 kuneriche.

2378. swor; *read* sworn.  
 2387. Rith.  
 2391. king.

2379. nouth. 2385.  
 2389. canenard (*or* cauenard).  
 2396. An. 2400.

**H**WAN Godard herde þat [he] þer þrette,  
 With þe neuwe he Robert sette 2405  
 Biforn þe teth a dint ful strong.  
 And Robert kipt ut a knif long,  
 And smot him þoru þe rihte arum:  
 þer-of was ful litel harum.

**H**WAN his folk þat sau and herde, 2410  
 Hou Robert with herē louerd ferde,  
 He hauēden him wel ner browht of liue,  
 Ne weren his breþren and oþre fiue,  
 [þat] slowen of herē laddes ten,  
 Of Godardēs alþer-beste men. 2415  
 Hwan þe oþre sawen þat, he fledden,  
 And Godard swiþe loude gredde:  
 ‘Mine knihtes, hwat do ye?  
 Shuleþ ye þus-gate fro me fle?  
 Ich haue you fed, and yet shal fede, 2420  
 Helpeþ me nu in þis nede,  
 And lateþ ye nouht mi bodi spille,  
 Ne Hauelok don of me hiþe wille.  
 Yif ye it do, ye do you shame,  
 And bringeþ you-self in mikel blame.’ 2425  
 Hwan he þat herden, he wenten a-geyn,  
 And slowen a kniht and [ek] a sweyn  
 Of þe kinges ounen men,  
 And woundeden abuten ten.

2404. *Supply* he.      2408. rith.      2411. Hwou.      2412. browt.  
 2413. two breþren; *omit* two; and *perhaps* read breþer.      2414.  
*Supply* þat.      2418. knithes.      2419. Sule.      2421. Helpe.  
 2422. nouth.      2424. id (*for* it).      2427. knit; *supply* ek.

**P**E kinges men, hwan he þat sawe, 2430  
 Schuten on hem, heye and lowe,  
 And euerilk fot of hem [he] slowe  
 But Godard one, þat he flowe,  
 So þe þef [þat] men dos henge,  
 Or hund men shole in dike slenge. [Fol. 216 b, col. 1.]  
 He bunden him ful swiþe faste, 2436  
 Hwil þe bondes wolden laste,  
 þat he rorede als a bole,  
 þat wore parred in an hole  
 With dogges forto bite and beite: 2440  
 Werę þe bondes nouht to leite.  
 He bounden him so fele sore,  
 þat he gan crien Godes ore,  
 þat he [ne] sholde his hend of-plette;  
 Wolden he nouht þer-fore lette, 2445  
 þat he ne bounden hond and fet:  
 Dapeit þat on þat þer-fore let!  
 But dunten him so man doth bere,  
 And keste him on a scabbed mere,  
 Hisę nese went un-to þe crice: 2450  
 So ledden he þat fule swike,  
 Til he biforn Hauelok was brouht,  
 þat he hauęde ful wo wrowht,  
 Boþe with hungre and with cold,  
 Or he werę twelue winter old, 2455  
 And with mani heui swink,  
 With poure mete and feble drink,  
 And [with] swiþe wikke cloþes,

2431. Scuten. 2432. Supply he. 2434. Supply þat.  
 2439. he wore; omit he. 2441. nouth. 2442. fo (for fo = so).  
 2444. Supply ne; of his hend plette; see l. 2755. 2452. was biforn  
 hauelok brouth. 2453. haue (for hauede). 2454. hungred (!).  
 2455. twel. 2458. Supply with.

For al hiſe manie grete othes.  
 Nu beyes he his olde blame: 2460  
 ‘Old sinne makes newe shame:’  
 Hwan he was [brouht] so shamelike  
 Biforn þe king, þe fule swike,  
 þe king dede Ubbe swiþe calle  
 Hiſe erles, and hiſe barouns alle, 2465  
 Dreng and thein, burgeis and kniht,  
 And bad he sholden demen him riht:  
 For he kneu þe swike dam;  
 Euerilk del, God was him gram.  
 He setten hem dune bi þe wawe, 2470  
 Riche and pouere, heye and lowe,  
 þe olde men, and ek þe grom,  
 And made þer þe rihte dom,  
 And seyden unto þe king anon,  
 Þat stille sat [al]-so þe ston: 2475  
 ‘We demę, þat he be al quic flawen,  
 And siþen to þe galwes drawen  
 At þis foule mere tayl;  
 Þoru his fet a ful strong nayl;  
 And þore ben hinged with two feteres, [Fol. 216 b, col. 2.]  
 And þare þe writen þise leteres: 2481  
 ‘Þis is þe swike þat wende wel  
 þe king hauę reft þe lond ilk del,  
 And hiſe sistres with a knif  
 Boþe reſte here lif.’ 2485  
 Þis writ ſhal henge bi him þore;  
 þe dom is demd, ſeyę we na more.’

2460. holde. 2462. Wan; *supply* brouht. 2463. Brouht  
 biforn; *but* Brouht *belongs to* l. 2462. 2466. knith. 2467. rith.  
 2469. Euerildel. 2470. dun. 2472. helde. 2473. rithe.  
 2476. slawen; *read* flawen (*cf.* ll. 2495, 2502). 2477. drawe (*for*  
 drawe). 2479. is. 2480. wit. 2483. il. 2486. þare.

**H**WAN þe dom was demd and giue,  
 And he was with þe *præstes* shriue,  
 And it ne mouhte ben non oþer, 2490  
 Ne for fader ne for broþer,  
 [But] þat he sholde þarne lif;  
 Sket cam a ladde with a knif,  
 And bigan riht at þe to  
 For to ritte, and for to flo 2495  
 So it were grim or gore;  
 And he bigan [þo] for to rore,  
 Þat men mihte þeþen a mile  
 Here him rore, þat fule file.  
 Þe ladde ne let no wiht for-þi, 2500  
 Þey he crięde 'merci! merci!'  
 Þat [he] ne flow [him] euerilk del  
 With kniue mad of grunden stel.  
 Þei garte bringe þe mere sone,  
 Skabbed, and ful iuele o bone, 2505  
 And bunden him riht at hire tayl  
 With a rop of an old seyl,  
 And drowen him un-to þe galwes,  
 Nouth bi þe gate, but ouer þe falwes;  
 And henge [him] þore bi þe hals: 2510  
 Dapeit hwo recke! he was fals.

**P**AVNE he was ded, þat Sathanas,  
 Sket was seysed al þat his was  
 In þe kinges hand ilk del,  
 Lond and lith, and oþer catel, 2515

2489. wit.      2492. *Supply* But.      2494. Rith.      2496-7.  
*Transposed*; see note.      2497. *Supply* þo.      2498. mithe.      2500.  
 with.      2502. *Supply* he *and* him; eueril.      2503. knif; *read* kniue.  
 2505. Skabbeb.      2506. rith.      2509. But.      2510. *Supply*  
 him; Bi.      2514. il.

And þe king ful sone it yaf  
 Vbbe *in* þe hond, with a fayr staf,  
 And seyde, 'Her ich sayse þe  
 In al þe lond, in al þe fe.'  
 Þo swor Hauelok he sholde make, 2520  
 Al for Grim, of monēkes blake  
 A *priorie* to *seruen* in ay  
 Iesu Crist, til domesday,  
 For þe god he hauēde him don  
 Hwil he was pouere and [iuel] o bon. [Fol. 217, col. 1.]  
 And þer-of held he wel his oth, 2526  
 For he it made, God it wot!  
 In þe tun þer Grim was grauen,  
 Þat of Grim yet hauēs þe name.  
 Of Grim bidde ich na more spelle.— 2530  
 But hwan Godrich herde telle,  
 Of Cornwayle þat was erl,  
 (Þat fule traytōur, that mixed cherl!)  
 Þat Hauelok king was of Denemark,  
 And [with a ferde] strong and stark 2535  
 [Was] comen Engeland with-inne,  
 Engeland al for to winne;  
 And þat she, þat was so fayr,  
 Þat was of Engeland riht eir,  
 Was comen up at Grimesbi, 2540  
 He was ful sorwful and sori,  
 And seyde, 'Hwat shal me to raþe?  
 Goddot! i shal do slon hem baþe.

2517. wit.                      2519. The author has here omitted to tell us that  
 Havelok, at the desire of his wife, invades England. See the note.  
 2522. inne; *read in.*                      2524. haueden.                      2525. we (*for wel, error*  
*for iuel*); *cf. l. 2505.*                      2527. woth.                      2531. wan.                      2534. was  
 king.                      2535. ferde with him; *read with a ferde.*                      2536. *Supply*  
 Was.                      2539. rith.                      2540. þat was; *om. þat Z.*                      2541. sorful.  
 2543. Goddoth.

I shal don hengen hem ful heye,  
 So mote ich brouke mi rihte eie! 2545  
 But-yif he of mi londe fle;  
 Hwat wenden he desherite me?'  
 He dide sone ferd ut [bede,]  
 þat al þat euere mouhte o stede  
 Ride, or helm on heued bere, 2550  
 Brini on bac, and sheld and spere,  
 Or ani oper wepne bere,  
 Hand-ax, syþe, gisarm, or spere,  
 Or aunlaz, and god long knif,  
 þat, als he louede leme or lif, 2555  
 þat þey sholden comen him to—  
 With ful god wepne [y-boren] so—  
 To Lincólne, þer he lay,  
 Of Marz þe seuentenþe day,  
 So þat he coupe hem god þank; 2560  
 And yif þat ani were so rank  
 That he þanne ne come anon,  
 He swor bi Crist, and [bi] seint Iohan,  
 That he sholde maken him þral,  
 And al his of-spring forth with-al. 2565

**P**E Englishe [men] þat herde þat,  
 Was non þat euere his bode [at]-sat;  
 For he him dredde swiþe sore,  
 So runci spore, and mikle more.  
 At þe day he come sone [Fol. 217, col. 2.] 2570

2545. Rith. 2546. lond; cf. l. 2599. 2547. he to; om. to.  
 2548. bidde; read bede. 2557. ye ber; read y-boren. 2561.  
 rang. 2563. Supply bi; cf. l. 1112. 2566. Supply men.  
 2567. Read at-sat; see l. 2200. 2569. Runci.



þat he hem sette, ful wel o bone,  
 To Lincólne, with gode stedes,  
 And al þe wepne þat kniht ledes.  
 Hwan he worȝ come, sket was þe erl yare  
 Ageynes Denshe men to fare, 2575  
 And seyde, 'Lyþes nu alle samen,  
 Hauē ich you gadred for no gamen,  
 But ich wilȝ seyen you forhwi;  
 Lokes hware here at Grimesbi  
 Is uten-laddes here comen, 2580  
 And hauȝ þe prioriē numen;  
 Al þat euere mihten he finde,  
 He brenne kirkes, and prestes binde;  
 He strangleth monkes and nunnes boȝe:  
 Hwat wilȝ ye, frendes, her-of rede? 2585  
 Yif he regne þus-gate longe,  
 He moun us alle ouer-gange,  
 He moun vs alle quic henge or slo,  
 Or þral maken and do ful wo,  
 Or elles reue us ure liues, 2590  
 And ure children, and ure wiues.  
 But dos nu als ich wilȝ you lere,  
 Als ye wilȝ be with me dere;  
 Nimes nu swiȝe forth and rape,  
 And helpes me and yu-self bape, 2595  
 And slos up-on þe dogges swiȝe:  
 For shal [i] neuere more be bliȝe,  
 Ne hoseled ben, ne of prest shriuen,

2573. knith.	2574. þare or yare; see l. 2954.	2577.
gadred you.	2578. forþi (error for forþi = forhwi).	2580.
Hise; read Is Z (here means army).	2581. haues nu; omit nu.	
2582. mithen.	2585. Wat; frend; offe Rede.	2587. Moun.
2596. up o.	2597. Supply i.	

Til þat he ben of londe driuen.  
 Nime we swiþe, and do hem fle, 2600  
 And folwes alle faste me;  
 For ich am he, of al þe ferd,  
 þat first shal slo with drawen swerd.  
 Daþeyt hwo ne stonde faste  
 Bi me, hwil hise armes laste! 2605  
 'Ye! lef, ye!' quoth þe erl Guntér;  
 'Ya!' quoth þe erl of Cestre, Reynér.  
 And so dide alle þat þer stode,  
 And stirte forth so he werę wode.  
 þo mouhtę men se þe brinies brihte 2610  
 On backes keste, and late rihte,  
 þe helmes heye on heued sette;  
 To armes al so swiþe plette,  
 þat þei wore on a litel stunde  
 Greyþed, als men mihtę telle a pund; [Fol. 217 b, col. 1.]  
 And lopen on stedes sone anon, 2616  
 And toward Grimesbi, ful god won,  
 He foren softe bi þe sti,  
 Til he comę ney at Grimesbi.

**H**AUELOK, þat hauęde spired wel 2620  
 Of here fare, euerilk del,  
 With al his ferd cam hem a-geyn,  
 For-bar he noþer kniht ne sweyn.  
 þe firste kniht þat he þer mette  
 With þe swerd so he him grette, 2625  
 [þat] his heued of he plette,  
 Wolde he nouht for sinne lette.

2606; couth; *read* quoth, as in l. 2607. 2610. mouthe. 2611.  
 rithe. 2615. Greyþet (*see* l. 714); mithe. 2621. eueril.  
 2623. knith. 2624. knith. 2626. For; *read* þat. 2627. nouth.

Roberd saw þat dint so hende,  
 Wolde he neuere þepen wende,  
 Til þat he hauēde anoþer slawen 2630  
 With þe swerd he held ut-drawen.  
 William Wendut his swerd vt-drow,  
 And þe þredde so sore he slow,  
 Þat he made up-on the feld  
 His lift arm fleye, with the swerd. 2635

**H**UWE Rauē ne forgat nouht  
 Þe swerd he hauēde þider brouht;  
 He kipte it up, and smot ful sore  
 An erl, þat he saw priken þore  
 Ful noblelike upon a stede, 2640  
 Þat with him wolde al quic wede.  
 He smot him on þe heued so,  
 Þat he þe heued clef a-two,  
 And þat [he] bi þe shuldre-blade  
 Þe sharpe swerd let [dune] wade 2645  
 Þorw the brest unto þe herte;  
 Þe dint bigan ful sorę to smerte,  
 Þat þe erl fel dun a-non,  
 Al so ded so ani ston.  
 Quoth Ubbe, 'Nu dwelle ich to longe,' 2650  
 And let his stede sone gonge  
 To Godrich, with a [ful] god spere  
 Þat he saw a-noþer bere,  
 And smot Godrich, and *Godrich* him,  
 Hetelike with herte grim, 2655

2629. þepe (*for* þepē); *cf.* l. 2727. 2632. Willam. 2635.  
*Cf.* l. 1825 (with = by means of). 2636. nouth. 2637. brouth.  
 2644. *Supply* he; shudre. 2645. *Supply* dune. 2651. leth.  
 2652. *Supply* ful. 2654. smoth. 2655. *Perhaps read* Hertelike,  
*as in* l. 2748.

So þat he boþe felle dune,  
 To þe erþe, first þe croune.  
 Þanne he wore~~n~~ fallen dune boþen,  
 Grundlike herē swerdes [he] ut-drowen,  
 Þat weren swiþe sharp and gode, [Fol. 217 b, col. 2.] 2660  
 And fouhten so þei wore~~n~~ wode,  
 Þat þe swot ran fro þe crune  
 [To the fet riht þere adune.]  
 Þer mouhte men se two knihtes bete  
 Ayþer on oþer dintes grete, 2665  
 So þat with [þe] alper-leste dint  
 Were al to-shiuered a flint.  
 So was bi-twenen hem a fiht  
 Fro þe morwen ner to þe niht,  
 So þat þei [stinted] nouht ne blunne, 2670  
 Til þat to sette bigan þe sunne.  
 Þo yaf Godrich þorw þe side  
 Vbbe a wunde ful un-ride,  
 So þat þorw þat ilke wounde  
 Hauēde [he] ben brouht to grunde, 2675  
 And his heued al of-slawn,  
 Yif God ne were, and Huwe Rauē,  
 Þat drow him fro Godrich away,  
 And barw him so þat ilke day.  
 But er he were fro Godrich drawen, 2680  
 Þer were a þousind knihtes slawn  
 Bi boþe halue, and mo y-nowe,  
 Þer þe ferdes to-gidere slowe.  
 Þer was swilk dreping of þe folk,

2658. dun. 2659. *Supply* he. 2663. *Supplied from* ll. 1904,  
 1905. 2664. mouthe; to knithes. 2666. *Supply* þe; lest;  
*cf.* l. 1978 H. 2670. *Supply* stinte H. (*or* stinted); nouth; blinne  
 (error for blunne). 2675. *Supply* he; brouht; þe grunde (*om.* þe).

þat on þe feld was neuere a polk 2685  
 þat it ne stod of blod so ful  
 þat þe strem ran intil þe hul.  
 þo tarst bigan Godrich to go  
 Vp-on þe Danshe, and faste to slo,  
 And forth-riht, also [leun] fares 2690  
 þat neuere kines best ne spares,  
 þanne is [he] gon, for he garte alle  
 þe Denshe men biforn him falle.  
 He felde browne, he felde blake,  
 þat he mouhte ouer-take. 2695  
 Was neuere non þat mouhte þaue  
 Hiȝ dintes, noyþer kniht ne knaue,  
 þat he [ne] felden so dos þe gres  
 Bi-forn þe syþe þat ful sharp is.  
 Hwan Hauelok saw his folk so britteneȝ, 2700  
 And his ferd so swiþe littenȝ,  
 He cam driuende up-on a stede,  
 And bigan til him to grede,  
 And seyde, 'Godrich, hwat is þe  
 þat þou fare þus with me, 2705  
 And mine gode knihtes slos? [Fol. 218, col. 1.]  
 Siker-like þou mis-gos.  
 þou wost ful wel, yif þu wilt wite,  
 þat Aþelwold þe dide sitte  
 On knes, and sweren on messe-bok, 2710  
 On caliz, and on [pateyn] ok,  
 þat þou hiȝ douhter sholdest yelde,  
 þan she were wimman of elde,

2688. tarst (*sic*) = at arst (at first) H.; or read faste, as in l. 2689.  
 2690. rith; leun; read leun H. (as in l. 1867). 2692. his;  
 supply he. 2695. mouthe. 2697. knith. 2698. Supply ne.  
 2704. wat. 2709. site. 2711. MS. here repeats messe, by  
 mistake; read pateyn (cf. l. 187); hok (for ok).

Engelond [al] euerilk del :  
 Godrich þe erl, þou wost it wel. 2715  
 Do nu wel with-uten fiht,  
 Yeld hire þe lond, for þat is riht.  
 Wile ich forgiue þe þe lathe,  
 Al mi dede and al mi wrathe,  
 For y se þu art so wiht, 2720  
 And of þi bodi so god kniht.  
 'þat ne wile ich neuere mo,'  
 Quoth erl Godrich, 'for ich shal slo  
 þe, and hire for-henge heye.  
 I shal prist ut þi rihte eye 2725  
 þat þou lokes with on me,  
 But þu swiþe heþen fle.'  
 He grop þe swerd ut sone anon,  
 And hew on Haelok, ful god won,  
 So þat he clef his sheld on-two: 2730  
 Hwan Haelok saw þat shame do  
 His bodi, þer bi-forn his ferd,  
 He drow ut sone his gode swerd,  
 And smot him so up-on þe crune,  
 þat Godrich fel to þe erþe adune. 2735  
 But Godrich stirt up swiþe sket—  
 Lay he nowht longe at his fet—  
 And smot him on þe sholdre so,  
 þat he dide þare undo  
 Of his brinie ringes mo 2740  
 þan þat ich kan tellen fro ;  
 And woundede him riht in þe flesh,  
 þat tendre was and swiþe nesh,  
 So þat þe blod ran til his to :

2714. *Supply* al; il.    2717. rith.    2720. with.    2721. knith.  
 2725. rith.    2737. nowth.    2742. rith.

þo was Hauelok swiþe wo, 2745  
 þat he hauēde of him drawen  
 Blod, and [ek] so sore him slawen.  
 Hertelike til him he wente,  
 And Godrich þer fullike shente;  
 For his swerd he hof up heye, 2750  
 And þe hand he dide of-fleye, [Fol. 218, col. 2.]  
 þat he smot him with so sore:  
 Hu mihte he don him shame more?

**H**WAN he hauēde him so shamed,  
 His hand of-plat, and yuelē lamed, 2755  
 He tok him sone bi þe necke  
 Als a traytōur, daþeyt hwo recke!  
 And dide him binde and fetere wel  
 With gode feteres al of stel;  
 And to þe quen he sende him, 2760  
 þat birde wel to him ben grim;  
 And bad she sholde don him gete,  
 And þat non ne sholde him bete,  
 Ne shame do, for he was kniht,  
 Til knihtes hauēden demd him riht. 2765  
 þan þe Englishē men þat sawe,  
 þat þei wisten, heye and lawe,  
 þat Goldeboru, þat was so fayr,  
 Was of Engeland riht eyr,  
 And þat þe king hire hauēde wedded, 2770  
 And hauēden ben samen bedded,  
 He comen alle, to criē merci,  
 Vnto þe king, at one cri,

2747. *Supp'y* ek.      2749. fulike.      2753. Hw mithe.      2757.  
 wo.      2764. knith.      2765. knithes; Rith      2769. rith.

And beden him sone manrede and oth,  
 þat he ne sholden, for lef ne loth, 2775  
 Neuere more ageyn him go,  
 Ne ride, for wele ne for wo.

**P**E king ne wolde nouht for-sake,  
 þat he ne shulde of hem take  
 Manrede þat he beden, and ok 2780  
 Hold opes sweren on þe bok;  
 But or bad he, þat þider were brouht  
 þe quen, for hem—swilk was his pouht—  
 For to se, and forto shawe,  
 Yif þat he hire wolde knawe. 2785  
 þoru hem witen wolde he  
 Yif þat she auhte quen to be.

**S**IXE erles weren sone yare,  
 After hire for to fare.  
 He nomen on-on, and comen sone, 2790  
 And brouhten hire, þat under mone  
 In al þe werd ne hauede per  
 Of hendeleike, fer ne ner.  
 Hwan she was come þider, alle  
 þe Engliſhe men bi-gunne falle 2795  
 O knes, and greten swiþe sore, [Fol. 218 b, col. 1.]  
 And seyden, 'Leuēdi, Kristes ore  
 And youres! we hauen misdo mikel,  
 þat we ayeyn you hauē be fikel,  
 For Englund auhte forto ben 2800

2777. wel. 2778. nouth. 2782. brouth. 2783. þouth.  
 2786. þoruth; *read* þoru. 2787. aucte. 2791. brouthen. 2793.  
 -leik. 2795. to falle; *om.* to. 2797. kistes. 2799. ayen  
 (see l. 2776). 2800. ben youres; *but* youres *belongs to* l. 2801.



Youres, and we youre men.  
 Is non of us, [ne] yung ne old,  
 þat [he] ne wot, þat Apelwold  
 Was king of [al] þis kunerike,  
 And ye his eyr, and þat þe swike 2805  
 Hauę it halden with mikel wronge:  
 God leue him sone [hey] to honge!

QUOTH Hauelok, 'Hwan þat ye it wite,  
 Nu wile ich þat ye doune sitte,  
 And, after Godrich hauę wrouht, 2810  
 þat hauę him-self in sorwe brouht,  
 Lokes þat ye demen him riht,  
 For dom ne spareth clerk ne kniht;  
 And sipen shal ich under-stonde  
 Of you, [al] after lawe of londe, 2815  
 Manrede, and holde oþes boþe,  
 Yif ye it wilen, and ek rothe.'  
 Anon þer dune he hem sette,  
 For non þe dom ne durste lette,  
 And demden, him to binden faste 2820  
 Vp-on an asse swiþe un-wraste,  
 Andelong, nouht ouer-þwert,  
 His nose went unto þe stert,  
 And so [un]-to Lincólne lede,  
 Shamelike in wicke wede— 2825  
 And hwan he [come] un-to þe borw,

2801. And we youre men and youres; *omit* and youres, and *prefix*  
 Youres from l. 2800 H. 2802. *Supply* ne. 2803. we; *read*  
 he (*agreeing with* wot). 2804. *Supply* al. 2807. *Supply*  
 hey H. 2808. Quot. 2809. doun (*see* l. 2818); site. 2811.  
 in sorwe him self brouth. 2812. rith. 2813. spared (*read*  
 spareth); knith. 2815. *Supply* al. 2823. went *is a pp.* 2824.  
*Supply* un-; *see* ll. 2826, 2828. 2826. cam; *read* come (*subj.*).

Shamelike ben led þer-þoru,  
 Bisouþe þe borw, un-to a grene—  
 Þat þare is yete, als y wene—  
 And þerę be bunden til a stake, 2830  
 Abouten him ful gret fir make,  
 And al to dust be brend riht þore:—  
 And yete demden he þer more,  
 Oþer swikes for to warne,  
 Þat hise children shulde þarne 2835  
 Euere-more þat eritage,  
 Þat his was, for hise utrage.

H WAN þe dom was demd and seyð,  
 Sket was þe swike on þe asse leyð,  
 And [led un-]til þat ilke grene, 2840  
 And brend til asken al bidene. [Fol. 218 b, col. 2.]  
 Þo was Goldeboru ful bliþe,  
 She þanked God [ful] fele syþe  
 Þat þe fule swike was brend,  
 Þat wende wel hirę bodi hauę shend; 2845  
 And seyde, ‘Nu is timę to take  
 Manrede of brune and of blake,  
 Þat ich ride se and go:  
 Nu ich am wreken of mi fo.’

H AUelok anon manrede tok 2850  
 Of alle Englishe, on þe bok,  
 And dide hem grete oþes swere,  
 Þat he sholden him god feyth bere

2829. yet.      2832. Rith þere.      2833. yet.      2835. sulde.  
 2840. And him til (!); (*perhaps for* hun-til); *read* And led un-til; *see*  
 l. 2827.      2843. *Supply* ful.      2848. se ride.      2849. wreke  
 (*for* wreke); *see* l. 2992.

Ageyn [hem] alle þat woren liues,  
And þat sholde ben born of wiues. 2855

**P**AVNE he hauēde sikernesse  
Taken of more and of lesse,  
Al at hisē wille, so dide he calle  
þe erl of Cestre, and hisē men alle,  
þat was yung kniht with-uten wif, 2860  
And seyde, 'Sire erl, bi mi lif,  
And þou wile mi *conseyl* tro,  
Ful wel shal ich with þe do;  
For ich shal yeue þe to wiue  
þe fairest þing that is oliue. 2865  
þat is Gunnild of Grimesby,  
Grimes douhter, bi seint Dauy,  
þat me forth brouhte, and wel fedde,  
And ut of Denemark with me fledde,  
Me for to berwen fro mi ded: 2870  
Sikerlike, þoru his red  
Haue ich liued in-to þis day,  
Blissed worþe his soule ay!  
I rede þat þu hire take,  
And spuse, and curteysye make; 2875  
For she is fayr, and she is fre,  
And al so hende so she may be.  
þertekene she is wel with me,  
þat shal ich ful wel shewe þe;  
For ich [wile] giue þe a giue, 2880  
þat euere-more, hwil ich liue,  
For hire shal-tu be with me dere,

2854. *Supply* hem.2867. douter.  
(as in ll. 697, 1426).2880. *Supply* wile.2856. *haueden*.2868. *broute*.2875. *curteyse* (*for* *curteysyē*); see l. 194.2860. *knith wit*.2870. *burwe*; *read* *berwen*

þat wile ich þat þis folc al here.  
 þe erl ne wolde nouht ageyn  
 þe kinge be, for kniht ne sweyn, 2885  
 Ne of þe spusing seyen nay, [Fol. 219, col. 1.]  
 But spusede [hire] þat ilke day.  
 þat spusinge was [in] god time maked,  
 For it ne were neuere clad ne naked  
 In a þede samened two 2890  
 þat cam to-gidere, liuēde so,  
 So þey diden al herē liue:  
 He geten samen sonen fīue,  
 þat were þe beste men at nede  
 þat mouhte riden on ani stede. 2895  
 Hwan Guznild was to Cestre brouht,  
 Hauelok þe gode ne for-gat nouht  
 Bertram, þat was the erles kok,  
 þat he ne dide [him] callen ok,  
 And seyde, 'Frend, so God me rede, 2900  
 Nu shaltu haue riche mede  
 For wissing, and þi gode dede  
 þat tu me dides in ful gret nede.  
 For þanne y yede in mi cuuel,  
 And ich ne hauēde bred ne sowel, 2905  
 Ne y ne hauēde no catel,  
 þou feddes and claddes me ful wel.  
 Hauē nu for-þi of Cornwayle  
 þe erldom ilk del, with-uten fayle,  
 And al þe lond þat Godrich held, 2910  
 Boþe in towne and ek in feld;

2884. nouth.      2885. king; knith.      2887. *Supply* hire.  
 2888. *Supply* in H.      2889. ne were = nere.      2892. dide (*for*  
 didē).      2895. mouthe.      2896. brouth.      2897. nouth.  
 2899. *Supply* him H.      2905. haue.      2909. ildel.

And þerto wile ich þat þu spuse,  
 And fayre bring hire un-til huse,  
 Grimes douhter, Leuiue þe hende,  
 For þider shal she with þe wende. 2915  
 Hire semes curteys forto be,  
 For she is fayr so flour on tre;  
 Þe heu is swilk in hire ler  
 So [is] þe rose in roser,  
 Hwan it is fayre sprad ut newe 2920  
 Ageyn þe sunne briht and lewe.  
 And girde him sone with þe swerd  
 Of þe erldom, bi-forn his ferd,  
 And with his hond he made him kniht,  
 And yaf him armes, for þat was riht, 2925  
 And dide him þere sone wedde  
 Hire þat was ful swete in bedde.

AFTER þat he spused wore,  
 Wolde þe erl nouht dwelle þore,  
 But sone nam until his lond, 2930  
 And seysed it al in his hond, [Fol. 219, col. 2.]  
 And liuēde þer-inne, he and his wif,  
 An hundred winter in god lif,  
 And gaten mani children samen,  
 And liuēden ay in blisse and gamen. 2935  
 Hwan þe maydens werē spused bope,  
 Hauelok anon bigan ful rathe  
 His Denshe men to feste wel  
 With riche landes and catel,

2914. douter. 2919. Supply is. 2920. fayr. 2921.  
 brith. 2924. knith. 2925. rith. 2929. nouth. 2933.  
*Between this line and the next are inserted in the MS. the words: For*  
*he saw þat he, which have been subsequently struck out by the same*  
*hand, and the word vacat affixed.* 2939. Wit.

So þat he weren alle riche: 2940  
 For he was large and nouht chiche.

**P**ER-after sone, with his here,  
 For he to Lundone, forto bere  
 Corune, so þat it sawe,  
 Englishe and Denshe, heye and lowe, 2945  
 Hou he it bar with mikel pride,  
 For his barnage þat was un-ride.

**P**E feste of his coruning  
 Lastede with gret ioying  
 Fourti dawes, and sumdel mo; 2950  
 þo bigummen þe Denshe to go  
 Vn-to þe king, to aske leue,  
 And he ne wolde hem nouht greue;  
 For he saw þat he woren yare  
 In-to Denemark for to fare; 2955  
 But gaf hem leue sone anon,  
 And bitauhte hem seint Iohan;  
 And bad Ubbe, his iustise,  
 þat he sholde on ilke wise  
 Denemark yeme and gete so, 2960  
 þat no pleynte come him to.

**H**WAN he worę parted alle samen,  
 Hauelok bi-lefte with ioie and gamen  
 In Engeland, and was þer-inne  
 Sixti winter king with winne, 2965

2941. nouth chinche (*read* chiche.  
 Hwou. 2948. corunig.  
 2963. wit.

2945. Henglishe ant.  
 2949. Laste.

2946.  
 2953. nouth.

And Goldeboru quen, þat i wene  
 So mikel loue was hem bitwene,  
 þat al þe werd spak of hem two :  
 He louede hire, and she him so,  
 þat neyþer oper mihte be 2970  
 Fro oper, ne no ioie se  
 But-yf he were to-gidere bope ;  
 Neuere yete ne werē he wrope,  
 For here loue was ay newe ;  
 Neuere yete wordes ne grewe [Fol. 219 b, col. 1.]  
 Bitwene hem, hwar-of no lathe 2976  
 Mihte rise, ne no wrathe.

**H**E geten children hem bi-twene  
 Sones and douhtres riht fuetene,  
 Hwar-of þe sones werē kinges alle, 2980  
 So wolde god it sholde bifalle ;  
 And þe douhtres alle *quenes* :  
 'Him stondes wel þat god child strenes.'—  
 Nu haue ye herd þe gest al þoru  
 Of Hauelok and of Goldeborw ; 2985  
 Hu he werē boren, and hu fedde,  
 And hou he worn with wronge ledde  
 In here youþe, with trecherie,  
 With tresoun, and with felounye ;  
 And hou þe swikes haueden tiht 2990  
 Reuen hem þat was here riht,  
 And hou he weren wreken wel,  
 Haue ich seyð you euerilk del ;

2970. ope (*for opere*) ; mithe. 2972. to gidede (!). 2976. ne.  
 2977. Mithe. 2979. douthres rith. 2986. Hw ; born ; hw.  
 2987. hwou. 2990. hwou ; thit. 2991. rith. 2992. hwou.  
 2993. sey (*read seyð*) ; euerildel.

Forþi ich wolde biseken you  
 þat hauen herd þe rime nu, 2995  
 þat ilke of you, with gode wille,  
 Seye a pater-noster stille,  
 For him þat hauēth þe ryme maked,  
 And þer-forē fele nihtes waked;  
 þat Iesu Crist his soule bringe 3000  
 Bi-forn his fader at his endinge.  
 A—M—E—N.

2994. And forþi; *om.* And.

2995. rim.

2998. rym.



# THE CAMBRIDGE FRAGMENTS

(d)	Til sche be womman of elde,	174
	þat sche it may here selwe welde.	175
	[H]e andswerde and seyð anon,	176
	Be Iesu crist and sen Ion,	177
	þat erl godric of Cornualie	178
	[H]e is trewe man, wytouten fa(i)le,	179
	Wis man of red, and of dede,	180
	. . . an men haued of mekel drede ;	181
	[A]nd he may here best ȝeme,	182
	. . . of hym ymket queme	183
(e)	A riche king, strong and starc.	341
	His name it was birkebein ;	342
	He hauede mani knighth and swen ;	343
	He was fayr man and wyth,	344
	And is body þe beste knighth	345
	þat euere mith nemen to werre	346
	Riden on stede, or handelen spere.	347
	þre childre he hauede be . . . . . if,	348
	þat he louede as is . . .	349
	He hadde sone & doutres to	350
	Swiþe fayr, and fellet so.	351
	þan he was in is best[e po]ynt	352
	Iuel him toke in euere gonyt	353
	þat he was so wyth euel bunde,	354
	þat he (ne) mith liuen non stunde.	355
	þan he mith no longere liuen	356
	For siluir þat he mithe giuen.	357
	þan he þat wiste, he dede senden	358

176 Space left for initial *H*.

183 Read *ym[a]ket*

352 [*po*]ynt : traces of *po* visible.

After prestis, fer and henden,	359
After chan(o)n(e)s, munkes boþen,	360
Hym to wissen and to roþen,	361
Hym to husselen and to schriue,	362
Quiles þat he were oliue.	363
Quan he was husseled & wel schriuen,	364
(f) Grim toke þe cheld, and bond wel faste,	537
Whiles þe bondes mith laste,	538
þat was a foul strong line;	539
þanne was haeloc in mekel pine.	540
Wiste he neuere er of wo;	541
But Iesu crist, þat made to go	542
þe alte, & þe dumme for to speke,	543
Haeloc þout of godard wreke,	544
*And þat he do him al quic flo	
*Wyt schame and pine and mekel wo.	
*For (he) it seruede on fele manere,	
*Als ye schuln forwar here.	
*He was traitur in mani akas,	
And he it aboute þat he swilc was.	
*He broute þe child in mechel sorwen,	
*Yet wurth is soule neuere borwen.	
*He bad grim don is comaundemet,	
*And þerfore was he ate þe laste schent.	
For þanne grim hadde him faste bounde,	545
And sithen in an old cloþe wnden,	546
*He þriste in his muth wel faste	
A corner of an old cloþe, ful hun-wraste,	547
þat he ne mith speken ne greden,	548
Quider so he wolde hym leden.	549

364 *schriuen* partly cut away.547 MS. *hinwraste*.549 After this line traces of another cut away, perhaps 'For godard hadde comaund him so': *him* so plain, tops of *hadde comaund* visible.

## NOTES

[NOTES taken from Sir Frederick Madden's edition of 1828 are, as in the original edition of this book, distinguished by the letter M. Notes due to Professor Skeat are also indicated, but the greater part of his work on the text is contained in the foot-notes. Reference is made to articles only when they contain matter of first importance for the text of *Havelok*, and in the case of any particular emendation the first proposal only is mentioned. In general, parallels are quoted at the first occurrence of a phrase or line, and cross-references are omitted.]

9-10. Cf. ll. 25-6, 87-8, 1970-1, 2894-5.

27. *It was*, 'there was', the anticipated subject being commonly expressed by *it* in ME.; cf. ll. 462, 591, 723, 2076, &c.

*bi are dawes*, 'in former days', ON. *ár-dagar*.

28. *þat in his timè*, 'in whose time'; for since the ME. relative *þat* was incapable of inflexion, it was often supplemented by the personal pronoun: *þat he* = 'who'; *þat his* = 'whose'; *þat him* = 'whom'.

29. *He dede maken*, &c., '(which) he caused to be made and to be well kept'. The infinitive after *don*, *maken* is freely used with a passive value; cf. ll. 38, 41, &c.

31-2. For this enumeration cf. ll. 1327-8, 2183-5, 2194-5, 2260-1, 2465-6.

38. 'And everywhere had them called (to preferment)'.

44. 'Neither gold nor wealth went for them, i.e. ransomed them'; cf. l. 1430.

55-6. *fram*: *sham*. The rime perhaps points to influence of ON. *skamm*- on ME. *shame* (OE. *scamu*), which elsewhere rimes with l. 727 *name*, l. 1938 *lame*, and ll. 83, 1191, 1673, &c. *blame* < O.Fr. *blâme*. Cf. *Intro.* § 20 (5).

63-4. *blome*: *rome*. Dr. Craigie kindly sends me the following note: 'Read *louerd to Rome*. The rime with *blome* shows that *rome* cannot be the verb "to roam". *To* probably means "as far as". The correction of *lond* to *lou'd* = *louerd* is simple and obvious.' Stratmann, E. S. I. 423, had pointed out that *rome* = *Rome*, not *roam*, but offered no solution. Cf. *desqua Rome* in this sense, *Lai d'Havelok*, l. 367.

80-1. A confused construction; *were* requires *he made him*; while *þat he ne made him* would normally follow *was*.

87-90. Madden compares a passage in Ritson's *Metrical Romances*, ii. 281:

He was the beste kyng at nede  
That ever mihte ride on stede,  
Other wepne welde, other folk out-lede;  
Of mon ne hede he never drede.

91. A common expression; cf. l. 870.
92. The phrasing in l. 1853 perhaps points to [*showe*] as the better addition: 'let him see from the deeds of his hand', &c.
98. *brede*, WS. *bræde*, 'roast meat'.
115. *underfong* is a regular analogical form, and in Cursor Mundi, ll. 1519, 1542, has the meaning required here; see Sisam in Archiv, 128. 194 ff.
118. Cf. l. 2542.
123. Cf. ll. 837, 849.
130. 'And do with them (her subjects) what was pleasing to her'. Garnett's emendation for MS. *par*. For *don him of* cf. ll. 953, 2423.
139. See Introduction, p. xxiii.
148. 'Nor any who knew a remedy for his evil'.
149. 'For him there was nothing but death'.
151. Cf. ll. 1248, 2541.
154. The addition should perhaps be [*shulde*]; cf. l. 209, 'And *preide he shulde yeme hire wel*', and ll. 2443-4, 244-5. Note the sequences throughout the poem.
160. 'I am very grateful to you'. For *kan þank*, OE. *þanc cunnan*, cf. l. 2559.
- 162-3. Cf. ll. 2290-1.
164. *gouen hem ille* (cf. l. 1129, note). It obviously means 'grieved', but the exact sense of *give* is doubtful.
175. Perhaps *yemen and welde* are intransitive, 'govern and rule', and [*hir*] is unnecessary; cf. *yemede* intransitive in l. 975.
- 176-7. *an-on*: *Ion*. Since *Havelok* seems to have been composed in the North of England, OE. *on ān* would possibly have *a*, not *o*, in its second element in the original. Hence it is possible to delete the added [*Iesu*], and read *anan*: *Iohan*; and so at l. 1112. Note that in order to make *Iohan* a monosyllable, the MS. has been altered here and at ll. 1112, 1721, 2563; while in the only other instance, l. 2957, the ordinary elision before *hem* has to be neglected. The spelling of the MS., with four cases of *Iohan* against one *Ion*, is equally decisive for the disyllabic form.
- 190-1. Cf. ll. 2218-9.
199. Cf. l. 1080.
201. Cf. ll. 2311, 2372.
217. Cf. l. 2743.
- 218-19. The transposition suggested by Zupitza, ZfdA. 19. 125, removes all difficulty: 'he made his will very prudently, and straightway carried it out in every particular'; cf. l. 363.
221. i.e. enough to provide his winding-sheet.
222. Cf. l. 2018.
228. In the E. E. T. S. editions, Skeat rightly preferred to take *loude*

as *lou'de* = *louerd(e)*, but abandoned it here in deference to Holthausen. See Canterbury Tales, A 4287, *In manus tuas, lord, to thee I calle*, and Skeat's note. The ultimate source is Luke xxiii. 46. See Kölbing in ES. 16. 302.

232-3. For the phrasing cf. ll. 2320-1.

235. *drawing bi hor*, 'tearing of hair', with ON. *hár*, as the rime proves.

245-7. For attempts to defend the syntax see Morsbach, ES. 29. 371 f., and Horn, Anglia, 29. 132, who supply *his soule* as subject of *wone*. This seems to be the author's intention. Holthausen, following Schmidt, inserts *late* before *wone*; cf. l. 406.

307. For proverbial phrases cf. ll. 600, 648, 907, 1338, 1352, 1635, 1693, 2036, 2461, 2813, 2983.

393. Apparently 'that it may be well pleasing to their kin', which seems unsatisfactory.

255. Cf. ll. 2269, 2853.

256-7. 'To all men he gave what seemed fitting, until the day they died', i.e. for as long as they lived. Holthausen's explanation, that l. 257 contains the same idea as ll. 405, 2210, seems the best.

277. Literally 'awe stood from him to all England'; cf. Beowulf, 783-4 *Norðdenum stod atelic egesa*, and New Eng. Dict. s.v. *Awe*. *Al Engeland* is properly dative, but when the dative inflexion was lost, it was misunderstood as a nominative. Hence NE. 'all England stood in awe of him'.

279. The rime shows that the vowel is short; hence the word is not OE. *gād*, but ON. *gadd-r* as in l. 1016.

300-1. *yeue* : *liue*; read the alternative form *yiue*, and so at ll. 485, 1079, 1109, 1218, 1437.

307. 'Hope often plays tricks on the fool'.

311. 'So may I have my white neck!' cf. ll. 1743, 2545; and Canterbury Tales, B 4490, *So mote I brouke wel myn eyen tweye*.

314. Cf. l. 2220.

315. Cf. ll. 466, 419, 2051.

319. *also*, 'as, like'; OE. *alswā* yields in ME. *also*, *alse*, *als*, *as*, which are often used indifferently.

331 ff. 'May Jesus Christ', &c., the subject repeated in l. 223.

349. Cf. l. 1707.

354-5. Morsbach, ME. Grammatik, § 129 *b*, explains the rime as *wulde* : *fulde* < OE. *fullian*; but Hupe's suggestion (Anglia, 13. 196) *wilde* : *filde* is better; cf. Cursor, ll. 18759-60, *fulfild* : *wild*; Robert of Brunne's Chronicle, ed. Hearne, i. p. 86, *wild* : *filled*, &c.

360-1. *beþe* : *rede*, MS. *boþe*! The form *beþe* occurs at ll. 694, 1680, always in the bad rime with *rede*; and therefore it can hardly be from ON. *bæði* as Björkmann, p. 108, supposes. Otherwise the normal forms

*bāþe*, *bōþe*, *bōþen* are used. *rēde(n)* vb., WS. *rēdan*, is proved by the rime in ll. 104, 687, 2085. But beside it occur *rāþe(n)*, *rōþe(n)* from ON. *ráða* in ll. 1335, 2817. *rēd* sb., WS. *rēd*, is proved by rimes in ll. 148, 518, 826, 1194, 1204, 2210, 2871. But the cognate ON. form *rād* is proved in ll. 75, 2542. Copyists, especially Southern copyists, constantly substitute English for Norse forms, and are then likely to patch the rimes just as has been done in the text; so that *bāþe* : *rāþe* would become *bāþe* : *rede*, and then falsely *bēþe* : *rede*. Hence we need not hesitate to restore the Norse forms wherever they are required, reading *bāþe* : *roþe* or *bāþe* : *raþe* here and at ll. 693-4, 1680-1; and *raþe* (or *roþe*) in l. 2585. In the present case the change is supported by the Cambridge fragment, *bōþen* : *roþen*.

375. For *frēnde* < ON. *frændi*, see Glossary.

390. *men* is singular. OE. *man*, 'one'.

395. Although *þo his riht*, 'those his rights', is a correct form, it is worth noting that the MS. has *þo* for *þou* at ll. 388, 1229, 1274; and I should prefer to read *þo[u]* here.

396-7. For the phrasing cf. ll. 1443-4.

407. Such confused sentences are common, 'God' and 'Christ' being used indifferently; cf. l. 432.

410-11. Holthausen's retention of MS. *þe toþer*, and alteration of *eir* to *broþer*, is certainly preferable; cf. ll. 2348-9, 1690-1.

416-17. Cf. ll. 2454-5.

420. The added [*ne*] is not necessary; cf. the MS. reading in l. 548, and Zupitza in Anglia, I. 468, on the use of *ne* = 'neither . . . nor'.

421. *bebedde* is not a known compound, and the form of the prefix would be *bi-*. Hence *be* is probably due to repetition of the first letters of *bedde*. Read *bedde*, and restore MS. *ne*. See Stratmann, ES. I. 423-4.

432. *ran on blode*, 'bled'; it is perhaps possible to retain the MS. reading *þat*, and, assuming confused syntax, to render '(on) which God himself bled'.

455. Cf. l. 654.

456. On the reading in the text, which involves the minimum of alteration, see Sisam, Archiv, 128. 196.

462-3. 'Alas! is there no corn from which bread could be made?'

464. MS. *þs hungreth*. The assumption that the AS. *þ* would be substituted for *w* in *ws* = *us* involves serious difficulties. It would be simpler to suppose, as Dr. Bradley suggests, that the initial *þ* is miswritten for *V* = *U*. And *hungreth* may be trisyllabic = *hungereth*.

471-2. Cf. ll. 1413-4.

484. Cf. l. 2172. Hence *biddi* stands for *bede i*, an early instance of the confusion of OE. *bēodan*, 'offer, command', with OE. *biddan*, 'ask'. So MS. *bidde* for *bede* in l. 2458, destroying the rime.

504-6. 'And yet he wished that he were dead, except that he was

unwilling to slay him with his own hands, that foul fiend!' Napier's emendation *and þouh* (cf. MS. in l. 1669) is generally accepted, though it is possible to defend *and þouhte*. For the repeated *nouht* many emendations have been suggested, but without regard to the parallel phrasing in ll. 2228-9, which requires the retention of the second *nouht*. The present reading seems to overcome many difficulties. For *but on þat*, 'but only that', 'except that', cf. l. 962. *Hend* here and at ll. 1412, 2069 is the old Norse unlauted plural *hend-r*.

521. Cf. l. 670.

538. i.e. as long as there was rope to bind with; cf. l. 2437.

544. On the added lines in the Cambridge fragment see Introduction, § 4, and Skeat in MLR. 6, 457.

546-52. The whole passage seems corrupt. It is true that by assuming an elaborate sentence structure, taking *old cloth* as equivalent to *keuel*, and giving an unusual meaning to *in . . . wounden*, something can be made of it (see Emerson, Reader, p. 274). But this is unnatural, and it is simpler to suppose a lacuna, presumably of two whole lines including a main verb; see Zupitza, Anglia, 1. 469. At first sight the Cambridge fragment, which has

\*He þriste in his muth wel faste

A corner of an old clope, ful hun-wraste,

seems to supply the deficiency. But the inclusion of the first line in the text of Havelok breaks the couplet system. The corruption seems to have gone too far to permit of satisfactory emendation.

549. *hwere* usually taken as = *hwæþer*, but probably 'wherever'. The fragment has *Quider so*.

560. Holthausen's reading *haue* [*saue*] is nearer the MS., and is certainly right; cf. l. 2226.

563. For the phrasing cf. ll. 674, 1225, 2351.

566. Cf. l. 812.

567-8. The emendation is due to Morris.

572. Holthausen and Skeat take *him* as referring to Grim or Godard. Emerson, Reader, p. 275, refers *him* to Havelok, who regrets that wild beasts did not carry him off, and save him from the ill-treatment of cruel men. Both are difficult.

591-2. 'From his mouth there issued a ray'. For this idiomatic use of *stand* cf. Beowulf, ll. 726-7 *him of eagum stod . . . leoht unfxæger*; and for the whole passage cf. ll. 2122-6.

597. MS. *and* should rather be restored.

611. For the phrase *do ful wo* cf. l. 2589.

631. [*mi*] is not essential.

664. *it* seems to be the anticipated object in apposition to *wey*. But it might possibly be the repeated subject 'Grim *he*'; cf. the MS. reading in l. 2264.

679-80. Skeat compares Handlyng Sinne, ll. 5613-14:

Pers stode and loked on him

Felunlyche, with y3en grym.

680. MS. *poruthlike*; for the spelling cf. MS. in l. 2786.

689. Cf. l. 845.

691. 'It seemed to Grim too long until he ran', &c.

693-4. Read *rape*: *baþe*, or *rope*: *boþe*; see note on ll. 360-1. MS. *liue* may be construed as infinitive.

698. *wines*: OE. *wifes* (gen. sg.).

721 ff. Instead of the storm, in the French text Grim's ship is attacked by pirates, who kill the whole of the crew, with the exception of himself and family, whom they spare on the score of his being an old acquaintance.—M.

721-2. Many emendations of the MS. reading have been proposed, but the sense is clear, if loosely expressed.

739. *þere for to erde*, 'in order to dwell there'.

745. [*it*] *calle*: Zupitza's emendation, Anglia, 1. 470 f.

746. Here and in ll. 1331, 1377, 2337, the substitution of *þerof* for MS. *þeroffe* entails emendation of the text. Hence it seems that *þeroffe* is a genuine trisyllabic form. Note the MS. spellings in ll. 372, 466, 2558. *Offe* is an extended form of *of*, like *onne* l. 347 from *on*.

755. MS. *hwel* for *hel* = *el*, Holthausen's emendation.

761-2. 'One for himself and three others for his sons'.

763-4. *fonge*: *gronge*. A bad rime, for *g* in *fonge* cannot be palatalized; cf. ll. 855-6 *gonge(n)*: *fonge*. As *gronge* seems fixed by the sense, a French word is to be expected. Holthausen, Archiv, 110. 101, suggests *change*, 'to exchange'; and it is worth noting that, according to Gaimar, l. 449, Grim lived by exchanging fish for bread: *Del peissun cangium le pain*.

784. Zupitza's emendation, Anglia, 7. 146 f. It seems agreed that *setes* = *set es*, 'set them'; but perhaps the relative is omitted: 'nets (which) he often sets in the sea'.

789-90. MS. *hom*: *grom* should remain; cf. OE. *æt hām*. See Introd. § 20 (3). *Hom* has few correct rimes.

791-2. Cf. ll. 829-30.

795-6. Read *longe*: *gonge*, or *lange*: *gange*, and so at ll. 1057-8.

801. 'Ought not to have (food and drink) except when toiling long'. But Morsbach, ES. 29. 373, takes *nouht* = *ne ouht*, and retains the MS. *þat*, 'ought not to have that (viz. food and drink) except', &c.

808. *net* < OE. *nēat*, 'an ox', as the rime shows; cf. ll. 1026, 1891.

819-20. Skeat points out the parallel, Handlyng Sinne, ll. 5811-12:

'Plenerly, alle þat he tok,

Wyth-helde he nat a ferhyng noke'.

See Introduction, § 14. They suggest that [*Of*] should be omitted.



833-4. Emendations and explanations show that the editors have missed the construction: 'nor any other good (*þat douhte*) fish with (which) he might feed his household'.

839 ff. In the French, Grim sends Havelok away for quite a different reason, viz. because fishing is not a suitable occupation for him.

855. Read *gonge*.

863. *he was ful wil*, 'he was quite at a loss'; cf. l. 1042.

870. MS. *on* should probably remain in view of parallels like Ysumbras, l. 458 *He sprang forthe as sparke one glede*.

875-6. *brigge*: *ligge*; either OE. *brycg*, OE. *licgan*, or the corresponding ON. *bryggja*, sb., *liggja*, vb.; ll. 1373-4 *þigge*: *ligge* are equally ambiguous.

879. *þet oþer day*, 'the next day', as in l. 1755.

883-4. *bouht*: *oft*. Holthausen alters *bouht* to *coft*, participle of *coupe*, ON. *kaupa*, 'to buy'. But since the guttural spirant *h* became *f* very early in the North, [boft] is a possible pronunciation.

Observe the construction 'the Earl's provisions of Cornwall', where Modern English has the group-genitive 'the Earl of Cornwall's provisions'.

907. 'The food you eat is well invested'; cf. l. 2036 and note, and for the sense l. 1693.

928. Cf. ll. 1997, 2109, 2475.

934. 'He asked nobody to go to meet him', i.e. help him on the return journey with the full pail.

948. For the phrasing cf. ll. 652, 1278.

949-50. It is not necessary to assume a loss of two lines, for the same rime occurs elsewhere, e.g. 2676-7 *slawen*: *rauen*; Sir Guy, 3173, *haue*: *plawe*, &c. The rime of *-u-* (< OE. *-f-*) with *-w-* seems to occur in good MSS. only when *w* represents the OE. voiced spirant *g*, and perhaps indicates a dialectal development parallel to the change of the voiceless spirant *h* to *f*; see note to ll. 883-4. Translate 'there was no boy so little for the purpose of sporting and frolicking that he would not play with him'; i.e. Havelok was good-natured enough to play with children too young to make play interesting.

955. *stille and bolde*, 'shy and bold', a tag; cf. l. 2309.

957. Read *sowe*, which, from its distribution, can hardly be WS. *sāwon*. It may be Northern *sāgun*, or of Scandinavian origin, or an analogical English formation. See Björkmann, p. 87 note.

959. i.e. his fame spread far and wide. For this common idiom cf. Beowulf, l. 18 *blæd wide sprong*, and for later parallels Hall's note to King Horn, l. 211.

970. *dones on*, 'put them on'. *es* (*is*, *ys*, *as*), an unexplained pronoun = 'them', is particularly common in Southern and Eastern texts; cf. l. 1174, and note to l. 784.

987-8. By transposing *strong* and *long*, Holthausen obtains no appreciable improvement in sense, and breaks the tag *stark and strong*, which must remain; cf. ll. 608, 1271, 2535.

997. Kölbing's emendation *hore*, ES. 19. 146 f., seems inevitable.

1008. *blac and brown*: a tag characteristic of Havelok; cf. ll. 1909, 2181, 2249, 2694, 2847. The phrase apparently means 'dark and fair', as in the modern surnames, 'Black', 'Brown'. It belongs to a class of tags which cover all sorts of men by the coupling of two adjectives of opposite meaning: *arwe and kene*, 2115; *clad ne naked*, 2889; *fre and þewe*, 262, 2205; *heye and lowe*, 958, 1324, 2142, 2431, 2471, 2767, 2945; *lef and loth*, 261, 440, 2313, 2379, 2775; *lesse and more*, 1013, 2857; *litte ond mikle*, 2014; *long ne lite*, 1855; *riche and poure*, 138, 237, 2471; *sibbe and fremde*, 2277; *stille and bolde*, 955, 2309; *stronge and wayke*, 1012; *yunge and olde*, 956, 1639, 1933, 2014, 2802.

1019-21. Apparently 'for there was no horse-boy—though they should have (work) in hand—who did not come'.

1037-8. The sense is good, the rime impossible. Kölbing, ES. 19. 147, suggests *gradden*, which Holthausen accepts, though it destroys the alliteration *stoden and stareden*, and anticipates the sense of l. 1039. The rime word is probably *staaden*, pret. plur. < ON. *steþja*, which, unless some further emendation such as the addition of [*on*] is admitted, would mean 'to look on'; cf. l. 1041. Compare Cursor Mundi, ll. 204 and 22724, *Many man on stad and sey*, a reading undoubtedly correct. The Norse word would naturally be eliminated by Southern copyists, as in all but the oldest MS. of Cursor.

1042. 'And was quite ignorant of (the art of) putting'; cf. l. 863.

1051-2. *wipe*: *sipe*. The rime word, OE. *sīþ-e*, rather supports Schmidt's suggestion, p. 51, that *wipe* is ON. *viða*, adv., 'widely', 'far'. But an extended form of *wiþ*, prep. gives much better sense. Such extensions are common when the preposition follows the governed word.

1055-6. *Sowen*: *lowen*: a false rime since the vowel of *sowen* must be *ē*, while *lowen* < OE. *hlōgon* has *ō*. Holthausen reads [*f*]*lowen*, 'they fled', which does not fit the sense. Some emendation is needed.

1070. MS. *þe*: rather the personal pronoun plural = *þe(i)*. The form is usually altered to *þei*, as at ll. 69, 1037. But it is common in other texts, e.g. Robert of Brunne's Chronicle, and is probably a genuine by-form.

1101-2. *shop*: *hok*: a poor rime, perhaps due to the rareness of rimes for *shop*. Cf. ll. 1646-7; and for the phrase, l. 424, which rather points to Zupitza's emendation of l. 1100 (Anglia, 1. 471):

He was [þe] wers[t]e Sathanas.

1103 ff. The French romance differs here very considerably from the English, as may be seen from the summary, Introduction, p. xiii.

1105-6. Read *bringen*, or *ringe*.

1112. For the MS. reading, see note to ll. 176-7.

1129. Stratmann, ES. I. 424, points out that the MS. may be read *yas*, and since *f* and *s* are often confused, *yaf her ille* should stand in the text; cf. l. 164 and note.

1174. 'He gave them to her and she took them'; see note to l. 970.

1177-8. *clerk* : *Yerk*. The form *Yerk* has not been explained.

1183. Read *mouhte*.

1207-8. Perhaps here read *come* : *nome* < OE. *cōmon* : *nōmon*; but the *neme* forms are too common to admit of this as a general explanation.

1211. Cf. l. 2252.

1217. For MS. *on lyue* read *lyue*, infin.; see note to ll. 300-1.

1247 ff. The voice of the angel is completely an invention of the English author, and the dream (which is transferred from Argentille to Havelok) is altogether different in its detail.—M.

1257. The line is pointless and unnatural. Perhaps read *þan*, 'when', for *þat*.

1273. The MS. contains the bad correction *shal þu*, from *shaltu*.

1287. Literally 'on one the greatest hill', a not uncommon idiom.

1290. *werd* = *werld* with assimilation of trilled *rl*. The form is particularly common in Northern texts. See Glossary.

1291-2. Read *lowe* : *owe* or *lawe* : *awe*.

1298. The MS. *haue* can stand (*a*) as a spelling for *awe*; or (*b*) = *have*, since such rimes occur elsewhere; see note to ll. 949-50.

1303-4. Hohmann emends the rime by reading *yet* for *ek*; cf. ll. 1319-20.

1315. The absence of rime proves corruption or loss, and no satisfactory emendation has been suggested.

1323. *sowe*, with vowel from the pret. plur.; see note to l. 957.

1329. Cf. l. 2319.

1331-2. *doute* : *noute* perhaps points to lengthening of *u* in open syllables, so that OE. *hnūtu* > (*h*)*nūte*. For the literature on this much disputed point, see Jespersen, *Modern English Grammar*, i. § 4.212.

1335. Cf. l. 2592, which points to *raþe* infin. < ON. *ráða*, not the adverb from OE. *hræðe*.

1336-8. A very difficult passage. In the text l. 1336 follows Zupitza's emendation, Anglia, I. 471 f.: 'let us both go to Denmark'; but although Zupitza quotes an example from Genesis and Exodus, l. 1775, there are objections to assuming the nominative dual so late, and with the inverted subject we should expect *nime* not *nimen*. Holthausen, following Wittenbrinck, p. 11, reads *nim me with þe to Denema[r]k raþe*; and it may be noted that the MS. has *witl* for *with* in l. 1165. Kölbing, ES. 16. 303, proposes *nime we swiþe to Denema[r]k baþe*, based on l. 2600.

The advantage of Zupitza's reading is that it gives a reason for corruption. *Lith* has never been satisfactorily explained. l. 1352 shows that the meaning must be something like 'speed', so that Holthausen's *hiith* < OE. *hīgð*, 'haste', is a good suggestion. The word is not uncommon in ME., and line initials are particularly liable to confusion.

1376. Disyllabic scansion of *late* allows [*me*] to be dispensed with.

1377. MS. *þat . . . þeroffe*, 'whereof', may perhaps stand.

1397-8. *name : rauēn*; cf. ll. 2528-9 *grauen : name*. Hence the original must have had *nauen* < ON. *nafn*, a word otherwise unrecorded in ME. Since the sense was obvious, English scribes substituted the English equivalent, spoiling the rime. See Sisam in *Archiv*, 128. 196-7.

1401-2. A scribe has substituted *shewe* for *sharwe* (*showe*), and then *knaewe* (*knowe*) has been wrongly altered to make a rime; cf. ll. 1853, 2056; and for the phrasing ll. 2206-7.

1405. i.e. the day he died, for on that day he was both alive and dead; cf. l. 2210 and the note to ll. 256-7.

1431-4. Cf. 2236-9.

1445-1624. The French text helps but little to supply the blank. It shows that Havelok and his wife sailed to Denmark, and, on their arrival, sought out the castle belonging to Sigar, who answers to the Ubbe of the English version [*Skeat*].

1664. *of hire*, 'on her account'.

1674. The rime, and the extensive alteration, are objections to *quath*, and the MS. may be read: *Hwanne he hauede his wille yat* with Stratmann, ES. 1. 424. Stratmann explains *yat* as participle of OE. *gēatan*, 'to grant', which derives from ON. *játa*, *játta*. Translate 'when he (Havelok) had assented to his (Ubbe's) wish'.

1680-1. For the restoration of the rime see note to ll. 360-1.

1698-9. On *shewe : lowe* see Introduction, § 19.

1720. The MS. has *is wimman*. It is simpler to read [*n*]*is wimman*, deleting [*non*]; see note to ll. 176-7.

1733. *bidde i nouht dwelle*; cf. l. 2530.

1734-5. *lenge : genge*. Since *genge* is < ON. *gengi*, *lenge* is presumably from ON. *lengja*, not OE. *lenġan*; and so at l. 2363.

1749. Observe the genitive *þe greyues*, 'the greave's house'. As the rime shows, *greyue* is < ON. *greifi*, quite distinct from OE. *gerēfa*. In the French the *greyve* does not appear in the story.

1763. Fr. *chiche* has a later form *chinche*, which a scribe has substituted in the MS. here and at l. 2941, destroying the rime.

1775. *big : rig*. The word must be ON. *hrygg-r*, 'back', not OE. *hrycg*.

1782-3. *open : drepēn*. There is no alternative to *open*, and *dropen* cannot be infinitive. Holthausen reads *shul be dropen*. Hupe's suggestion, Anglia, 13. 199, *ich shal [haue] dropen*, seems preferable.

1799. Zupitza, Anglia, 7. 150 f., reads *nou* for *you*—an improvement. Professor Napier suggests that *you*[*r*], = ‘of you’, would be simpler.

1806. *Havelok lifte up*, &c. In the French, all the amusing details relative to Robert and Huwe Raven are omitted, and Havelok is made to retire to a monastery, where he defends himself by throwing down the stones on his assailants.—M.

1806-7. Cf. ll. 1968-9.

1819. *spende*: for the possibility of reading *speu*, ‘vomited’, with the MS., see Sisam, Archiv, 128. 197.

1824-5. *feld*: *swerd*, a bad rime, which is left isolated by the emendation of l. 2635; but no convincing emendation has been proposed.

1834. *bi-halue*, ‘surround’, as the synonyms, l. 1842 *umbiyeden*, l. 1875 *umbistode* indicate. See Genesis and Exodus, l. 3355:

*Harde he bi-haluen ðer Moyses.*

1853. *shewe* < OE. *scēawian*; read *showe* (*sharwe*) < OE. *scedwian*, and see note to ll. 1401-2.

1882. *eyþer unker*, ‘each of you two’. In early ME. the 1st and 2nd person dual sometimes fall together under the form of the 1st person.

1914-5. ‘A curse on him who cares! for they deserved it. What was their business there? They were mauled’. Observe the rime, which shows that *werewed* is disyllabic, as in l. 1921.

1916. *bet*, an unusual form of the participle with short vowel as the rime shows. Such weak formations followed the analogy of *lēde*, *lēdde mēte*, *mētte*, &c., where the vowel of the preterite and participle was normally shortened before a double consonant. See note to l. 2338.

1917. The reading gives no sense. Holthausen reads *her nes[es]*, ‘their noses’, comparing for the meaning ll. 2405-6. Perhaps it is another of the Norse phrases so common in the poem. In Laxdæla Saga, chap. xiii, Melkorka, becoming enraged with Jorunn, *setti hnefann á nasar henni*.

1930-1. Cf. ll. 2096-7.

1932. Literally ‘what this strife has in meaning’. For the phrase as emended by Holthausen (Anglia, Beiblatt, 11. 306), see Genesis and Exodus, ll. 1944, 2727.

1962-3. Read *warwe* or *sowe*.

1974. ‘had it not been for him’; cf. ll. 2413, 2677.

1976. *sinne*, ‘pity’, and so at ll. 2375, 2627.

1983. Here and in l. 2409 the insertion of [*him*] with Holthausen injures the sense. In the one case the hero Havelok, in the other the traitor Godard is concerned; and the phrases refer to the speaker’s or the writer’s sympathies, not to the extent of the wounds. Render ‘that’s a great pity’, and cf. ll. 1976, 2006.

2005. *kept* < ON. *keypt-r*, partic. of *kaupa*, ‘to buy’, ME. *coupe(n)*. See New Eng. Dict. sv. *Keft*.

2008-9. *soth* : *oth*. The rime of *soth* < OE. *sōþ* with *oth* < OE. *āþ* indicates corruption, despite Kölbing, ES. 16. 301. The extraordinary phrase *i ne leþe oth* fixes the corruption in the second line. And since *soth* has remarkably few rime words, I suggest a reading which at first glance seems far-fetched. Read *i ne leye* [o] [t] *oth*, 'I do not lie from my teeth'. Cf. Cursor, 13940-1 (Cotton MS.):

Quat sum yee knau wite yee for soth

Sal yee na leis here o mi toth.

The repetition of *leye* is stylistically good.

2029. *þat* is naturally dative, as in l. 727: 'to whom the name was'.

2036-7. This line can hardly stand; cf. l. 907. If the original had:

'Wel is set þe mete he etes:'

Quoth Ubbe 'gos, him swiþe fetes';

with two parallel imperatives, then the easy confusion *dos* for *gos* would cause *fetes* to be turned into an infinitive, and the preceding line to be mangled for the sake of the rime. The phrase *go fetch* is a common one, and the confusion *d* and *g* is frequent in MSS.

2045. For MS. *Kaym* uninflected cf. Cursor, l. 1202 *Kaym kin*; l. 1114 *Caim dede*, &c.

2056. *shewed*, 'examined', but read the alternative form *sharwed*; cf. note to ll. 1401-2.

2057. *knawed* must not be altered to *knarwen*, which does not rime. Such weak forms are common in ME.; cf. Cursor, ll. 1162-1, *knaud*: *scaud*.

2082. *A rof*, 'one roof', the unemphatic for the emphatic form of OE. *ān*.

2092. *Aboute the middel*, &c. In the French, a person is placed by the seneschal to watch, who first discovers the light.—M.

2106. i.e. 'peeped in through a chink'.

2142-3. Read *lowe*: *sowe*, or *lawe*: *sawe*.

2143. Read *kunmerk* (?); cf. l. 604. For the vowel cf. l. 2318 *cunnn-riche*, 2400 *kunerike*, 2804 *kunerike*. In the forthcoming number of Modern Language Review, Professor Napier points out that these forms are quite isolated, and therefore cannot be explained as examples of South-western *u* for *y*. They are due to analogy of ON. *kunung*, 'king', the form usual in England.

2150-2. Cf. ll. 2296-8.

2165. *blakne* would presumably mean 'look black', 'be wroth', but Professor Napier points out that the context would be better suited by the meaning 'turn pale' from *blāc*, 'white'. See New Eng. Dict. s.v. *Blake*, *v*.

2228-9. Cf. ll. 504-6. The addition [*þo*] is doubtful, though something is required. Perhaps read *he* [*self*]. *drop*, pret. sing., is difficult to explain, but the vowel is perhaps due to the past participle *dropen*.

2264. [*he*]: perhaps MS. *it* may stand; cf. note to l. 644.

2269–70. Cf. ll. 2853–4, and l. 255.

2282–3. Read *-ande* : *-ande* ; or *-inde* : *-inde*.

2320. A small *h* in the margin here is the signal for a coloured initial which the miniator has missed. Hence a new paragraph should begin with [*H*]wan.

2333. ‘how excitement increased’; *grim* refers to the fury and noise of the bear-baiting, &c. Kölbing, ES. 19. 148, compares Beves MS. A, l. 1880, *þus beginneþ grim to growe*. In his copy, Professor Skeat notes another example communicated by Dr. Bradley: Castell of Perseverance, l. 226, *grym þer schal growe*. Cf. also l. 2975, *wordes ne grewe*.

2338. The MS. reading: *I ne wore nouth þeroffe croud* is satisfactory (see note to l. 746), except in the last word which must rime with *god*. Skeat explains, ‘I should never be thereby overburdened’, taking *crod* as participle of *crūdan*, ‘to crowd’. Obviously *troud*, ‘believed’, which is hardly distinguishable in script, would make excellent sense, were it not for the rime with *ð*; and inquiry at the Oxford Dictionary for records of short forms elicited a decisive parallel from Robert of Brunne’s Chronicle, p. 339.

Blissed be þou *God*, þat þou in erth cam

þi word is wele *trod*, I say it bi William.

The form clearly belongs to *trō*, l. 2862, Old East Scandinavian *trōa*, and the shortening is probably an English development parallel to *shoe*, *shod*, and in no way connected with modern Scandinavian shortening. Cf. note to l. 1916. A scribe has substituted the corresponding form of *trawe*.

2352. *ilker*, ‘each of them’; OE. *ylc heora*.

2353. ‘by day and night’, adverbial genitive singulars, as is shown by the form; OE. gen. sing. *dæges* > *dayes*, but OE. plur. *dagas* > *dawes* usually, as in ll. 27, 2344, 2950.

2355. *wel o bon*, ‘well prepared’, ‘well equipped’. Dr. Craigie points out to me that the correct explanation of this phrase was first given by Madden in his *Lazamon*, viz. that it is Old East Scandinavian *bōenn*, partic. ‘prepared’, the form corresponding to North-west Scandinavian *búinn*, which yields ME. *boun(d)*. The rimes here, and in ll. 2571, 2505, 2525, prove the close vowel.

2384 ff. The French story here differs wholly from the English. Instead of the encounter of Robert and Godard, and the cruel punishment inflicted on the latter, in the French is a regular battle between the forces of Havelok and Hodulf (Godard). A single combat takes place between the two leaders, in which Hodulf is slain.—M.

2392. *þat* . . . *he* = who; see note to ll. 26–7.

2409. ‘That was nothing to grieve about’; see note to l. 1983.

2416. Read *fledde*.

2432. *euerilk fot of hem*, 'every one of them'; cf. Katherine, l. 2273, *he het . . . bihefiden ham euch fot*; and the phrase 'head of cattle'.

2433. 'whom they flayed' (subsequently).

2441. Literally, 'the bonds were not to seek' (ON. *leita*), i.e. they were freely used.

2450. *went* is rather past participle as in l. 2138, than preterite.

2461. Madden, *Lazamon*, vol. iii. p. 302, quotes *De vielz peche novele plaie* from Wace [Skeat].

2496. See an ingenious suggestion by Littlehales in *Trans. Phil. Soc.*, 1903-4, p. 161 f. He proposes to read *goune* for *grim*; so that *goune* or *gore* means 'gown or garment', and refers to the stripping off of the skin as if it were a garment. From the purely linguistic point of view the emendation is a happy one. It removes the only case where the rimes seem to show lengthening of *o* in open syllables, an assumption the more difficult because the lengthening conditions do not obtain in the nominative *gor*, 'filth'. The addition of an inorganic *e* in *gore* is a further difficulty removed if *gore* be taken as = OE. *gāra*.

2519. Here Havelok's journey to England is lost. No doubt a column or a page was dropped by the copyist, or one of his predecessors. The French, with Skeat's rendering, runs:

Quant Haueloc est rois pussanz,	When Havelok is a mighty king,
Le regne tint plus de .iiii. anz;	He reigned more than four years,
Merueillous tresor i auna.	Marvellous treasure he amassed.
Argentille li comanda	Argentille (Goldborough) bade him
Qu'il passast en Engleterre	Pass into England
Pur son heritage conquerre,	To conquer her heritage,
Dont son oncle l'out engettée,	Whence her uncle had cast her out,
[Et] A grant tort desheritée.	And very wrongly disinherited her.
Li rois li dist qu'il fera	The king told her that he would do
Ceo qu'ele li comandera.	That which she will command him.
Sa naue fet a-turner,	He got ready his fleet,
Ses genz & ses ostz mander.	And sent for his men and his hosts.
En mier se met quant orré a,	He puts to sea when he has a wind,
Et la reyne od lui mena.	And took the queen with him.
Quatre vinz & quatre cenx	Four score and four hundred (ships)
Out Haueloc, pleines de genz.	Had Havelok, full of men.
Tant out nagé & siglé,	So far has he steered and sailed
Q'en Carleflure est ariué.	That he has arrived at Carleflure.
Sur le hauene se herbergerent,	Hard by the haven they abode,
Par le pais viande quierent.	And sought food in the country round.
Puis enuoia li noble rois,	Then sent the noble king,
Par le consail de ses Danois,	By the advice of his Danes,
A Alsi qu'il li rendist	To Alsi (Godrich)—that he should
	restore to him



La terre qe tint Ekenbright,	The land that Ekenbright (Athelwold)
	held,
Q'a sa niece fut donée,	Which was given to his niece,
Dont il l'out desheritée;	And of which he had deprived her.
Et, si rendre n'el voleit,	And, if he would not give it up,
Mande qu'il le purchaceroit.	He sends word that he will take it.

The remainder of the French poem altogether differs in its detail from the English.

2521-3. If the poet had an actual priory in mind, it was probably Grimsby (or Wellow) Abbey, a house of Black (Austin) Canons. Madden thought rather of the Austin Friary founded at Grimsby in 1280 (?) (see *Intro.* § 14); but a story-teller would hardly strain the credulity of his audience by such a distortion of an event within their own memory. Grimsby Abbey was dedicated to St. Olaf.

2526-7. *oth* : *wot*. The MS. spelling *oth* : *woth* and the false rime show that *oth* is not, as has hitherto been supposed, the word 'oath', but stands for *ot* = (*h*)*ōt* < OE. *hāt*, 'a promise'.

2528-9. *grauen* : *name*; see note to ll. 1397-8.

2548. On MS. *bidde* for *bede* see note to l. 484.

2557. MS. *ye beber*, with *be* dotted for erasure. Holthausen reads *greybed*, 'made ready', but neither emendation is convincing. Perhaps read *þe bere* or *he bere*, '(which) they bore'.

2563. For the MS. reading see note to ll. 176-7.

2567. [*at*]-*sat*; cf. l. 2200; but MS. *sat*, 'opposed', is correct.

2582-3. Holthausen transposes these lines, with some gain; cf. ll. 41-2.

2584-5. Read *boþe* : *roþe*; see note to ll. 360-1.

2588. The MS. reading can stand, but perhaps *slo* is miswritten for *flo*, 'flay'; cf. l. 612. The phrase with *flo* is very common, and *slawen* for *flawen* occurs in the MS. at l. 2476, owing to the likeness in form of *f* and *s*; cf. MS. in ll. 1427 *yis*; 2289 *þhes*; 2442 *fō*.

2634-5. *feld* : *swerd*. The cutting off of the left arm with the shield it bears is often referred to in the Romances, e.g. Roland and Vernagu, ll. 823-4:

þe left arm and þe scheld

Fel forþ into þe feld. (Kölbing, ES. 16. 302.)

Hence Madden's suggestion *with þe scheld* for *with þe swerd* can hardly be denied.

2658-9. *boþen* : *drowen*. The rime is false both in consonant and vowel, for *boþen* has *ō*, *drowen* *ō*. But the sense is much superior to that given by Holthausen's reading [*he*] *lowen*, 'they laughed', for *boþen*. Some emendation is necessary, but none so far proposed seems satisfactory.

2676-7. *slawen* : *Rauen*; see note to ll. 949-50.

2687. *hul*, 'hollow', in the MS. altered from *hill*. The vowel *u* seems to be proved by the rime. The form *hule* occurs in Morris, OE. Misc., p. 8, l. 253. It is perhaps O. East Norse *hul*.

2688. *tarst* = *to arst* according to Kölbing, ES. 16. 303, but New Eng. Dict. sv. *erst*, prefers the explanation in the foot-note, since the form *to erst* seems unknown. But in view of the difficulty of explaining loss of *a*-, it would perhaps be better to read [*a*]t *arst*.

2690. In support of the emendation of *leuin*, 'lightning', to *leun*, note that in the Lai d'Havelok Hodulf and Havelok attack each other *come leon* (l. 960).

2691. *neuere kines* : a curious phrase for *none kines*.

2698. *felden* (MS. *feldem*), a weak preterite form of *fall*. See New Eng. Dict. On the rime *gres* : *is*, see Introd. p. xxix.

2700-1. *brittene* : *littene*, infinitives, the first < OE. *brytnian*, the second probably a new formation which would correspond to OE. \**lȳtnian*, 'to lessen'.

2719. Zupitza, Anglia, 7. 155, suggests *þi dede*, and Professor Skeat would also read *þi wrathe*. Holthausen prefers *mi deole*, 'my sorrow'.

2766. *þan*, 'when'.

2783. *for hem*, 'before them', as in l. 2947 *for his barnage*.

2784. *shawe* in its early meaning, synonymous with *se*.

2880. No addition is needed. For the idiom see Glossary.

2933. From the appearance of part of l. 2954 after l. 2933, Zupitza, Anglia, 7. 155, suggested that the scribe was copying from a MS. with twenty lines to the page, and slipped a page. The MS. shows that l. 2953 was also copied here, and then altered to l. 2933.

2936. Read *baþe*, since *rathe* is < OE. *hræþe*.

2944. [*alle*] is not necessary, for *corune* is naturally trisyllabic as in l. 1319.

2944-5. Read *sawe* : *lawe*, or *sowe* : *lowe*.

2956-7. *anon* : *Iohan*; see note to ll. 176-7.

2960. *gete*, 'watch' < ON. *gæta*, as in l. 2762.

2966. *þat* . . . *hem bitwene* = 'between whom'; see note to ll. 26-7.

2970. *oþer*, MS. *oþe*. Perhaps read *owe[r]*, 'anywhere', for OE. *þ* and *p* are confused in the MS. See a similar case in Cursor (Cotton MS.), l. 11544. But *oþer* . . . *ne*, 'either . . . or', is grammatically sound.

## GLOSSARIAL INDEX

The Glossary is now adapted to the normalized text; but interesting MS. forms are indicated, and the references, taken in conjunction with the foot-notes, provide a full index to the spellings. In the Text the commonest fluctuations in form or spelling are *ā; ð* (p. xxix); *an: on*; *i: y*; *u: o* (p. xl); *u: ou* (p. xl); *u: w* (p. xxxix); *ei: ey: ai: ay*; *c: k*; *hw: qu* (p. xl); *sch: sh*; *th: þ*; and cross references are not always given. Many words and phrases are now added, which, though easily intelligible, are worth recording in a text so early; and except in references, completeness is aimed at. Except for special reasons, only verb tense forms are parsed, because the inflexion of nouns and adjectives presents no difficulty. Brief etymological indications are added, with references in difficult cases to the Oxford English Dictionary (N.E.D.).

### ABBREVIATIONS.

L. = Latin.

OE. = Old English, especially Anglian.

O.Fr. = Old French, especially the French current in England.

OHG. = Old High German.

OLG. = Old Low German.

ON. = Old Norse, especially Icelandic; but O.Dan. = Old Danish, and

O.Sw. = Old Swedish are sometimes specified.

prec. = preceding word.

\* before a form or reference indicates reconstruction.

cf. in etymologies indicates indirect or uncertain relation.

+ shows that a compound first appears in Middle English.

**A, An(e)**, *indef. art.* 7, 14, 21, 114, 722, &c.; one, a single, 2010, 2082. [OE. *ān*.] See **On**.

**Abide**, *v.* remain, wait, 1797. [OE. *onbīdan*, *ābīdan*.]

**Abouen**, *prep.* above, higher than, 1700. [OE. *onbufan*.]

**Aboute(n)**, **Abuten**, *prep.* about, 521, 670, 1010, 2429. [OE. *onbūtan*.]

**Adoun**, **Adune**, *adv.* down, 567, 2735. [OE. *of-dūne*.] See **Doun**.

**Adrad** (MS. Odrat, 1153), *pp.* afraid, 278, 1048, 1163, 1682, 2304; **Adradde**, *pl.* 1787; **A-**

**dred**, *pp.* 1258. [OE. *ofdrædd*, *of-drædd*, *pp.*]

**Adred**. See **Adrad**.

**After**, *prep.* after, 171, &c.; according as, 2810; *senden after*, to send for, 137, 138, 524. [OE. *æfter*.]

**Ageyn**, **Agen**, **Ayen**, *prep.* against, 272, 489, 569, 1210, 1792, 2024, 2799, &c.; to meet (with verbs of motion), 451, 934, 1207, 1696; to receive, 1106; exposed to (of light), 1809, 2141. [OE. *ongēn*, *ongegn*.]

**Ageyn**, *adv.* again, 493, 2426.

**Ageynes**, *prep.* against, 2153, 2270. [ageyn + adverbial es.]

**Al**, *adj.* all, 35, 264, 277, &c.; every one, 104; **Alle**, *pl.* 2, 16, 37, 150, &c. [OE. *all*.]

**Al**, *adv.* wholly, entirely, 34, 70, 139, 203, &c.; in combination with **To-** (*see To-*), 1948, 1993, 2001, 2021, 2667. [OE. *all*.]

**Ale**, *n.* ale, 14, 1244, 1731. [OE. *alu*.]

**Allas**, *interj.* alas, 1878. [O.Fr. *alas*.]

**Almest**, *adv.* almost, 962. [OE. *almæst*.] *See* **Mest(e)**.

**Als**, **Also**, **Al-so**, *conj.* as, like, so, 306, 319, &c.; as if, 1912, &c. [OE. *al-swā*.]

**Alper-best(e)**, *adj.* best of all, 1040, 2415; *adv.* 182, 720, 1197. [OE. *alra betst*, with epenthesis of *d*, and fluctuation *dr*: *pr*.]

**Alper-leste**, *adj.* least of all, 1978, 2666. [OE. *alra læsta*.] *See* **prec.**

**Al to**, **Alto-**. *See* **Al** and **To-**.

**Am**, 1 *sg. pres. indic.* am, 167, &c. *See* **Art**, **Is**, **Ben**. [OE. *am*.]

**Amideward**, *prep.* in the middle of, 872. [OE. *on middewardan*.]

**And** (MS. **An** commonly; **Ant**, 36, 557), *conj.* and, 4, 15, &c.; if, 2862. [OE. *and*.]

**Andelong**, *adv.* lengthways, i.e. from the tail to the head, 2822. [OE. *andlang*.]

**Ane**. *See* **On**, *adj.*

**Angel**, **Aungel**, *n.* angel, 1276, 1281. [O.Fr. *angel*, *aungel*.]

**Ani**, *adj.* and *pron.* any, 10, 26, 105, 1083, &c. [OE. *ænig*.]

**Anker**, *n.* anchor, 521, 670. [OE. *ancor*.]

**Anlepi**, **Onlepi**, *adj.* a single, 1094, 2107. [OE. *ānlēpig*.]

**Anon**, **An-on**, **Onon**, *adv.* at once, 136, 176, 447, 523, 1964, 2790, &c. [OE. *on ān*.]

**Anoper**, *adj.* another, 1304; *adv.*

otherwise, 1395. [OE. *ān + ōper*.]

**Answerede**, *pa. t. sg.* answered, 1111, 1313; **Ansuereden**, *pa. t. pl.* 176. [OE. *andswerian*.]

**Anuye**, *v.* to weary, 1735. [O.Fr. *anuier*.]

**Are-dawes**, *n. pl.* former days, 27. [ON. *ár-dagar*.] *See* **Or**.

**Aren**, *pres. indic. pl.* are, 161, 464, 619, 1321, 1349. [OE. (Nth.) *aron*.] *See* **Art**, **Is**.

**Arise**, *v.* to arise, 205. [OE. *ārisan*.]

**Arke**, *n.* chest, coffer, 222, 2018. [OE. *arc* < L. *arca*.]

**Arm**, **Arum**, *n.* arm (of the body), 1982, 2408, 2635; *pl.* 984, 1294, 1297, 1300. [OE. *earm*.]

**Armes**, *n. pl.* arms, armour, 2605, 2613, 2925. [O.Fr. *armes*.]

**Art**, 2 *sg. pres. indic.* art, 527, &c. *See* **Are**, **Am**, **Is**, **Ben**. [OE. *eart*.]

**Arum**. *See* **Arm**.

**Arwe**, *adj. pl.* cowardly, timid, 2115. [OE. *earg*.]

**Asayleden**, *pa. t. pl.* assailed, 1862. [O.Fr. *asaillir*.]

**Aske**, *v.* to ask, 2952. [OE. *āscian*.]

**Asken**, *n. pl.* ashes, 2841. [ON. *aska*.]

**Asse**, *n.* ass, 2821, 2839. [OE. *assa*.]

**Astirte**, *pa. t. sg.* leaped, 893. *See* **Stirte**.

**At**, *prep.* at, 9, 789, 822, &c.; at a *dint*, with one blow, 1807; *tok leue at*, took leave of, 1387, 1388, 1389; *ney at*, near to, 2619. [OE. *æt*.]

**Atsitte**, *v.* to oppose, 2200; \***Atsat** (MS. **Sat**), *pa. t. sg.* 2567, but *see* **Note**. [OE. *ætsittan*.]

**A-two**, **On-two**, **On to**, in two, 471, 1413, 1823, 2643. [OE. *on + twā*.]

**Auhte**. *See* **Awe**, *v.*

**Auhte**, *n.* possessions, 531, 1223 1410, 2215. [OE. *æht*.]

Aungel. See Angel.

Aunlaz, *n.* a short dagger worn at the girdle, 2554. See Cant. Tales, Prol., 357. [O.Fr. \**aunlas*.]

Auter, *n.* altar, 389, 1386, 2373. [O.Fr. *auter*.]

Awe, *n.* awe, 277 (see Note). [ON. *agi*.]

Awe, *v.* to possess, 1188, \*1298;

Auht(e), *pa. t. sg.* ought, 207, 743, &c.; possessed, 2173, 2787, 2800, &c. [OE. *āgan*.]

Awey, *adv.* away, 1390, 1677. [OE. *onweg*.]

Ax, *n.* axe, 1776, 1894. [OE. *ax*.]

Ay, *adv.* ever, always, 159, 946, 1201, &c. [ON. *ei*.]

Ayen. See Ageyn.

Ayse, *n.* ease, peace, 59. [O.Fr. *aïse*.]

Ayper, \*Eyper, *pron.* either, each, 1882, 2665. [OE. *ægþer*.] See Oper.

Bac, *n.* back, 47, 556, 1844, 1950, &c.; Backes, *pl.* 2611. [OE. *bæc*.]

Baldlike, *adv.* boldly, 53. [OE. *baldlice*.] See Bold.

Bale, *n.* misery, 327. [OE. *balu*.]

Bar. See Beren.

Baret, *n.* strife, brawl, 1932. [O.Fr. *barat*.]

Barfot, *adj.* barefoot, 862. [OE. *bærfōt*.]

Barnage, *n.* baronage, nobles collectively, 2947. [O.Fr. *barnage*.]

Barre, *n.* bar of a door, 1794, 1811, 1827. [O.Fr. *barre*.]

Barun, *n.* baron, 31, 138, 273, &c. [O.Fr. *barun*.]

Barw. See Berwen.

Bape, Bope, *adj.* both, 1336, 2543; Bepe, 360, 694, 1680 (see Note to l. 360); Bopen, 173, 471, 697, 958, 2223. [ON. *báði-r*.]

Be. See Ben.

Bebedde, 421, see Note.

Bed, *n.* bed, 658, &c.; Bedde, *dat. sg.* 1114. [OE. *bedd*.]

Bedden, *v.* to bed, to put to bed, \*421, 1128, 1235, 2771. [OE. *beddian*.]

Bede, *n.* prayer, 1385. [OE. (*ge*)*bed*.]

Bede, *v.* to order, summon, offer, 1665, 2084, 2172, 2193, 2392, \*2548; Bede, 2 *sg. pa. t.* 668, 2396; Beden, *pa. t. pl.* 2774, 2780. Here belongs in sense Biddi = *Bidde i*, I offer, 484, due to form confusion with Bidden; cf. MS. in 2548. [OE. *bēodan*.]

Bedels, *n. pl.* beads, 266. [O.Fr. *bedel*, OE. *býdel*.]

Beite, Beyte, *v.* to bait (of dogs), to cause to bite, 1840, 2330, 2440. [ON. *beita*.]

Belles, *n. pl.* bells, 242, 390, 1106. [OE. *belle*.]

Ben, *v.* to be, remain, 19, 905, 1006, &c.; Bes, Beth, *fut.* 1260, 1261, 1744, 2007; Bes, *imper. pl.* 2246; Be, *pres. subj. sg.* 124, &c.; Ben, *pres. subj. pl.* 1787, 2599; Be(n), *pp.* 1428, 2799, &c. *Late be*, relinquish, cease from, 1265, 1657. For remaining tenses see Am, Art, Is, Es, Was, Wore. [OE. *bēon*.]

Benes, *n. pl.* beans, 769. [OE. *bēan*.]

Beneysun, *n.* blessing, benediction, 1723. [O.Fr. *beneisun*.]

Berd, *n.* beard, 701. [OE. *beard*.]

Bere, *n.* bear, 573, 1838, 1840, 2448. [OE. *bera*.]

Bere(n), *v.* to bear, give birth to, carry, 378, 581, 762, 805, 2323, &c.; Bar, *pa. t. sg.* 557, 815, 877; Bore, *pa. t. sg.* 45; Bere, *pa. t. subj. sg.* 974; Bor(e)n, *pp.* 461, 1878; \*Y-boren, *pp.* 2557 (see Note); *beren god*

*fey*, to keep or display good faith, 255, &c. [OE. *beran*.]

Bermen, *n. pl.* bearers, porters, 868, 876, 885, 887. [OE. *bērmān*.]

Bern, *n.* child, 571. [OE. *bearn*.] See Kradel-barnes.

Berwen, *v.* to protect, save, 697, 1426, \*2870; Barw, *pa. t. sg.* 2022, 2679. [OE. *bergan*.]

Bes. See Ben.

Best(e), *adj. superl.* best, 87, 200, &c.; *adv.* 376; *he best wolde liuen*, he most desired to live, 354. [OE. *betst*.] See God, Betere.

Best, Beste, *n.* beast, 279, 574, 944, 2691. [O.Fr. *beste*.]

Bete, *v.* to beat, strike, 1899, 2664, 2763; Beten, *pa. t. pl.* 1876; Bēt, *pp.* 1916 (see Note). [OE. *bēatan*.]

Betere, *adv. comp.* better, 109, 696, 1758. [OE. *betera*, *adj.*]

Bepe. See Baþe.

Beye, Byen, *v.* to buy, 53, 1625, 1654; Beyes, 3 *sg. pres. indic.* pays dearly for (for the sense see Coupe); Bouhte, *pa. t. sg.* 875, 968, 969, &c. Bouht, *pp.* 883. [OE. *bycgan*.]

Bi, *prep.* by, beside, 474, 618, 882, 2211, &c.; *bi are-darwes*, in former days, 27. [OE. *be*, *bī*.]

Bicomen, *v.* to become: Bicomes, *imper. pl.* 2303; Bicam, *pa. t. sg.* 2254; Bicomen, *pa. t. pl.* 2257; Bicomen, *pp.* 2264. [OE. *becuman*.]

Bidden, *v.* to ask, ask leave, command, 529, 910, 1232, 1733, 2530; Bad, *pa. t. sg.* 165, 399, 934. For Biddi, 484, MS. Bidde, 2548, see Bede, with which there is early confusion. [OE. *bidan*.]

Bidene, *adv.* forthwith, 730, 2841. [See N.E.D.]

Bifalle, *v. impers.* to happen, befall, 2981. Bifel(le), *pa. t. sg.* 339, 824. [OE. *befallan*.]

Biforn, Bifore(n), Bifor, *prep.* before, in front of, 157, 246, 1022, 1034, 1357, 1364, 1695, &c.; *bifor þe heued*, in the face, 1812; cf. 2406. [OE. *beforan*.]

Big, *adj.* big, 1774. [Probably ON.]

Biginnen, *v.* to begin (the *pa. t.* with an infinitive has often the sense of a simple preterite; cf. Gan), 21, 1779; Bigan, *pa. t. sg.* 230, 825, 1357; Bigunnen, *pa. t. pl.* 1011, 1302. [OE. *beginnan*.]

Beginning, *n.* beginning, 13. [To prec.]

Bihalue, *v.* surround, 1834. [OE. \**behalfian*.]

Biheld, *pa. t. sg.* beheld, 1645, *pa. t. pl.* 2148. [OE. *behaldan*.]

Bihoten, *v.* to promise; Bihetet (for *bihete it*), 2 *pa. t. sg.* 677; Bihoten, *pp.* 564. [OE. *behātan*.]

Bihoue, *n. dat.* behoof, advantage, 1764. [OE. *behōf*.]

\*Bihoues (MS. Houes), 3 *sg. pres. indic.* behoves, is incumbent upon, 582. See Houes. [OE. *behōfian*.]

Bikenneth, 3 *sg. pres. indic.* makes known, betokens, 1268, 1269. [OE. *be + cennan*.]

Bi-leue, *v.* remain; Bi-leue, *imper. sg.* 1228; Bilefte, *pa. t. sg.* 2963. [OE. *belæfan*.]

Bimene, *v.* mean, 1259. [OE. *be + mænan*.] See Mone.

Binde(n), Bynde, *v.* to bind, 41, 1961, 2820; Bond, *pa. t. sg.* 537; Bounden, Bunden, *pa. t. pl.* 2442; Bounden, Bunde(n), *pp.* 545, 1428, 2377. [OE. *bindan*.] See Bynderes.

Binne, *adv.* within, 584. [OE. *binnan*.]

Birde. See Birþ.

Birþ, *v. impers.* 3 *sg. pres.* it behoves, 2101; Birde, *pa. t. sg.* 2761. [OE. (*ge*)*byrian*.]

**Birpene**, *n.* burden, 807, 900, 902. [OE. *byrþen*.]

**Bise**, *n.* north wind, 724. [O.Fr. *bise*.]

**Biseken**, *v.* to beseech, 2994. [OE. *be + sēcan*.]

**Bisoupe**, on the south side of, 2828. [OE. *be sūþan*.] *See* Suth.

**Bi-stod**, *pa. t. sg.* stood by, 507. [OE. *bī-*, *bestandān*.] *Cf.* Umbistode.

**Bistrīde**, *v.* bestride, 2060. [OE. *bestrīdan*.]

**Biswike**, *pp.* betrayed, 1249. [OE. *beswīcan*.]

**Bitaken**, *v.* to deliver, give in charge, 1226. [*be + ON. taka*.] *See* Bitechen.

**Bite**, *v.* to bite, 2440; to drink, 1731. [OE. *bītan*.]

**Bitechen**, *v.* give in charge, commit to the charge, 203, 384, 395; **Bitauhte**, **Bitauhte**, **Bitawhte**, *pa. t. sg.* 206, 558, 1224, 1408, 1409, 2212, 2214, 2317, 2957. [OE. *betācan*, in ME. confused with *Bitaken*.]

**Bitwene(n)**, **Bitwen**, **Bituene**, *prep.* between, among, 748, 935, 1833, 2668, 2967. [OE. *betwēonan*.]

**Blac**, *adj.* black, 48, 555, 1008, *pl.* **Blake**, 1909, 2181, 2249, 2521, 2694, 2847, &c. *See under* Brun. [OE. *blæc*.]

**Blake**, *adj.* white, 311. [OE. *blāc*.] *Cf.* Bleike.

**Blakne**, *v.* to darken (of the face), to become angry, 2165; *or* to become pale. *See* Note. [OE. *blæc + -nian* or *blāc + nian*.]

**Blame**, *n.* blame, 84, 1192, 1672, 2460. [O.Fr. *bla(s)me*.]

**Blase**, *n.* blaze, 1254. [OE. *blæse*.]

**Blawe**, **Blowe**, *v.* to blow, 587, 913; **Blow**, *imper. sg.* 585. [OE. *blāwan*.]

**Blede**, *v.* to bleed, 103, 2403. [OE. *blēdan*.]

**Bleike**, *adj. pl.* pale, white, 470. [ON. *bleik-r*.]

**Blenkes**, *n. pl.*: *blenkes maken*, to play tricks, 307. [*Cf.* OE. *vb. blencan*, to deceive.]

**Blessed**, *pp.* blessed, 1215. [OE. *blētsian*.]

**Blinne**, *v.* to cease, 329, 2367, 2374; **\*Blunne**, *pa. t. pl.* 2670. [OE. *blinnan*.]

**Blisse**, *n.* bliss, 2187, 2935. [OE. *bliss*.]

**Blissed**, *pp.* made happy, 2873. [OE. *blissian*, *blīdsian*.]

**Blīpe**, *adj.* happy, glad, 632, 651, 777, 886. [OE. *blīpe*.]

**Blod**, *n.* 216, 432, 1819, 1850, 1904, &c. *See under* Renne. [OE. *blōd*.]

**Blome**, *n.* bloom, flower, 63. [ON. *blómi*.]

**Bloute**, *adj. pl.* soft, pulpy, 1910. [ON. *blaut-r*.]

**Bode**, *n.* command, 2202, 5607. [OE. *boð*.]

**Bodi**, *n.* body, 84, 110, 363, 995, &c. [OE. *bodig*.]

**Bok**, *n.* book, Bible, 201, 487, 1173, 1418, 2217, &c. [OE. *bōc*.] *See* Messebok.

**Bold**, *adj.* bold, 64, &c. **Bolde**, *pl.* 955, &c. [OE. *bald*.] *See* Baldlike.

**Bole**, *n.* bull, 2330, 2438. [ON. *boli*.]

**Bond**. *See* Binde(n).<sup>‡</sup>

**Bondeman**, *n.* husbandman, peasant-farmer, 32, 1016, 1308. [ON. *bóndi + man*.]

**Bondes**, *n. pl.* bonds, 332, 538, 635, &c., bonds (of pain), 143. [ON. *band*.] *See* Dede-bondes.

**Bone**, *n.* boon, request, 1659. [ON. *bón*.]

**Bon(e)** in *wel o bon(e)*, 2355, 2571, well equipped, in good condition; *zuele o bone*, poorly

equipped, in poor condition, 2505. [O. East Norse *bðenn*, pp. of *bða*, to prepare.]

Bones, *n. pl.* bones, arms, 1296. [OE. *bān*.]

Bor, *n.* boar, 1867, 1989, 2331. [OE. *bār*.]

Bord, *n.* a table, 99, 1722; a board, 2106 (see Note). [OE. *bord*.]

Bore(n). See Bere.

Boru, Borw, Burw, *n.* borough, town, 55, 773, 847, 1014, 1293, 1444, 1630, 1757, 2086, 2277, 2826. [OE. *burh*.]

Borw, *n.* surety, 1667. [OE. *borg*.]

Bote, But, *adv.* only, but, 721, 722. [OE. *būtan*.] See But(e).

Bote, *n.* remedy, help, 1200. [OE. *bōt*.]

Bope(n). See Baþe.

Bouht(e). See Beye.

B(o)unden. See Binde(n).

Bour, Bowr, *n.* chamber, 239, 2072, 2077, &c. [OE. *būr*.]

Bout (MS. But), *n.* throw, putt, 1040. [O.Fr. *bout*.]

Bowes, *n. pl.* bows (weapons), 1748. [OE. *boga*.]

Boyes, *n. pl.* young men, men, 1899.

Brayd, *pa. t. sg.* started, awaked, 1282; drew (a sword), 1825. [OE. *bregdan*.]

Bred, *n.* bread, 463, 633, 643, 1879. [OE. *brēad*.]

Brede, *n.* roast meat, 98. [OE. *bræde*.]

Breken, *v.* to break, 914;

Broken, *pa. t. pl.* 1902, 1903;

Breken, *pp.* 1238. [OE. *brecan*.]

Brenne, *n.* burning; *brouht on brenne*, made burn, 1239. [To next.]

Brennen, *v.* to burn, 916, 1162;

Brenden, *pa. t. pl.* 594, 2125;

Brend, *pp.* 2832, 2841, &c. [ON. *brenna*.]

Brest, *n.* breast, chest, 1030, 1648. [OE. *brēost*.]

Bride, *n.* bride, 2131. [OE. *bryd*.]

Brigge, *n.* bridge, 875, 881. [OE. *brycg* or ON. *bryggja*.]

Briht, Bryht, *adj.* bright, fair, 589, 605, 1252, 2131, 2610;

Brihter, *compar.* 2141. [OE. *berht*.]

Brim, *adj.* furious, raging, 2233. [See N.E.D. s.v. *Breme*.]

Bringe(n), *v.* to bring, 72, 185, &c.; Brouhte, *pa. t. sg.* 767,

2868; Brouhten, *pa. t. pl.* 2791;

Brouht, Browht, *pp.* 57, 58, 336,

649, 1979, 2052, &c.; to þe erþe

*brouht*, buried, 248; *brouht of*

*liue*, 513, 2412, brought out of

life, dead; *forth brouhte*, fostered,

brought up, 2868. [OE. *bringan*.]

Brini(e), *n.* mail coat, 1775,

2358, 2551, 2610, 2740. [ON.

*brynja*.]

Brisen, *v.* to bruise, beat, 1835.

[OE. *brȳsan*.] See To-brised.

Brittene, *v.* (as *passive*) to break

to pieces, 2700. [OE. *brytnian*.]

Brod, *adj.* broad, 1647; Brode,

*pl.* 896. [OE. *brād*.]

Proper, *n.* brother, 1396, &c.;

Brethren, *pl.* 2413. [OE. *brōþor*.]

Brouht. See Bringe(n).

Brouke, *v.* enjoy, use, have, 311,

1743, 2545. [OE. *brūcan*.]

Broys, *n.* broth, 924. [O.Fr.

*broez*.]

Brune, Broune, 1008, 1909,

2181, 2249, 2694, 2847, brown,

fair (?); for the phrase *blake and*

*brune* see Note to l. 1008. [OE.

*brūn*.]

Bulderstone, *n.* boulder-stone,

1790. [ON.; cf. Gotland dialect

*buldur-stajn*.]

Bunden. See Binde(n).

Burgeys, Burgeis, *n.* burgess,

citizen, 1328, 2466, *pl.* 2012, 2195.

[O.Fr. *burgeis*.]



**Burgmen**, *n. pl.* burgesses, citizens, 2049. [OE. *burhman* (if *g* = *ȝ*).]

**Burwe**. See *Berwen*.

**Burwes**. See *Boru*.

**But(e)**, **Buten**, *conj.* except, unless, 85, 111, 149, 690, 1149, 1159, 2022, 2031, 2727; *but als*, were it not that, 2022, 2031; *but on þat*, except only that, except that, 505, 962; *but-yf*, *but-yif*, unless, 2546, 2972. [OE. *būtan*.] See *Bote*.

**But**, *pp.* struck, thrust, 1916. [O.Fr. *bouter*.]

**Butere**, *n.* butter, 643 [OE. *butere*.]

**Butte**, *n.* some flat fish; cf. halibut, 759.

**Buttinge**, *n.* thrusting, 2322. See *But*, *pp.*

**Byen**. See *Beye*.

**Bynde**. See *Binde(n)*.

**Bynderes**, *n. pl.* binders, outlaws who bind their victims, 2050. [OE. *bindere*.] See *Binde(n)*.

**Caliz**, *n.* chalice, 187, 2711. [O.Nth.Fr. *caliz*.]

**Callen**, *v.* to call, 38, 230, 747, 2899; **Kalde**, *pa. t. sg.* 884. [ON. *kalla*.]

**Cam**. See *Komen*.

**Can**, &c., *v.* to know, to be able, 846; MS. *Cone*, 2 *sg. subj.* 622; **Kunne**, *pl.* 435; **Coupe**, *pa. t. sg.* 93, 112, 194, 750, 772, &c.; **Koupen**, *pa. t. pl.* 369. *þank cunnen*, to be grateful, 160, 2560. [OE. *cunnan*, *can* (pret. pres.), *cūpe*.]

**Care**, **Kare**, *n.* anxiety, 121, 835, 1377, 2062. [OE. *caru*.]

**Carl**, *n.* churl, slave, 1789. [ON. *karl*.]

**Carte-lode**, *n.* cart-load, 895. [ON. *kart-r*, OE. *cræt* + OE. *lād*.]

**Castel**, *n.* castle, 252, 412, 1301, 1442. [O.Nth.Fr. *castel*.]

**Casten**. See *Kesten*.

**Catel**, *n.* chattels, goods, 225, 275, 2023, 2515, 2906, 2939. [O.Nth.Fr. *catel*.]

**Caynard** (MS. *Cauenard*), fellow (term of reproach), 2389. [O.Fr. *cagnard*.]

**Cayser(e)**, **Kaysere**, *n.* emperor, 353, 977, 1317, 1725. [ON. *keisari*.]

**Cerges**, **Serges**, *n. pl.* wax tapers, 594, 2125. [O.Fr. *cerge*.]

**Chaffare**, *n.* merchandise, 1657. [OE. *cēap* + *faru*.]

**Champioun**, **Chaumpioun** (MS. *Chaunbioun*, 1007, *Chaunpioun*), *n.* champion, 1007, 1015, 1031, 1055. [O.Fr. *champiun*.]

**Chanounes**, *n. pl.* canons, 360. [O.Fr. *chanoun*.]

**Chapmen**, *n. pl.* merchants, 51, 1639. [OE. *cēapman*.]

**Charbucle**, *n.* carbuncle (a stone supposed to shine in the dark), 2145. [O.Fr. *charboucle*.]

**Chartre**, *n.* charter, deed of manumission, 676. [O.Fr. *chartre*.]

**Chaste**, *adj.* chaste, 288. [O.Fr. *chaste*.]

**Cherl**, *n.* churl, thrall, servant, 262, 620, 684, 1092, 2533. [OE. *ceorl*.] See *Karl* and *Drit-cherl*.

**Chese**, *n.* cheese, 643. [OE. *cēse*.]

**Chesen**, *v.* to choose, 2147; **Chosen**, *pa. t. pl.* 372. [OE. *cēosan*.]

**Chiche** (MS. *Chinche*), *adj.* nig-gardly, mean, 1763, 2941. [O.Fr. *chiche*, later *chinche*.]

**Child**, *n.* child, 575, &c. (MS. *Child*, 532); **Children**, *pl.* 348, 368, 474, &c.; **Children**, *gen. pl.* 499. [OE. *cild*.]

**Chiste**, *n. dat.* chest, coffer, 222. [OE. *cist*.] See *Kist*.

**Citte** (MS.), 942. See *Kitte*.

**Clad**, &c. See *Cloþe*.

**Clapte**, *pa. t. sg.* struck, 1814, 1821. [OE. \**clappian*.]

**Claré**, *n.* a drink consisting of wine, honey and spices, 1728. [O.Fr. *clare*.]

**Clene**, *adj.* pure, 995. [OE. *clæne*.]

**Clere**, *n.* clerk, one in holy orders, 33, 77, 1177, &c. [O.Fr. *clerc*.]

**Cleue**, *n.* dwelling, cottage, 557, 596. [OE. *cleofa*.]

**Cleuen**, *v.* to cleave, split, 917; **Clef**, *pa. t. sg.* 2643, 2730. [OE. *clēofan*.]

**Closede**, *pa. t. sg.* enclosed, was included, 1310. [O.Fr. *clore*, *clos*-.]

**Cloth**, *n.* cloth, garment, 185, 418, 546, 855, 968, 1144, 1145, &c. (MS. *Cloþen*, *pl.* 1233). [OE. *clād*.]

**Clope**, *v.* to clothe, 1138; **Clopede**, *pa. t. sg.* 420; **Cladde**, *pa. t. sg.* 1354, 2907; **Clad**, *pp.* 2889; **Cloped**, *pp.* 971. [OE. *clāðian* and *clæðan*.] See *Unclopede*.

**Clubbe**, *n.* club, 1927, 2289. [ON. *klubba*.]

**Clutes**, *n. pl.* clouts, pieces of cloth, 547. [OE. *clūt*.]

**Clyueden**, *pa. t. pl.* fastened, clung, 1300. [OE. *clifian*.]

**Cok**, **Kok**, *n.* cook, 873, 880, 891, 903, 921, 967, 1123, 1146, 2898. [OE. *cōc*.]

**Cold**, **Kold**, *n.* cold, 416, 449; *cold fongen*, to catch cold, 856. [OE. *cald*.]

**Comen**. See *Komen*.

**Cone**. See *Can*.

**Conestable**, *n.* constable, warden, 2286, 2366. [O.Fr. *conestable*.]

**Conseyl**, *n.* counsel, 2862. [O.Fr. *conseil*.]

**Copes**. See *Kopes*.

**Corporaas**, *n.* a linen cloth on which the sacrament is placed at Mass, and in which it is wrapped after Mass, 188. [O.Fr. *corporaas*.]

**Corune**, *n.* crown 1319, 2944. [O.Fr. *corune*.] See *Crown(e)*.

**Coruning**, *n.* coronation, 2948. [See *prec.*]

**Cote**, *n.* cottage, 737, 1141. [OE. *cot*.]

**Couel**, **Cuuel**, **Kouel**, *n.* cloak, garment, 768, 858, 964, 1144, 2904. [OE. *cufle*.]

**Couere**, *v.* to recover, 2040. [O.Fr. *couer*.]

**Coupe**, *v.* to buy, pay dearly for, 1800; **Keft**, *pp.* 2005. [ON. *kaupa*, *pp.* *keypt-r*.]

**Coupe**. See *Can*.

**Crake**. See *Kraken*.

**\*Crauede**, *pa. t. sg.* asked for, 633. [OE. *crafian*.]

**Crepren**, *v.* to creep, 68. [OE. *crēopan*.]

**Cri**, *n.* call, summons; *at his cri*, at his command, in his power, 270; *at one cri*, unanimously (?), with one voice (?), 2773. [O.Fr. *cri*.]

**Crice**, *n.* the anal cleft, 2450. [ON. *kriki*.]

**Crie(n)**, *v.* to cry, implore loudly, 2443, 2772; **Criede**, *pa. t. sg.* 2501. [O.Fr. *crier*.]

**Croiz**, *n.* cross, 1263, 1268, 1358, 2139, &c. [O.Fr. *croiz*.]

**Croud**, 2338. See *Note*.

**Crown(e)**, *n.* crown of the head, 568, 902, 1814, 2657, 2734. [In form always distinct from *corune*, which has the same etymology.]

**Crus**, *adj.* angry, fierce, 1966. [ON. or OLG. *krūs*.]

**Crusshe**. See *To-crusshe*.

**\*Cuneriche** (MS. *Cunrliche*), **Kunerike** (also MS. *Kuneriche*), *n.* kingdom, 976, 2318, 2400, 2804; cf. *Note* to 2143. [OE. *cynerīce*, influenced by ON. *kunung*, see *Note* to l. 2143.] See *Kineriche*.

**Cuppe**, *n.* cup, 14. [OE. *cuppe*.]

**Curt**, *n.* court, 1685. [O.Fr. *curt*.]

**Curteys**, *adj.* well-bred, having

manners fit for a court, 2916.  
[O.Fr. *curteis.*]

**Curteysye**, *n.*; *of curteysye*, decorously (?), in accordance with courtly manners (?), 194, (for *gon* in l. 195 may stand, cf. ll. 113, 125, 370, 2059); *curteysye maken*, treat in a courtly manner, 2875.  
[O.Fr. *curteisie.*]

**Cuuel.** See Couel.

**Dam**, *n.* lord, fellow (?), 2468. Here used as a term of reproach, but the same as *Dan* in *Dan Chau-cer*, &c. [O.Fr. *dam.*]

**Dame**, *n.* lady, dame, 558, 1717.  
[O.Fr. *dame.*]

**Dapeit**, **Datheit**, **Datheytt**, *interj.* a curse on! 296, 300, 926, 1125, 1799, 1887, 1914, 2047, 2447, 2511, 2604, 2757. In *dapeyt on*, 1995, it seems to imply strong negation; cf. 'devil a bit'. [O.Fr. *dahait*, see N.E.D. s.v. *Dahet.*]

**Day**, *n.* day, daylight, life-day, 143, 589, &c.; **Dayes**, *adv. gen. sg.* by day, 2353; **Dayes**, *pl.* 355, 865; **Dawes**, *pl.* 2344, 2950.  
[OE. *dæg.*] See Are-dawes.

**Day-belle**, *n.* morning bell, 1132. [OE. *dæg + belle.*]

**Ded**, **Dede**, *n.* death, 149, 167, 1687, &c. [Apparently from OE. *dēad*, but the final *d* is unexplained.] See Dede-bondes, Deth.

**Ded**, *adj.* dead, 232, 464, 2007.  
[OE. *dēad.*]

**Dede**, *n.* deed, 180, 550, 1356, &c. See Hand-dede. [OE. *dēd.*]

**Dede**, &c. See Do(n).  
**Dede-bondes**, *n. pl.* bonds of death, 332, is probably a compound = ON. *dauda-bond*, *pl.* [OE. *dēad + ON. band.*]

**Deide.** See Deye.

**Del**, *n.* part, 208, 218, 818, 1070, 1330, &c. [OE. *dæl.*] See Som-del.

**Demen**, *v.* to judge, 2467, 2476,

2812; **Demden**, *pa. t. pl.* 2820, 2833; **Demd**, *pp.* 2487, 2488, 2765, 2838. [OE. *dēman.*]

**Deplike**, *adj.* deeply, solemnly, 1417, synonymous with *grundlike*. [OE. *dēoplice.*]

**Dere**, *n.* dearth, 824, 841. [OE. \**dēoru.*]

**Dere**, *adj.* dear, 839, 2170, 2882, &c. [OE. *dēore.*]

**Dere**, *adv.* dearly, at great cost, 1637, 1638. [OE. *dēore.*]

**Dere**, *v.* to harm, injure, 490, 574, 648, 806, 2310. [OE. *derian.*]

**Desherite**, *v.* disinherit, 2547.  
[O.Fr. *desheriter.*]

**Deth**, *n.* death, 116, 354. [OE. *dēað.*] See Ded.

**Deuel**, *n.* devil, 446, 496, 1188, 1409. [OE. *dēofol.*]

**Deus**, *interj.* God! 1312, 1650, 1930, 2096, 2114. [O.Fr. *deus.*]

**Deye(n)**, *v.* to die, 168, 257, 840; **Deyede**, **Deide**, *pa. t. sg.* 231, 402. [ON. *deyja.*]

**Deyled** (MS. *Deled*), *pp.* distributed, 1736. [ON. *deila*, the MS. reading showing OE. *dælan.*] See To-deyle.

**Dide**, &c. See Do(n).

**Dik(e)**, *n.* ditch, 1923, 2435.  
[OE. *dīc.*]

**Dine**, *n.* din, noise, 1860, 1868.  
[OE. *dyne.*]

**Dinge**, *v.* to strike, beat, scourge, 215, 2329; **Dong**, *pa. t. sg.* 1147; **Dungen**, *pp.* 227. [Cf. OE. *denc-gan*, wk.; ON. *dengja*, wk.]

**Dint**, *n.* blow, stroke, 1437, 1807, 1817, 1969. [OE. *dynt.*] See Dunten.

**Dishes**, *n. pl.* dishes, 919. [OE. *disc.*]

**Do(n)**, *v.* to do, cause (usually with an infinitive in passive value, as *do casten*, cause to be cast, 519), put, 117, 528, 535, 577, 611, 1191, 2863; **Dos**, 2 *sg. pres. indic.* 2390; **Dos**, **Doth**, 3 *sg. pres.*

*indic.* 1840, 1994, 2434, 2698;  
*Dos*, *Doth*, *imper. pl.* 2037, 2592;  
*Don*, *pres. indic. pl.* 1838; *Do*,  
*subj.* 2600; *Dede*, *Dide*, *pa. t. sg.*  
 658, 659, 709, 859, 970, 2393,  
 2901, &c (on the *e* forms *see*  
*Morsbach*, *ME. Gram.*, § 130,  
*n. 6*); *Deden*, *Diden*, *pa. t. pl.*  
 242, 945, 2306; *Do(n)*, *pp.* 667,  
 1169, 1805. *Dones on = don es*  
*on*, to put them on, 970 (*see* *Es*,  
*pron.*); *don of liue*, to put out of  
 life, kill, 1805. [OE. *dōn*.]

*Dogges*, *n. pl.* dogs, 1839, 1883,  
 1967, &c. [OE. *dogga*.]

*Dom*, *n.* judgement, 2473, 2487,  
 2813, &c. [OE. *dōm*.]

*Domesday*, *n.* Day of Judgement,  
 748, 2523. [OE. *dōmesdæg*.]

*Dore*, *n.* door, 1788, 1792. [OE.  
*dor*.]

*Dore-tre*, *n.* bar of a door, 1806,  
 1968. [Prec. + OE. *trēo*.] *See*  
*Tre*.

*Douhte*, *pa. t. sg.* was of worth,  
 was good, availed, 703, 833, 1184.  
 [OE. *dūgan*, *dēah* (pret. pres.),  
*dachte*.]

*Douhter*, *Dowhter*, *n.* daughter,  
 120, 258, 350, 717, 1079, 2712,  
 2867, 2914, 2979, 2982, &c. [OE.  
*dohtor*.]

*Doumbe*, *adj. pl.* dumb, 543.  
 [OE. *dumb*.]

*Doun*, *Dun(e)*, *adv.* down, 888,  
 901, 925, 927, 1815, 2656, &c.  
*See* *Adoun*.

*Doute*, *n.* fear, 1331, 1377.  
 [O.Fr. *doute*.]

*Doutede*, *pa. t. sg.* feared, 708.  
 [O.Fr. *douter*.]

[*Drad* (MS.). *See* *Adrad*.]

*Drake*, *n.* drake, 1241. [Cf.  
 German dialectal *drāke*.]

*Drawe(n)*, *v.* to draw, drag;

*Drou*, *Drow*, *pa. t. sg.* 705, 719,  
 942, &c.; *Drowen*, *pa. t. pl.*  
 1837; *Drawe(n)*, *pp.* 1769, 1925,  
 2225, 2477, 2603, &c.; to *pe peni*

*drou*, *see* *Peni*; *drou him to*, made  
 for, 719. *See* *To*-, *Vt*-, *With*-  
*drawen*. [OE. *dragan*.]

*Drawing*, *n.* pulling, tearing,  
 235. [To prec.]

*Drede(n)*, *v.* to dread, fear;  
*Dred*, *imper. sg.* 661, 2168;  
*Dredde n*, *pa. t. pl.* 2289, 2568.  
 [OE. (on) *drēdan*.] *See* *Adrad*.

*Dred(e)*, *n.* dread, anxiety, 90,  
 181, 478, 828, 1169, 1664. [To  
 prec.]

*Drem*, *n.* dream, 1284, 1304,  
 1315. [OE. *drēam*, ON. *draum-r*.]

*Dremede*, *pa. t. sg. impers.*, *me*  
*dremede*, I dreamed, 1284, 1304.  
 [To prec.]

*Drenchen* (MS. also *Dreinnen*,  
 561; *Drinchen*, 553), *v.* to drown,  
 583, 1416, 1424, &c.; *Drenched*,  
*pp.* 520, 669, 1368, 1379. [OE.  
*drencan*.]

*Dreng*, *n.* 'a free tenant (special-  
 ly) in ancient Northumbria, holding  
 by a tenure older than the Norman  
 Conquest, the nature of which was  
 partly military, partly servile'  
 (N.E.D.), 31, 1327, 2184, 2194,  
 2260, 2466. [ON. *dreng-r*.]

*Drepe(n)*, *v.* to kill, slay, 506,  
 1783 (*see* Note), 1865, &c.; *Drop*,  
*pa. t. sg.* 2229; *see* Note. [OE.  
*drepan*.]

*Dreping*, *n.* slaughter, 2684.  
 [To prec.]

*Drinken*, *v.* to drink, 15, 459,  
 800, &c. [OE. *drincan*.]

*Drink*, *n.* drink, 1738, 2457, &c.  
 [To prec.]

*Drit-cherl*, *n.* dirty fellow, 682.  
 [ON. *drit* + OE. *ceorl*.]

*Drive(n)*, *v.* to drive, rush, go  
 quickly; *Driuende*, *pres. ptc.*  
 2702; *Drof*, *pa. t. sg.* 725, 1793,  
 1872; *Drive*, *pa. t. pl.* 1966;  
*Driuen*, *pp.* 2599. [OE. *drifan*.]

*Drop*. *See* *Drepen*.

*Drou*. *See* *Drawen*.

*Dubben*, *v.* to dub, create (a

knight), 2042; *Dubbede*, *pa. t. sg.* 2314. [See N.E.D. s.v. *Dub.*]

*Duelle*, *Dwellen*, *v.* to tarry, linger, remain, 4, 1058, 1185, 1351; *Dwelleden*, *pa. t. pl.* 1189. [OE. *dwellan*.]

*Dwelling*, *n.* delay, 1352. [To prec.]

*Dun(e)*. See *Doun*.

*Dungen*. See *Dinge*.

*Dunten*, *pa. t. pl.* struck, beat, 2448. [Cf. *Dint*, *n.*; but Scotch *dunt*, *n.*, Swedish *dunta*, *v.*, point to Norse origin.]

*Durste*, *pa. t. sg.* durst, dare, 272; *Dursten*, *pa. t. pl.* 1866. [OE. *dearr* (pret. pres.), *dorste*.]

*Dust*, *n.* dust, 2832. [OE. *dūst*.]

*Eie*, *n.* eye, 1152, 2545; *Eyne*, *Eyen* (MS. *Eyn*, 2171), *pl.* 680, 1273, 1340, 1364, 2171, &c. [OE. *ēge*.]

*Eir*, *Eyr*, *n.* heir, 110, 289, 410 (see Note), 2539, &c. [O.Fr. *cir*.]

*Ek*, *Ec*, *adv.* also, 1025, 1038, 1066, 2348, &c. [OE. *ēc*.] Cf. *Ok*.

*El*, *n.* eel, 755 (MS. *Hwel*), 897, 918. [OE. *ēl*.]

[*Eld*, MS. *adj.* old, 546; *Helde*, *pl.* 2472, perhaps represent Southern OE. *eald*. See *Old*.]

*Eld*, *n.* age; *comen in-til elde*, reached years of discretion, or a marriageable age, 128, 174; *be of elde*, 387. [OE. *eld*.]

*Eldeste*, *adj. superl. wk.* eldest, 1396. [OE. *eldest*.] See *Old*.

*Elles*, *adv.* else, 1192, 2590. [OE. *elles*.]

*Em*, *n.* uncle, 1326. [OE. (WS.) *ēam*.]

*Ende*, *n.* duck, 1241. [OE. *ened*.]

*Ende*, *n. dat.* end, 247, 734. [OE. *ende*.]

*Endinge*, *n.* end, death, 3001. [OE. *endung*.]

*Er*, *adv.* before, 541, 684. [OE. *ēr*.] See *Are-dawes*, *Or*, *adv.*

*Er*, *conj.* before, 15, 229, 317, 1261, 2080. [To prec.]

*Erchebishop*, *n.* archbishop, 1178. [OE. *ærcebiſcop*.]

*Erde* (MS. *Erpe*), *v.* to dwell, 739. [OE. *eardian*.]

*Eritage*, *n.* heritage, 2836. [O.Fr. *eritage*.]

*Erl*, *n.* earl, 31, 189, 206, 273, 443, 2898, &c. [OE. *eorl*.]

*Erlodom*, *n.* earldom, 2909. [OE. *eorl + dōm*.]

*Ern*, *n.* eagle, 572. [OE. *earn*.]

*Erpe*, *n.* earth, ground, 248, 424, 740, 2657. [OE. *eorðe*.]

\**Es* = *is*, 2699, see *Introd.*, p. xxix.

*Es*, *Ys*, \**Is* (MS. *As*, 1174), *pron. pl.* them, 1174 (bis); *dones on = don es on*, put them on, 970. See Note to l. 784. [See N.E.D. s.v. *His*.]

*Et*, *pron. neut. sg.* attached to verbs = *it*: *bihetet = bihete et*, 677; *havedet*, 714; *youenet*, 1643; *hauenet*, 2005. See *It*.

*Ete(n)*, *v.* to eat, 146, 317, 457, 641, 791, 800, 911; *Eteth*, *fut.* 672; *Et*, *imper.* 19, 925; *Et*, *pa. t. sg.* 653, 656, 1879; *Eten*, *pp.* 657, 929. [OE. *etan*.]

*Euere*, *Eure*, *adv.* ever, 17, 207, 327, 424, 704, 830, &c. [OE. *æfre*.]

*Euere-ich*, *Eueri*, *adj.* every, 8, 137, &c. [OE. *æfre-ylc*.]

*Euer(e)-ilk*, *-ilc* (MS. *Euer(e)-il* generally in *eueril del*, 219, 1334, 1664, 1764, 2318, &c.), *adj.* every, 1330, 2258, 2432; *Eueridel*, 1070, 1176, 1383. [See prec.]

*Eueri*. See *Euere-ich*.

*Euerilk-on*, *pron.* every one, 1062, 1996, 2197 [Prec. + OE. *ān*.]

**Euere-mar**, *adv.* evermore, 1971. [OE. *æfre* + *māre*.]

**Eyen**, **Eyne**. See **Eie**.

**Eyr**. See **Eir**.

\***Eyper**. See **Ayper**.

**Fader**, *n.* father, 1224, 1403, 1416, &c. [OE. *fæder*.]

**Faderles**, *adj.* fatherless, 75. [OE. (Merc.) *feadur-lēas*.]

**Fadmede**, *pa. t. sg.* embraced, encircled (with the arms), 1295. [OE. *fæðmian*, *fæðmian*.]

**Faile**, **Fayle**, *n.*; *with-uten faile*, without fail, 179, 2909. [O.Fr. *faile*.]

**Falle**, *v.* to fall, befall, happen, occur, appertain to, 39, &c.; **Falles**, *imper. pl.* 2302; **Fel**, *pa. t. sg.* 351, 1009, 1177, 1190, 1815, 2359; **Felle(n)**, *pa. t. pl.* 1303, 2656; **Felle**, *pa. t. subj.* 1673; **Felden**, *wk. pa. t. pl.* 2698; **Fallen**, *pp.* 2658. [OE. *fallan*.]

**Fals**, *adj.* false, \*1157, 2511. [O.Fr. *fals*.]

**Falwes**, *n. pl.* ploughed fields, 2509. [See N.E.D.]

**Fare**, *n.* journey, 1337, 2621. [OE. *faru*.]

**Faren**, *v.* to go, fare, 51, 120, 264, 1392, 2690, 2705; **For**, *pa. t. sg.* 2382, 2943; **Foren**, *pa. t. pl.* 2380, 2618; *faren with*, to act towards, treat, 2705. [OE. *faran*.] See **Ferde**.

**Fast**, *adj.* firm, fast, 710. [OE. *fæst*.]

**Faste**, *adv.* fast, firmly, closely, attentively, 83, 144, 537, 2148. [OE. *fæste*.]

**Fastinde**, *pres. ptc.* fasting, 865. [OE. *fæstan*.]

**Fauht**. See **Fyhten**.

**Fawen**, *adj.* fain, glad, 2160. [OE. *fagen*.]

**Fayr**, **Fair**, *adj.* fair, 111, &c.; **Fayrest(e)**, **Fairest**, *superl.* 200, 281, 1081, &c. [OE. *fæger*.]

**Fayre**, **Faire**, **Feyre**, *adv.* fairly, 224, 452, 785. [To prec.]

**Fe**, *n.* possessions, goods, money, 44, 386, 563, 1225, 2213, &c. [OE. *feh*, \*fē.]

**Feble**, *adj.* scanty, wretched, 323, 2457. [O.Fr. *feble*.]

**Feblelike**, *adv.* scantily, 418. [Prec. + OE. *līce*.]

**Fede(n)**, *v.* to feed, rear, 100, 322, 906; **Fedde**, *pa. t. sg.* 420, 2907; **Fed**, *pp.* 657. [OE. *fēdan*.]

**Fel**. See **Falle**.

**Felawes**, *n. pl.* companions, 1338. [ON. *félagi*.]

**Feld**, *n.* field, 2634, 2685, 2911. [OE. *feld*.]

**Felde**, *pa. t. sg.* felled, 1859, 2694; **Feld**, *pp.* 1824. [OE. *fellan*.]

**Felden**. See **Falle**.

**Fele**, *adj.* many, 778, 1277, 1737, &c. [OE. *fela*.]

**Fele**, *adv.* very, 2442. [See prec.]

**Felede**, *pa. t. sg.* pursued (?), 67. [Kentish *felgan*, OE. *fylgan* (?).]

**Felony**, **Felounye**, *n.* felony, crime, 444, 2989. [O.Fr. *felonie*.]

**Fen**, *n.* mud, 872, 2102. [OE. *fenn*.]

**Fend**, *n.* fiend, 506, 1411, 2229. [OE. *fēond*.]

**Fer**, *adv.* far, 1863; *from far* (?), 2341; *fer and hende*, far and near, 359, 2275; *fer ne ner*, 2793. [OE. *feor(r)*.]

**Ferd**, *n.* army, 2384, 2535, 2548, 2602, &c. [OE. *ferd*.]

**Ferde**, *pa. t. sg.* journeyed, went, went on, 287, 447, 1678, &c.; **Ferden**, *pa. t. pl.* 151; *ferde with*, acted towards, treated, 2411. [OE. *fēran*.]

**Fere**, *n.* companion, wife, 1214. [OE. *(ge)fēra*.]

**Ferlik(e)**, *n.* wonder, 1258, 1849. [Cf. OE. (WS.) *færlīc*, *adj.*]

**Ferne**, *adj.* distant, 2031. See next.

**Ferne**, *adv.* far, 1864. [OE. *fēorran(e)*.]

**Ferpe**, *adj.* fourth, 1810. [OE. *fēorða*.]

**Ferping**, *n.* and *adj.* farthing, 878; *ferpinges nok*, particle of a farthing, 820. [OE. *fēorðing*.]

**Feste**, *n.* feast, 2344, &c. [O.Fr. *feste*.]

**Feste**, *v.* to feast, endow, 2938. [O.Fr. *fester*.]

**Festen**, *v.* to fasten, bind, grip, 82, 1785; **Fest**, *pp.* 144. [OE. *fæstan*.]

**Fet**. See **Fot**.

**Fete**, *v.* to fetch, bring, 316, 642, 912, 937, 1715, 2037, 2341. [OE. *fetian*.]

**Fetere**, *v.* to fether, 2758. [To next.]

**Feteres**, *n. pl.* fetters, 82, 2759. [OE. *fetor*.]

**Fey**, *n.* faith, 255, 1666. [O.Fr. *fet*, see next.]

**Feyth**, *n.* faith, 2269, 2853. [O.Fr. *feid*, earlier form of *fei*.]

**Fif**, **Fiue**, *adj.* five, 213. [OE. *fif*.]

**Fifte**, *adj.* fifth, 1816. [OE. *fifta*.]

**Fiht**, *n.* fight, 2668, 2716. [OE. *feht(e)*.] See **Fyhten**.

**Fikel**, *adj.* fickle, disloyal, 1210, 2799. [OE. *ficol*.]

**File**, *n.* filthy fellow, 2499. [ON. *fylla*.]

**Fille**, *n.* fill, 954. [OE. *fyllo*.]

**Fille**, *v.* to fill, complete; **Fil**, *imper.* 14; **Filde**, *pa. t. sg.* 933;

**Fulde**, *pp.* 355, see Note. [OE. *fyllan*.]

**Finde(n)**, **Fynde**, *v.* to find, 42, 220, 1083; **Funde**, *pa. t. sg.*

49; **Funden**, *pa. t. pl.* 56, 602; **Funde(n)**, *pp.* 1427, 2376. [OE. *findan*.]

**Finger**, *n.* finger, 1743. [OE. *finger*.]

**Fir**, **Fyr**, *n.* fire, 585, 915, 1162;

firing, fuel, 912. [OE. *fȳr*.] See **Fir-sticke**.

**Firrene**, *adj.* made of fir-wood, 2078. [To OE. *\*fyre*, ON. *fyri*.]

**First(e)**, *adj.* first, 1052, 2657. [OE. *fyrst*.]

**Fir-sticke**, *n.* faggot, 966. [Prec. + OE. *sticca*.]

**Fish**, *n.* fish, 751, 833; **Fish**, *pl.* collective, 762, 814; **Fishes**, *pl.* 882, 1393. [OE. *fisc*.]

**Fishere**, *n.* fisherman, 524, 749, 2230. [OE. *fiscere*.]

**Fiuetene**, *adj.* fifteen, 2979. [Remodelling of OE. *fiftene*.]

**Flaunes**, *n. pl.* a flat cake made with custard, 644. [O.Fr. *flaon*.]

**Flawen**. See **Flo**.

**Fle**, *v.* flee, 492, 1195; **Fledde**, *pa. t. sg.* 1431; **Fledden**, *pa. t. pl.* 2416. [OE. *flēon*.]

**Flemen**, *v.* to put to flight, drive out, 1160. [OE. *flēman*.]

**Flete**, *pres. subj. sg.* float, swim, 522. [OE. *flēotan*.]

**Fleye**, *v.* to fly, 1791, 1813, 1827, 2751; **Fley**, *pa. t. sg.* 1305. [OE. *flēgan*.]

**Fleys(h)**, **Flesh**, *n.* flesh, 216, 781. [OE. *flāsc*.]

**Flintes**, *n. pl.* flints, stones, 1863. [OE. *flint*.]

**Flo**, *v.* to flay, 612, 2495; **Flow**, *pa. t. sg.* 2502; **Flowe**, *pa. t. pl.* 2433; **Flawen**, *pp.* 2476. [ON. *flā*.]

**Flod**, *n.* sea, 522, 669, 1222. [OE. *flōd*.]

**Flok**, *n.* band, company, 24. [OE. *flocc*.]

**Flote**, *n.* company, household, 738. [O.Fr. *flote*.]

**Flour**, *n.* flower, blossom, 1719, 2917. [O.Fr. *flour*.]

**Fnaste**, *v.* to breathe, 548. [OE. *fnæstian*.]

**Fo**, **Foo**, *n.* foe, 67, 1363, 2849. [OE. *fāh*, (*ge*)*fā*.]

**Fol**, *n.* fool, 298, 2100. [O.Fr. *fol.*]

**Fol**, *adj.* foolish, 307. [O.Fr. *fol.*]

**Fole**, **Folk**, *n.* people, men, warriors, 89, 438, &c. [O.E. *folc.*]

**Folwes**, *imper. pl.* follow, 1885, 2601; **Folwede**, *pa. t. sg.* 1994. [O.E. *folgian.*] See Felede.

**Fonge**, *v.* to take, 763 (*see* Note); for *cold fongen*, 856, *see* Cold. [O.E. *fōn*, pp. *fangen.*]

**For**, *prep.* for, on account of, 34, 44, 285, 1670, &c.; before, 2783, 2947; for to, **forto**, is commonly prefixed to the infinitive, 38, 102, &c. [O.E. *for*, *fore.*]

**For**, *conj.* for, 167, 2222, &c. [O.E. *for*, *prep.*]

**For**, **Foren**. See Faren.

**Forbere**, *v.* to spare, neglect (deliberately), 352; **Forbar**, *pa. t. sg.* 764, 2623. [O.E. *forberan.*]

**Forfaren**, *pp.* brought to destruction, 1380. [O.E. *forfaren.*]

**Forgat**, *pa. t. sg.* forgot, 2636, 2897. [O.E. *for* + ON. *geta*; cf. O.E. *forgetan.*] See Foryat.

**Forgiue**, *v.* to forgive, 2718. [O.E. *for* + ON. *gifa*; cf. O.E. *forgefān.*]

**For-henge**, *v.* kill by hanging, 2724. [O.E. *for* + ON. *hengja.*]

**Forhwi**, *adv.* wherefore, why, 2578. [O.E. *forhwī.*]

**Forlor(e)n**, *pp.* (utterly) lost, 580, 770, 1424. [O.E. *forlēosan.*]

**Formede**, *pa. t. sg.* formed, made, 1168. [O.Fr. *former.*]

**Forsake**, *v.* to refuse, 2778. [O.E. *forsacan.*]

**Forsworen**, *pp.* forsworn, perjured, 1423. [O.E. *forswerian.*]

**Forth**, *adv.* forth, onward, forward, 91, 338, &c. [O.E. *forð.*]

**Forpi**, *adv.* and *conj.* because, therefore, 1194, 1431, 2043, 2500. [O.E. *for þý* (*þe*).]

**Forthward**, *adv.* in the future,

as the tale proceeds, 731, 1640. [O.E. *forðward.*]

**Forto**. See For.

**Forw**, *n.* furrow, 1094. [O.E. *furh.*]

**Forward(e)**, *n.* promise, compact, condition, 554; *to þat forward*, on condition that, 486. [O.E. *foreward.*]

**Foryat**, *pa. t. sg.* forgot, 249. [O.E. *forgetan.*] See Forgat.

**Fostred**, *pp.* nourished, brought up, 1434, 2239. [O.E. *fōstriān.*]

**Fot**, *n.* foot, foot-length, 1199, 2432 (*see* Note); **Fote**, *dat.* in *on fote*, 101, &c.; **Fote**, *gen. pl.* 1054; **Fet**, *pl.* 616, 1022, 1303, 2479. [O.E. *fōt.*]

**Fouhten**. See Fyhten.

**Foure**, *adj.* four, 816; *one foure*, four only, 1742. [O.E. *feōwer.*]

**Fourteniht**, *n.* fortnight, 2284. [O.E. *feōwertene niht.*]

**Fre**, *adj.* free, 262, 530, 629, &c. [O.E. *frēo.*]

**Freedom**, *n.* freedom, 631. [O.E. *frēo-dōm.*]

**Freman**, *n.* freeman, 628. [O.E. *frēman.*]

**Fremde**, *adj. pl.* (as *n.*) strangers, 2277. [O.E. *fremde.*]

**Freme**, *v.* to perform, do, 441. [O.E. *fremian.*]

**Frende**, friend, relative, 375; **Frende**, *pl.* 326, 2068; **Frendes**, *pl.* 2585. [O.E. *frēond*, but the disyllabic form and the sense at

375 point to ON. *frændi.*]

**Frest**, *n.* delay; *do on frest* = put off, postpone, 1337. [ON. *frest.*]

[**Fri** (MS.), *adj.* 1072, free, generous.]

**Frie**, *v.* to blame, 1998. [ON. *frýja.*]

**Fro**, *prep.* from, 16, 265, 279, 332, 692, &c.; *adv.* in *to and fro*, 2071. [ON. *frá.*]

**Frusshe**. See To-frusshe.



**Ful**, *adv.* very, much, completely, 6, 82, 141, 611, 2589, &c. [OE. *full*.]

**Fulde**. See **Fille**.

**Ful(e)**, **Foule**, *adj.* foul, 506, 555, 626, 965, 1158, 2401, &c. [OE. *fūl*.]

**Ful(le)**, *adj.* full, 780, 2686. [OE. *full*.]

**Fullike** (MS. **Fulike**), *adv.* shamefully, 2749. [OE. *fūl(l)ice*.]

**Funde(n)**. See **Finden**.

**Fyhten** (MS. **Fyht**), *v.* to fight, 2361; **Fauht**, *pa. t. sg.* 1990; **Fouhten**, *pa. t. pl.* 2661. [OE. *fehthan*.] See **Fiht**.

**Fyn**, *n.* ending, 22. [O.Fr. *fin*.]

**Gad**, *n.* goad, 279, 1016. [ON. *gadd-r*.]

**Gadeling**, *n.* a low fellow, 1121. [OE. *gædeling*.]

**Gadred**, *pp.* gathered, 2577. [OE. *gadian*.]

**Gaf**. See **Giue**.

**Galle**, *n.* gall, 40. [OE. *galla*.]

**Galues**, *n. pl.* gallows, 687, 2477, 2508. [OE. *galga*.]

**Galwe-tre**, *n.* gallows, 43, 335, 695. [OE. *galg-trēo*, ON. *gálga-tré*.]

**Game(n)**, *n.* game, sport, joy, 468, 980, 1716, 2135, 2577, 2935, 2963; **Game**, 996, perhaps means 'amorous play'; in 2250 'joyous ceremony'. [OE. *gamen*.]

**Gan**, *pa. t.* used with infinitive as equivalent of the simple preterite as in *gan crien* = cried, 2443; \**gan priue* (MS. *bigan*), 280, &c. See **Biginnen**. [OE. *ginnan*.]

**Gange(n)**, **Gongen**, *v.* to walk, 60, 370, 796, 845, 855, 1185, 1739, 2059, &c.; **Gonge**, 2 *sg. pres. subj.* 690, 843; **Gangande**, *pres. ptc.* walking, on foot, 2283. [OE. *gangan*.]

**Gart(e)**, *pa. t. sg.* caused, made, 189, 1001, 1082, 1857, &c. [ON. *gæra*; the regular *a* is difficult.]

**Gat(en)**. See **Geten**.

**Gate**, *n.* way, road, 846, 889, 2509. [ON. *gata*.] See **Hwilkgat**, **þusgate**.

\***Geet**, *n. pl.* goats, added in l. 701. [OE. *gāt*, pl. *gæt*.]

**Genge**, *n.* company, household, retinue, 786, 1735, 2353, 2362, 2383. [ON. *gengr*.]

**Gent**, *adj.* fair, noble, 2139. [O.Fr. *gent*.]

**Gere**. See **Messe-gere**.

**Gest**, *n.* tale, romance, 2328, 2984. [O.Fr. *geste*.]

**Gete**, *v.* to watch, guard, look after, 2762, 2960. [ON. *gæta*.]

**Gete(n)**, *v.* to get, earn, catch, beget, 147, 792, 908, 1393; **Gat**, *pa. t. sg.* 495, 730; **Gaten**, **Geten**, *pa. t. pl.* 2893, 2934, 2978; **Geten**, *pp.* 930. [ON. *geta*.] See **Forgat**.

**Girde**, *pa. t. sg.* girt, 2922; **Girt**, *pp.* 2385. [OE. *gyrdan*.]

**Gisarm**, *n.* a halberd, a kind of battle-axe with a spike at its back, 2533. [O.Fr. *gisarme*.]

**Giue**, *v.* to give, 2880 (see **Giue**, *n.*); **Gaf**, *pa. t. sg.* 219, 418, 1311, &c.; **Gouen**, *pa. t. pl.* 164; **Give**, *pp.* 2488; **Gyuen**, *pp.* 365; **Gouen**, *pp.* 220. On *gouen hem iile*, grieved, 164, see **Note**. [ON. *gefa*, O.Sw. *gifa*; see **N.E.D.**] See **Yeue**.

**Giue**, **Gyue**, *n.* gift, 357; *ich giue þe a giue þat . . .*, I give thee assurance that . . ., 2880. [To prec.]

**Giueled**, *pp.* heaped up, 814. [O.Fr. \**geveler*.]

**Glad**, *adj.* glad, 947. [OE. *glæd*.]

**Gladlike**, *adv.* gladly, 805, 906, 1760. [OE. *glædlice*.]

**Glede**, *n. dat.* a live coal, 91, 870. [OE. *glēd*.]

**Gleue, Gleyue**, *n.* spear or lance (cf. l 1864), sword(?). The meaning is usually not clear from the context; 267, 1748, 1770, 1844, 1864, 1981. [O.Fr. *gleive*.]

**Glem**, *n.* gleam, ray, 2122. [OE. *glæm*.]

**Gleu**, *n.* sport, amusement, 2332. [OE. *glēow*.] See next word.

**Gleumen** (MS. Glevmen altered from Gleymen), *n. pl.* gleemen, musicians, 2329. [OE. *glēoman*.]

**Glides**, 3 *sg. pres. indic.* glides, flows, 1851. [OE. *glīdan*.]

**Glutuns**, *n. pl.* gluttons, rascals, 2104. [O.Fr. *glutun*.]

**Gnede**, *adj.* niggardly, mean, 97. [OE. \**gnēde*.]

**God**, *n.* God, 35, &c.; **God**, *dat. sg.* in *God þank*, 2005 (see *þank*). [OE. *god*.]

**God**, *n.* good thing, property, goods, 797, 1221, 2034, &c. [OE. *gōd*, *adj.*]

**God(e)**, *adj.* good, 1, 7, 8, 22, 34, &c. [OE. *gōd*.]

**Goddot**, *interj.* God knows, 606, 642, 796, 909, 1656, 2543; cf. 2527. [OE. *god wāt*.] See **Wite(n)**.

**Gold**, *n.* gold, 44, 47, 73, 357, &c. [OE. *gold*.]

**Gome**, *n.* man, 7. [OE. *guma*.]

**Go(n)**, *v.* to walk, go, avail, 113, 125, 1045; **Goth**, *imper. pl.* 1780; **Gon**, *pp.* 848, 1430, 2692. [OE. *gān*.] See **Ouer-ga**, **Yede**.

**Gonge(n)**. See **Gange(n)**.

**Gore**, *n.* filth(?), garment(?) 2496, see Note. [OE. *gor*(?) or *gāra*(?).]

**Gos**, *n.* goose, 1240; **Gees**, *pl.* 702. [OE. *gōs*.]

**Gouen**. See **Giue**.

**Goulen**, *v.* howl, cry, 454; **Gouledēn**, *pa. t. pl.* 164. [ON. *gaula*.]

**Gram**, *adj.* angry, 2469. [OE. *gram*.]

**Graten**, **Grotēn**, *v.* to weep, 329; **Grotinde**, *pres. ptc.* 1390;

**Graten**, *pp.* 241; **I-grotēn**, *pp.* 285. [ON. *gráta*.] See **Gretēn**.

**Graue**, *v.* to bury, 613; **Grauen**, *pp.* 2528. [OE. *grafan*.]

**Graue**, *n.* grave, 408. [OE. *græf*.]

**Grauntedē**, *pa. t. sg.* granted, 1154. [O.Fr. *graunter*.]

**Grede**, *v.* to call (loudly), 96, 2703; **Gredde**, *pa. t. sg.* 2417. [OE. *grēdan*.]

**Greme**, *v.* to anger, annoy, 442. [OE. *gremian*.] See **Gram**.

**Grene**, *adj.* green, sickly in colour, 470. [OE. *grēne*.]

**Grene**, *n.* a green, a grassy field, 996, 2828, 2840. [To *prec.*]

**Gres**, *n.* grass, 2698. [OE. *græs*.]

**Gret(e)**, *adj.* great, big, 771, 897; **Grettere**, *compar.* 1893. [OE. *grēat*.]

**Grete(n)**, *v.* to weep, 454; **Gret**, *pa. t. sg.* 615, 1129, 2159; **Gretēn**, *pa. t. pl.* 164, 236, 415, 449, 2796. [OE. *grētan*, *grēotan*.]

**Gretēng**, *n.* weeping, 166. [To *prec.*]

**Grette**, *pa. t. sg.* greeted, saluted, accosted, assailed, 452, 1811, 2625; **Gretten**, *pa. t. pl.* 1212; **Gret**, *pp.* 2290; **I-gret**, *pp.* 163. [OE. *grētan*.]

**Greu**, **Grewē**. See **Growēn**.

**Greue**, *v.* to grieve, offend, 2953. [O.Fr. *grever*.]

**Greype**, *v.* to prepare, 1762; **Greypede**, *pa. t. sg.* 706; **Grey-ped**, *pp.* 714; **Grey-ped** (MS. *Grepet*), *pp.* 2615; **Grey-ped** (MS. *Greped*), *pp.* handled roughly, treated badly, 2003. [ON. *greiða*.]

**Greyue**, *n.* an official in town administration, 266, 1711; *þe greyues*, the official's (house), 1749. [ON. *greifi*.]

**Grim**, *adj.* fierce, angry, severe, 155, 680, 2398, 2655, 2761. [OE. *grimm*.]

**Grim**, *n.* rage, excitement, 2333, *see* Note. [To prec.]

**Grim**(?), *n.* grime(?), dirt(?), 2496. *See* Note.

**Grip**, *n.* griffin, 572. [O.Fr. *grip.*]

**Grip**, *n.* ditch, 1924, 2102. [OE. *grype.*]

**Gripe**(*n*), *v.* to grip, grasp, snatch; **Gripeth**, *imper. pl.* 1882;

**Grop**, *pa. t. sg.* 1776, 1871, 1890, 2728, &c.; **Gripen**, *pa. t. pl.* 1790. [OE. *gripan.*]

**Grith**, *n.* peace, security, 61, 511. [ON. *grith.*]

**Grith-sergeans**, *n. pl.* officers appointed to keep the peace, 267. [Prec. + O.Fr. *sergant.*]

**Grom**, *n.* boy, 790; **Grom**, *pl.* 2472. Note the rimes with normal *ō* and *ȝ*. [See N.E.D.]

**Gronge**, *n.* grange, farm-house, 764. [O.Fr. *grauuge.*]

**Grop**. *See* Gripen.

**Grotes**, *n. pl.* pieces, small pieces, 472, 1414. [OE. *grot.*]

**Grotinde**. *See* Graten.

**Growen**, *v.* to grow, 1167;

**Greu**, *pa. t. sg.* 2333, **Grew**, *pa. t. pl.* 2975, arose; in the phrases *grim greu*, 2333 (*see* Note); *wordes grewe*, 2975. [OE. *grōwan.*]

**Grund**(*e*), *n. dat.* ground, 1859, 1979, 2675. [OE. *grund.*]

**Grunden**, *pp.* ground, sharpened, 2503. [OE. *grindan.*]

**Grundlike**, *adj. pl.* solemn, 2013. [OE. *grund + lic.*]

**Grundlike**, *adv.* heartily, solemnly, 651, 2268, 2307, 2659. [OE. *grund + lice.*]

**Grund-stalwurpe**, *adj.* very stalwart, 1027. [OE. *grund + stælwyrde.*]

**Gyue**. *See* Giue.

**Halde**, **Holde**(*n*), *v.* to hold, keep, be loyal, 29, 1171, 1382; **Held**, *pa. t. sg.* 61, 109, 2526;

**Helden**, *pa. t. pl.* 69, 1201; **Hal-**  
**den**, *pp.* 2806; *halde with*, sup-  
port, stand by, 2308. [OE. *haldan.*]

**Half**, *adj.* half, 2370. [OE. *half.*]

**Halle**, *n. dat.* hall, 157, 239, 1067, &c. [OE. *hall.*]

**Hals**, *n.* neck, 521, 670, 2510. [OE. *hals.*]

**Halte**, *adj. pl.* lame, 543. [OE. *halt.*]

**Halue**, *n. pl.* sides; *bi bope halue*, on both sides, 2682. [OE. *half.*]

**Haluendel**, *n.* the half part, 460. [OE. *halfan dæl*, acc.]

**Hamer**, *n.* hammer, 1877. [OE. *hamor.*]

**Hand**, **Hond**, *n.* hand, possession, 50, 251, 1342, 2446; *in honde haue*, 1020, *see* Note; **Handes**, **Hondes**, *pl.* 95, 215, 235, 333, 636, &c.; **Hend**, *pl.* *See* Hend. [OE. *hand.*]

**Hand-ax**, *n.* battle-axe, 2553. [Prec. + OE. *æx.*]

**Hand-bare**, *adj.* empty-handed, 766. [OE. *hand + bær.*]

**Hand-dede**, *n. dat. pl.* deeds of the hand, 92. [OE. *hand + dēd.*]

**Handlen**, **Handel**, *v.* to handle, wield, 347, 586. [OE. *handlian.*]

**Hangen**, **Honge**, *v.* to hang, 335, 695, 2807. [OE. *hangian*, wk.; *hōn*, str., pp. *hangen.*]  
*See* Heng.

**Hard**(*e*), *adj.* hard, oppressive, 143, 1992. [OE. *hard.*]

**Harde**, *adv.* hard, 567, 639, &c. [To prec.]

**Hare**, *n.* hare, 1994. [OE. *hara.*]

**Harping**, *n.* playing on the harp, 2325. [OE. *harpung.*]

**Harum**, *n.* pity, 1983 (*see* Note), 2409. [OE. *harm.*]

**Hasard**, *n.* game at dice, 2326. [O.Fr. *hasard.*]

**Hated**(*e*), *pa. t. sg.* hated, 40, 1188. [OE. *hatian.*]

**Hauen**, *v.* to have, 78, &c.; **Haues(t)**, 2 *sg. pres. indic.* 688, 848, &c.; **Haues**, **Haueth**, 3 *sg. pres. indic.* 564, 1266, 1285, 1952, 1980, &c.; **Hauen**, *pl. pres. indic.* 1227; **Haueden**, *pa. t. pl.* 163, 238, &c.; **Hauede(n)**, *pa. t. subj.* would have, 1428, 1643, 1687, 2020, 2675; **Hauenet**, 2005; **Hauedet**, 714, *see Et.* **Hau** = *Haue i*, 2002. [OE. *habban*.]

**Hau**. *See* **Hauen**.

**He**, *pron.* 3 *sg. masc.* he, 6, 8, &c.; **His(e)**, *poss. adj.* 34, &c.; **Him**, *acc. and dat.* 18, 30, 286, &c. [OE. *hē*, *his*, *him*.]

**He**, *pron.* 3 *pl.* they, 54, 57, &c.; **Her(e)**, *gen. pl. and poss. adj.* 52, &c.; **Hem**, *acc. and dat. pl.* 367, &c. [OE. *hēo*, *heora*, *heom*.] *See* **Pei**.

**Hede**, *imper. sg.* take heed! have a care! 2389. [OE. *hēdan*.]

**Heie**. *See* **Hey**.

**Held(en)**. *See* **Halde**.

**Hele(n)**, *v.* to heal, 1836, 2058. [OE. *hēlan*.] *See* **Holed**.

**Heles**, *n. pl.* heels, 898. [OE. *hēla*.]

**Helle**, *n.* hell, 16, &c.; **Helle**, *gen. sg.* 405. [OE. *hell*.]

**Helm**, *n.* helmet, 379, 624, 1653, 2612, &c. [OE. *helm*.]

**Helpen**, *v.* to help, 166, 1712;

**Helpes**, *imper. pl.* 2595; **Holpen**, *pp. in holpen doune with*, 901. [OE. *helpan*.]

**Hem** (MS. *Hom*, 1208), *pron.* them, 367, 376, &c. [OE. *heom*.] *See* **He**, *pron. pl.*, and **Pei**.

**Hemp**, *n.* hemp, 782. [OE. *henep*.]

**Hend**, *n. pl.* hands, 505, 2069, 2444. [ON. *hend-r*, *pl.*] *See* **Hand**.

**Hende**, *adj.* courteous, skilful, 1104, 1421, 1704, 2628, 2877, 2914. [See next.]

**Hende**, *adv.* near at hand in

*fer and hende*, 359, 2275. [OE. (*ge*)*hende*.]

**Hendeleike**, *n. dat.* courtesy, 2793. [*Hende*, *adj.* + ON. *-leik-r*.]

**Hengen**, *v.* to hang, 43, 2486;

**Henged**, *pp.* 1429, 1922, 2480. [ON. *hengja*.] *See* **For-henge and Hangen**.

**Henne**, *n.* hen, 702, 1240. [OE. *henne*, *-a*, beside *henn*.]

**Henne**, *adv.* hence, 843, 1780, 1799. [OE. *heonan(e)*.]

**Her**, *n.* hair, 1924. [OE. *hēr*.] *See* **Hor**.

**Herboru**, *n.* lodging, 742. [OE. *\*herebeorg*.]

**Herborwed**, *pp.* lodged, housed, 742. [To *prec.*]

**Her(e)**, *adv.* here, 689, 1058, 1380, &c. [OE. *hēr*.]

**Her(e)**, **Hire**, *pron.* their, 52, 393, 465, 953, &c. [OE. *heora*, *hiora*.] *See* **Ilker**, **Per(e)**.

**Here**, *n.* army, 346, 379, 2153, 2580, 2942. [OE. *here*.]

**Here(n)**, *v.* to hear, listen, 4, 732, 1640, 2279; **Herde**, *pa. t. sg.* 286, 465, &c.; **Herden**, *pa. t. pl.* 150, &c. [OE. *hēran*.] *See* **Y-here**.

**Hering**, *n.* herring, 758. [OE. *hēring*.]

**Herinne**, *adv.* herein, 458. [OE. *hēr + innan*.]

**Herkne**, *v.* to listen, *imper. sg.* 1285; **Herkneth**, *imper. pl.* 1. [OE. *hercnian*.]

**Hermite**, *n. pl.* hermits, 430. [O.Fr. *hermite*.]

**Hernes**, *n. pl.* brains, 1808, 1917 (*see Note*). [ON. *hjárn*, earlier *\*hearn*.]

**Hern-panne**, *n.* brain-pan, skull, 1991. [*Prec.* + OE. *panne*.]

**Her-of** (MS. *Heroffe*), *adv.* 2585. [OE. *hēr + of*.]

**Hert**, *n.* hart, deer, 1872. [OE. *heor(o't)*.]

**Herte**, *n.* heart, 479, 2054

**Herte**, *gen. sg.* 70, 1819. [OE. *heorte*.]

**Hertelike**, *adv.* heartily, bravely, 1347, 2748. [Prec. + *lice*.]

**Hetelike**, *adv.* fiercely, furiously, 2655. [OE. *hetelice*.]

**Hepen**, *adv.* hence, 683, 690, 845, 1085, 2727. [ON. *heðan*.]

**Heu**, *n.* colour, complexion, 2918. [OE. *hēow*.]

**Heued**, *n.* head, 379, 624, 1653, 1701, 1759, 1907, &c. [OE. *hēafod*.]

**Heuen(e)**, *n.* heaven, 62, 246, 1276, &c. **Heuene**, *gen. pl.* 1937. [OE. *heofon*.]

**Heuene-riche**, *n.* kingdom of heaven, 133, 407. [OE. *heofon-ric*.] See **Rike**.

**Heui**, *adj.* heavy, laborious, 808, 2456, &c. [OE. *hefig*.]

**Hew**, *pa. t. sg.* cut, 2729. [OE. *hēawan*.] See **To-hewen**.

**Hexte**, *adj. superl.* weak, highest, tallest, 1080, \*199. See **Hey**.

**Hey**, *adj.* high, tall, 987, 1071, 1083, 1289; *heye se*, high sea, 719; *heye curt*, high court, 1685; *heye and lowe*, high and low, every one, 2431, 2471, &c. [OE. *hēh*.]

**Heye**, *adv.* high, on high, 43, 335, 695, &c. [To prec.]

**Hey(e)like**, *adv.* highly, nobly, 1329, 2319. [OE. *hēh + lice*.]

**Heyman**, *n.* man of high rank, nobleman, 231, 1260. [OE. *hēh + man*.]

**Hidden**, *pa. t. pl.* hid, 69; **Hyd**, *pp.* 1059. [OE. *hȳdan*.]

**Hider**, *adv.* hither, 868, 885, 1431. [OE. *hider*.]

**Hides**, *n. pl.* skins, 918. [OE. *hȳd*.]

**Hil**, **Hyl**, *n.* hill, heap, 892, 1287. [OE. *hyll*.]

**Hile**, *v.* to cover, 2082. [ON. *hylja*.]

**Hine**, *n. pl.* servants, slaves, 620. [OE. *hīna*, *gen. pl.*]

**Hire**, *pron. fem. acc. gen. dat. sg.* her, to her, 127, 130, 131, 333, 2916, &c. [OE. *hire*.]

**Hire**, *n.* hire, pay, 908, 910. [OE. *hȳr*.]

**His(e)**, **Hyse** (MS. Is, 735, &c.; Hiis, 47, 468), *poss. adj.* his, 34, 333, 355, 794, 2395, &c.; *absolutely used*, 2018. The forms in *-e* are properly plural, being new formations on the analogy of *mine*, *pine*. [OE. *his*, *gen. sg.*] See **He**.

**Hof**, *pa. t. sg.* heaved, raised, 2750. [OE. *hebban*, *pret. sg.* *hōf*.]

**Hok**, *n.* hook, fish-hook, 752, 1102. [OE. *hōc*.]

**Hol**, *adj.* whole, well, 2075. [OE. *hāl*.]

**Hold**, *adj.* loyal; *his soule hold* = loyal to his soul, i. e. actuated by care for his soul, 74; *hold(e) oþes*, oaths of loyalty or fealty (cf. OE. *hold-āþas*), 2781, 2816. [OE. *hold*.]

**Holden**. See **Halde**.

**Hole**, *n. dat.* hole, socket (of the eye), 1813, 2439. [OE. *hol*.]

**Holed**, *pp.* healed, 2039 (see **Hale**, *v.*<sup>2</sup> in N.E.D.). [OE. *hālian*.]

**Holi**, *adj.* holy, 36, 431, 1361, &c. [OE. *hālig*.]

**Holpen**. See **Helpen**.

**Hom**, *n.* and *adv.* home, 557, 778; *at hom(e)*, 789, 822. [OE. *hām*.]

**Hond**. See **Hand**, **Hend**.

**Honge**. See **Hangen**.

**Hope**, *n.* hope, expectation, 307. [OE. *hōpa*.]

**Hor**, *n.* hair, 235. [ON. *hár*.] See **Her**.

**Horn**, *n.* horn, 700; *simenels with þe horn*, 779, probably refers to the shape of the simnel. Halliwell says a simnel is 'generally

made in a three-cornered form'.  
See N.E.D. [OE. *horn*.]

**Hors**, *n.* horse, 94, 126, 370, 2283; **Hors**, *pl.* 701, 1222. [OE. *hors*.]

**Horse-knaue**, *n.* horseboy, groom, 1019. [OE. *hors* + *cnafa*.]

**Hosed**, *pp.* supplied with hose, 971. [To next.]

**Hosen**, *n. pl.* hose, clothing for the leg, 860, 969. [OE. *hosa*.]

**Hoslen**, *v.* to administer or to receive the sacrament, 212, 362; **Hos(e)led**, *pp.* 364, 2598. [OE. *hūslian*.]

**Hoten**, *pp.* called, named, 106, 284. [OE. *hātan*.]

[**Houes** (MS.), 582, see \***Bihoues**. Shortened forms are quoted in N.E.D. from the fifteenth century.]

**Hu**, **Hou** (MS. also **Hwou**), *adv.* how, 120, 288, 827, 960, 1646, 2411, 2946, 2987, &c. [OE. *hū*.]

**Hul**, *n.* hollow, 2687; see Note.

**Hund**, *n.* hound, 1994, 2331, 2435. [OE. *hund*.]

**Hundred**, *adj.* hundred, 1633. [OE. *hundred*.]

**Hunger**, *n.* hunger, famine, 416, 635, 652, 841, 2454 (MS. **Hungred**), &c. [OE. *hungor*.]

**Hungre(n)**, *v. impers.* with *dat.*; *us hungreth* = we are hungry, 455, 464; *him hungrede*, he was hungry. [To prec.]

**Hus**, *n.* house, 740, 1141, 2913. [OE. *hūs*.] See **Milne-hous**.

**Hwan**, *adv.* when, since, 408, 474, 1962, 2808, &c. [OE. *hwanne*.] See **Quan(ne)**.

**Hware**, *adv.* where, 1881, 2240, 2579. The predominance of a spellings points to a short vowel. [ON. *hvar* or OE. *hwāra* (?).] See **Hwere**, **Hwore-so**.

**Hwar-of**, *adv.* wherefrom, 2976. [Prec. + *of*.]

**Hwat**, *pron.* what, 117, 541, 596, 1137, &c.; why, 2547; *hwat is*

*yu*, 453; *hwat is þe*, 1951, 2704, what is wrong with you; *hwat for*, what with, 635. [OE. *hwæt*.]

**Hwat**, *adv.* what! 2547. [To prec.]

**Hwere**, *adv.* where, 1083. [OE. *hwēr*.] See **Hware**.

**Hwere**, *adv.* whether (?), wherever (?), 549. See Note.

**Hweper**, *adv.* whether, 2098; introduces a question, 292, 294. [OE. *hwæper*.]

**Hwi**, **Qui**, *adv.* why, 454, 1650, &c. [OE. *hwī*.]

**Hwider**, *adv.* whither, 1139. [OE. *hwider*.]

**Hwil**, *conj.* while, whilst, 6, 301, 363, 538, 2437. [See next.]

**Hwile**, *n. dat.* time, little time, 722, 1830. [OE. *hwīl*.]

**Hwilkgat** (MS. **Hwilgat**), *adv.* how, which way, 836. [OE. *hwīlc* + ON. *gata*.] See **Gate**, **pusgate**.

**Hwit**, *adj.* white, 48, 1144, 1729. [OE. *hwīt*.]

**Hwo**, *pron. interrog.* 172, 1952, &c. [OE. *hwā*.]

**Hwo**, *pron. indef.* whosoever, 296, 300, 2604, &c. [OE. *hwā*.]

[**Hwor** (MS.), *adv.* whether (introducing a question), 1119. [ON. *hvdrr* (?).] See **Hwere**.]

**Hwore-so**, *pron.* wheresoever, 1349. See **Hware** and **So**.

**Hwo-so**, *pron.* whosoever, 4, 76, 83, &c.; **Hwom so**, *acc.* 197. See **Hwo** and **So**.

**Hyl**. See **Hil**.

**Hyse**. See **His(e)**.

**Ich**, **I**, **Y**, *pron.* I, 21, 167, 305, 487, 686, 1377, &c. Enclitic in **Biddi** = *Bidde i*, 484; **Hau** = *Haue i*, 2002. **Me**, *acc.* and *dat.* I, 14, 295, &c.; **Mi**, **Min(e)**, *poss. adj.* 528, 578; used absolutely, 295, 2083, &c. [OE. *ic*, *mē*, *min*.]

**I-gret**. See **Grette**.

**I-groten**. See **Graten**.

**Ilk, Ilc**, *adj.* each, every, 1442, 1740; **Ilke**, 821; (MS. **Il del**, every part, 818, 2112, 2483, 2514;) *ilc oper*, each other, 1056, cf. 1921; *on ilke wise*, in every way, 1861, 2959. [OE. *ylc*.] See **Ilkan**, **Ilker**, **Euer(e)-ilk**.

**Ilkan**, **Ilkon**, *pron.* each one, 1770, 1842, 2108, 2357. [OE. *ylc ān*.]

**Ilke**, *adj.* in *pat ilke*, the same, the very, 1215, 2674, 2679, &c. [OE. *ilca*.]

**Ilker** = **Ilk** here, each of them, 2352. [OE. *ylc heora*.]

**Ille**, *adv.*; *hire likede ille*, it displeased her greatly, 1165; *ille maked*, ill-treated, handled roughly, 1952; *gouen hem ille*, l. 164, see Note. [ON. *ill-r*, *adj.*; *illa*, *adv.*] Cf. **Yuele**.

**I-maked**. See **Maken**.

**In**, *prep.* in, on, 8, 424, &c. [OE. *in*.]

**Inch**, *n.* inch, 1034. [OE. *ynce*.]

**Inne**, *adv.* in, 594, 762, 807. [OE. *innan*.] See **Perinne**.

**Inow**, **Ynow**, *adv.* enough, 563, 706, 904, 911, 931, 1795; **Y-nowe**, *pl.* 2682. [OE. *genōge*, oblique form of *genōh*.]

**Intil**, *prep.* unto, into, 128, 251, &c. [OE. *in* + ON. *til*.]

**In-to**, *prep.* into, to, unto, 203, 265, 535, 2872, &c. [OE. *in-tō*.]

**Ioie**, **Ioye**, *n.* joy, 662, 1107, 1209, 1237, 1278, 1315, &c. [O.Fr. *joie*.] See **Ioyinge**.

**Ioupe**, *n.* a loose jacket, 1767. [O.Fr. *jupe*.]

**Ioying(e)** (MS. **Ioynge**, 2087), *n. dat.* rejoicing, 2949. [O.Fr. *joie* + *-ing*.]

**Is**, **Ys**, 3 *sg. pres. indic.* is, 5, &c.; *hwat is you?* what ails you? 453. [OE. *is*.] See **Nis**, **Am**, **Ben**.

**It**, *pron.* it, 4, &c.; as anticipated subject *it was*, &c. = there was, 27, &c.; *nīs hit*, is there not?

462; MS. **It** = **he**, 2264; for **It**, l. 664, see Note. [OE. *hit*.] Cf. **Et**.

**Iuel**, *adj.* poor, bad; *iuel(e) o bone*, ill-equipped, in poor condition, 2505, \*2525, see Note to l. 2505. [OE. *yfel*, *adj.*]

**Iuel**, **Yuel**, *n.* evil, sickness, 114, 144, 155, 2221; with *iuel(e)* = with evil intent, 50, 994, 1689. [OE. *yfel*, *n.*]

**Iuele**, **Yuele**, *adv.* evilly, sorely, 2755; *iuele like* + dative of person = displease, 132; cf. *ille like*. [OE. *yfele*.]

**Iustise**, *n.* a justice, 263, 1628, 2202. [O.Fr. *justise*.]

**Kables**, *n. pl.* cables, thick ropes, 710. [O.Fr. *cable*.]

**Kalde**. See **Callen**.

**Kam**. See **Komen**.

**Kandel**, *n.* candle, 585. [OE. *candel*.]

**Kaske**, *adj. pl.* vigorous, active, 1841. [ON. *karsk-r*, *kask-r*.]

[**Kayn** (MS.), for *payn*, 31, 1327; see **Introd.**, p. xxxix.]

**Kaysere**. See **Cayser(e)**.

**Keft**. See **Coupe**.

**Keling**, *n.* cod, 757.

**Keme**. See **Komen**.

**Kempe**, *n.* champion, 1036. [OE. *cempa*, ON. *kempa*.]

**Kene**, *adj.* brave, eager, 1832, 2115. [OE. *cēne*.]

**Kepte**, *pa. t. sg.* watched, kept watch for, 879. [OE. *cēpan*.]

**Kesten**, **Casten**, *v.* to cast, fling, 81, 519, 1784, 2101, 2611; **Cast(e)**, *pa. t. sg.* 556, 567, 813; **Keste**, *pa. t. pl.* 2449. [ON. *kasta*; for the *e* forms before *st* cf. **Morsbach**, ME. Gram. § 87, n. 2.]

**Keuel**, *n.* a gag, 547, 637. [ON. *kefli*.]

**Keyes**, *n. pl.* keys, 1303. [OE. *cæg*.]

**Kichin**, *n.* kitchen, 936. [OE. *cycene*.]

**Kid**, *pp.* made known, 1060. [OE. *cýpan*, *pp.* *cýdde*.]

**Kin**, **Kyn**, *n.* kindred, relatives, stock, 414, 2045; **Kin**, *dat.* (?), 393, *see* Note. [OE. *cynn*.]

**Kindlen**, *v.* to kindle, 915. [To ON. *kynda*.]

**Kineriche** (MS. Kinneriche), kingdom, 976. [OE. *cynerīce*.] *See* Cuneriche.

**King**, *n.* king, 27, &c. [OE. *cyn(in)g*.]

**Kinnes**, **Kines**, *gen. sg.* in none *kin(n)es*, of no kind, 861, 1140; *neuere kines*, 2691, with the same meaning, is a nonce usage. [OE. *nānes cynnes*.] *See* Kin.

**Kippe**, *v.* to seize, snatch, 894; **Kipt(e)**, *pa. t. sg.* 1050, 2638; *kipt ut*, pulled out, 2407. [ON. *kippa*.]

**Kirke**, *n.* the church, a church-building, 36, 1132, 1355, 2583. [ON. *kirkja*.]

**Kiste**, *n. dat.* chest, coffer, 2018. [ON. *kista*.] *See* Chiste.

**Kiste**, *pa. t. sg.* kissed, 1279; **Kisten**, *pa. t. pl.* 2162. [OE. *cys-san*.]

**Kitte** (MS. Citte), *pa. t. sg.* cut, 942. [OE. *\*cýttan* (?).]

**Knaue**, *n.* boy, lad, boy-servant, 308, 409, 450, 458, 949, 1087, 1123, 1146, &c. [OE. *cnafa*.] *See* Horse-knaue.

**Knawe**, *v.* to know, recognize, find out, 2207, 2785; **Kneu**, *pa. t. sg.* 2468; **Knewen**, *pa. t. pl.* 2149; **Knawed**, *pp. wk.* 2057. [OE. (*ge*)*cnāwan*.]

**Knele**, *v.* to kneel, 1320; **Knelede**, *pa. t. sg.* 482. [OE. *cnēowlian*.]

**Knes**, *n. pl.* knees, 451, 1902. [OE. *cnēo*.]

**Knif**, *n.* a knife, 479, 498, 2484, 2493, &c.; **Kniue**, *dat. sg.* 2503; **Kniues**, *pl.* 1769. [ON. *knif-r*.]

**Kniht**, *n.* knight, 32, 77, 239,

343, 345, 1068, 2706, &c. [OE. *cnihht*.]

**Komen**, **Comen**, *v.* to come, arrive, 18, 325, 1001, &c.; **Cometh**, **Comes**, *imper. pl.* 1798, 1885, 2247; **Kam**, **Cam**, **Kom**, *pa. t. sg.* 451, 766, 863, 1309, 2622, &c.; **Komen**, **Comen**, *pa. t. pl.* 1012, 1202, 2790; **Keme**, 1208, *see* Note; **Comen**, **Cumen**, *pp.* 116, 1436, 1714, 2580, &c.; *comen up*, 2540, landed. [OE. *cuman*.]

**Kope**, **Cope**, *n.* cope, cloak, 429, 1957. [OE. *\*cāpe* (?), late L. *cāpa*.]

**Kor(e)n**, *n.* corn, 462, 780, 1879, &c.; *korn of bred*, bread-corn, corn for bread, 825. [OE. *corn*.]

**Kradel-barnes**, *n. pl.* children in the cradel, 1912. [OE. *cradol + bearn* or ON. *barn*.] *See* Bern.

**Krake(n)**, **Crake**, *v.* to crack, break, 914, 1857, 1908; **Crakede**, *pa. t. sg.* 568; **Kraked**, *pp.* 1238. [OE. *cracian*.]

**Kranes**, *n. pl.* cranes, 1726. [OE. *cran*.]

**Krike**, *n.* creek, a narrow arm of the sea, 708. [See N.E.D.]

**Kuneriche**, **Kunerike**. *See* Cuneriche.

**Kunne**. *See* Can.

**Kunrik**, *n.* 2143, in form is equivalent to Norse *kynrik-r*, but is perhaps an error for Kunmerk; *see* Note.

**Kynmerk**, *n.* a birth-mark indicating royal rank, 604. [OE. *cyne + mearc*.] *See* Kunrik.

**Lac**, *n.* fault, failing, in *withuten lac*, 191, 2219. [Cf. OLG. *lak*.]

**Ladde**, *n.* a serving-man, 1786, 2493, &c.; **Laddes**, *pl.* 1015, 1024, &c.; **Ladden**, *pl.* 1038. In the French versions *valet* is used in the same senses. [See N.E.D.]

**Lame**, *adj.* lame, 1938. [OE. *lama*, *wk. adj.*]



**Lamed**, *pp.* maimed, crippled, 2755. [To prec.]

**Large**, *adj.* generous, liberal, 97, 2941 [O.Fr. *large*.]

**Laste**, *v.* to last, suffice, endure, 538, 247, 2605. [OE. *læstan*.]

**Late**, *adv.* late, in *to late*, 691, 845; **Laste**, *superl.* 678; at *pe laste*, finally, 637. [OE. *læt*.]

**Late(n)**, *v.* to allow, permit, 486, 1741; **Lat(e)**, *imper. sg.* 17, 1376, 1772, 2422; **Laten**, to cease to speak, 328; *lat be*, *imper. sg.* desist from, 1265, cf. 1657; **Laten**, *pp.* abated, 240; **Laten**, *pp.* allowed to remain, 1925; **Late**, *infin.* to set, in *late rihte*, 2611, seems nearer to Norse than English usage, but *rihte* may itself be infinitive, 'to straighten'. [ON. *lata*.] See **Let**.

**Lath**, *n.* injury, 76, 2718, 2976. [OE. *lāð*, *n.*] See **Loth**.

**Lathe**, *n.* hostility, enmity, 2718, 2976. Spelling, disyllabic form, and rime point to short *a*. [OE. *læððu*.]

**Lauhwe(n)**, *v.* to laugh, smile; **Lauhwinde**, *pres. ptc.* 946; **Low**, *pa. t. sg.* 903; **Lowen**, *pa. t. pl.* 1056. [OE. *hlæhhan*.]

**Lauhte**, *pa. t.* took (a name), suffered (insult), felt (pain), 744, 1673; **Lauhte**, *pp.* 1988. [OE. *læccan*.]

**Laumprei**, -ey, -ee, *n.* lamprey, 771, 897, 1727. [O.Fr. *\*laumpreie*.]

**Law**, *n.* law; **Lawe**, *dat.* 2815; **Lawes**, *pl.* 28. [ON. *\*lagu*.]

**Lawe**, **Lowe**, *adj.* low, in *heye and lowe*, 2431, 2471, 2767, &c.; **Lowe**, *adv.* 2079. [ON. *lág-r*.]

**Lax**, *n.* salmon, 754, 896, 1727. [OE. *lax*.]

**Leche**, *n.* a physician, 1836, 2057. [OE. *læce*.]

**Led**, *n.* cauldron, pot (originally

a pot made of lead); cf. Cant. Tales, Prologue, 202. [OE. *lēad*.]

**Lede(n)**, *v.* to lead, escort, carry, 245, 320, 2573, &c.; **Ledde**, *pa. t. sg.* 1686; **Ledden**, *pa. t. pl.* 2451; *lede(n) ut here*, to lead an army to war, 89, 346, 379; *him ledde*, lived, managed his affairs, 785. [OE. *lēdan*.]

**Lef**, **Leue** (oblique), *adj.* and *n.* dear, 431, 909; especially in *lef and loth* = beloved and hated, friend and foe, 261, 440, 2273, 2313, 2379, 2775. *Lef* as a title used to superiors or leaders = sir, 2606; cf. **Leue**, 1885, which perhaps = dear (brother); **Leuere**, *compar.* in *him were leuere*, &c. = he would rather (lit. it was preferable to him), 1193, 1423, 1671, &c. [OE. *lēof*.]

**Leidest**. See **Leyn**.

**Leite**, *v.* to seek, 2441, see Note. [ON. *leita*.]

**Lem(m)an**, *n.* dear one, beloved, used of both sexes, 1191, 1283, 1312, 1322. [OE. *lēof-man*.]

**Leme**. See **Lime**.

**Lende**, *v.* to arrive, land, 733. [OE. *lendan*.]

**Lene**, *v.* to lend, give, 2072. [OE. *lēnan*.]

**Lenge**, *n.* ling, a kind of fish, 832. [Apparently connected with *long*, in which case the unpalatalized *g* tells against English origin.]

**Lenge**, *v.* to prolong, 1734, 2363, [ON. *lengja*.]

**Lengere**, *adv.* longer, 809. [Cf. OE. *lengra*, comparative of *lang*, *adj.*] See **Long**.

**Leoun**, *n.* lion, 573, 1867, \*2690 (MS. *Leuin*). [O.Fr. *liun*.]

**Lepe**, *v.* to run, rush, leap, 2006, see Note; **Lep**, *pa. t. sg.* 891, 1777, 1942; **Lopen**, *pa. t. pl.* 1896, 2616. [OE. *hlēapan*.] See **Loupe**.

**Ler**, *n.* cheek, 2918. [OE. *hlēor*.]

**Lere(n)**, *v.* to instruct, to learn, 797, 823, 2592. [OE. *læran*.] See Y-lerc.

**Lese**, 3 *sg. pres. subj.* to free, release, 333. [OE. *lësan*.]

**Lesse**, *adj. compar.* less, 1013. [OE. *læssa*.] See Litel.

**Let**, *pa. t. sg.* allowed, caused, 252, 876, 2062, 2651; desisted, 2447, 2500; **Leten**, *pa. t. pl.* 2379. [OE. *lëtan*.] See Late(n).

**Leteres**, *n. pl.*; *þise leteres*, this inscription, 2481. [O.Fr. *letre*.]

**Lette**, *v.* to hinder, prevent, 1164, 2253, 2819. [OE. *lettan*.]

**Leue**, *n.* leave, permission, 1626, 2952, &c.; *tok leue at*, took leave of, bid farewell to, 1387. [OE. *lēaf*.]

**Leue**. See Lef.

**Leue**, 3 *sg. subj.* grant, 334, 406, 2807. [OE. *lēfan*.]

**Leue**, *v.* to believe; **Leues** (*on*), 3 *sg. pres. indic.* believes (in), 1781, 2105. [OE. *lēfan*.]

**Leued**, *pp.* left, 225. [OE. *læfan*.] See Bileue.

**Leuedi**, *n.* lady, mistress, 171, 293, 1120, &c.; **Leuedyes**, *pl.* 239. [OE. *hlæfdige*.]

**Leuere**. See Lef.

**[Leuin (MS.)**, *n.* lightning, 2690, but probably an error for *Leun*, lion.]

**Lewe**, *adj.* warm, 498, 2921. [OE. *hlēowe*.]

**Leyd(e)**. See Leyn.

**Leye**, *n.* lie, falsehood, 2117. [OE. *lyge*.]

**Leye**, *v. I sg. pres. indic.* lie, speak falsely, 2010. [OE. *lēgan*.]

**Leyk**, *n.* a game, 1021, 2326. [ON. *leik-r*.]

**Leyke(n)**, **Layke**, *v.* to play, take part in sports, 469, 950, 997, 1011; **Leykeden**, *pa. t. pl.* 954. [ON. *leika*.] See Leyk, *n.*

**Leyn**, *v.* to lay, put; *dede leyn in an ore* = rowed, 718; **Leyde**,

*pa. t. sg.* in *leyde hond on*, 50, 994, &c.; *þespeche leyde*, became speechless, 229; **Leidest**, 2 *sg. pa. t.* 636; **Leyden**, *pa. t. pl.* in *leyden on*, laid on, beat upon, 1907; **Leyd**, *pp.* 408, 1689, 2839; spread (of a table), 1722. [OE. *legan*.]

**Liich**, *adj.* like, 2155. [OE. *līc*.]

**Lif**, *n.* life, 349, 2492, &c.;

**Liues**, *pl.* 697, &c.; **Liue**, *dat. sg.* 281; *o(n) liue*, alive, living, 281, &c.; *brouht of liue*, brought out of life, dead, 513, 2129; *do of liue*, to kill, 1805; **Liues**, **Lyues**, *gen. sg.* as *adv.* alive, 509, 1003, 1307, 1919, 2854. [OE. *līf*.]

**Lift**, *adj.* left (side, &c.), 2130, 2635. [OE. *lyft*.]

**Liften**, *v.* to lift, 1028, 1030;

**Lifte**, *pa. t. sg.* 1806. [ON. *lypta*.]

**Ligge(n)**, *v.* to lie (down), to be (in prison, pain, &c.), 330, 802, 876, 882, 1374. [OE. *ligan* or rather ON. *liggja*.] See Lyen.

**Liht**, *n.* light, a light, 534, 576, 588, &c. [OE. *lēht*, *līht*.]

**Liht**, *adj.* light, bright, 593. [OE. *lēht*, *līht*.]

**Liht**, *adv.* lightly, nimbly, 1942. [OE. *lēhte*.]

**Liht**, *v. imper. sg.* to light, cause to burn, 585. [OE. *lihtan*.]

**Like**, *v. impers.* with *dat.* please, 132; **Likede**, *pa. t.* 1165. [OE. *lician*.]

**Lime**, **Leme**, *n.* limb, in *leme or lif*, 2555 (*leme* with vowel of plural OE. *leomu*); *a deueles lime*, 1409; *of limes spille*, castrate, 86. [OE. *lim*.]

**Line**, *n.* line, cord, 539, 782. [OE. *līne*, O.Fr. *līgne*.]

**Lite**, *adj.* little, 1730, 1855, and MS. at 276. [OE. *līt*.]

**Litel**, *adj.* little, 6, 481, 1858, &c.; **Little**, *pl.* 2014. [OE. *lītel*.]

**Lith**, *n.* 1338, see Note.

**Lith**, *n.* people, in the phrase

(common elsewhere) *lond* and *lith*, 2515. [ON. *lǫð-r.*]

**Lipes**, *n. pl.* the tips of the toes (or fingers), 2163. [OE. *lið.*]

**Lipes**, **Lypes**, *imper. pl.* listen, 1400, 2204, 2576. [ON. *hlýða.*]

**Littene**, *v.* to diminish, 2701. [To OE. *lȳt.*] See **Lite**.

**Liue(n)**, *v.* to live, 199, 257, 355, &c.; **Liueden**, *pa. t. pl.* 1299, 2044; **Liued**, *pp.* 2872. [OE. *libban.*]

**Liue(s)**, **Lyues**. See **Lif**.

**Lof**, *n.* loaf, 653. [OE. *hlāf.*]

**Loke(n)**, *v.* to look, behold, see, look after, 376, 2136, 2726; **Loke**, *imper. sg.* 597, 1680, 1712; **Lokes**, *imper. pl.* 2240, 2292, 2300, 2579, 2812; **Lokede**, *pa. t. sg.* 679, 1041. [OE. *lōcian.*]

**Loken(e)**, *pp.* fastened, closed; *loken(e) cope(s)*, closed cape(s) or cloak(s), 429, 1957. See **Ancren Riwe**, p. 56, *ȝif he haueð enne widne hod and one ilokene cope*. [OE. *lūcan.*]

**Lond**, *n.* land, country, 64 (see Note), 340, 696, 721, 736, &c. [OE. *land.*]

**Long**, *adj.* long, tall (of persons), 267, 988, 1063, 1648, &c. [OE. *lang.*]

**Long(e)**, *adv.* long, for a long time, 172, 241, 842, &c. [OE. *lange.*]

**Longes**, 3 *sg. pres. indic.* belongs, appertains, 396. [Cf. OE. *gelang*, *adj.*]

**Lopen**. See **Lepe**.

**Loth**, *adj.* hateful, hated, especially in *lef* and *loth*, 261, 440, &c. [OE. *lāð.*] See **Lath**.

**Loude**, *adv.* loudly, 96, 2079. On *loude*, 228, see Note. [OE. *hlūde*, *adv.*]

**Loue**, *n.* love, 1761, 2967, 2974, &c. [OE. *lufu.*]

**Louen**, *v.* to love, 1347, &c.; **Louede**, *pa. t. sg.* 71, 349, &c.;

**Louede(n)**, *pa. t. pl.* 30, 955, &c. [OE. *lufian.*]

**Louerd**, **Lowerd**, *n.* lord, master, 96, 483, 621, &c., see Notes to ll. 64, 228. [OE. *hlāford.*]

**Louerdinges**, *n.* lords, rulers (with no sense of contempt), 515, 1401. [OE. *hlāfording.*]

**Loupe**, *v.* to run, rush, 1801. [ON. *hlaupa.*] See **Lepe**.

**Low(en)**. See **Lauhwe(n)**.

**Lowe**. See **Lawe**.

**Lowe**, *n.* hill, mountain, 1291, 1699. [OE. *hlāw.*]

**Lurken**, *n.* hide, live in concealment, sneak away (?), 68. [ON. *lurka*(?).]

**Luue-drurye**, *n.* love-making, courtship, 195. [OE. *lufu* + O.Fr. *druerie.*]

**Lyen**, *v.* to lie (in bed, &c.), 673, 2134; **Lay**, *pa. t. sg.* 812; **Leyen**, *pa. t. pl.* 475, 2132. [OE. *licgan.*] See **Ligge(n)** and **Leyn**.

**Lype**, *n.* respite, ease, alleviation, 147. [Cf. OE. *līðe*, *adj.*]

**Mad**. See **Maken**.

**Maght**. See **May**.

**Make**, *n.* wife, 1150. [OE. *gemaca.*]

**Make(n)**, **Mak**, *v.* to make, do, cause (with infinitive in passive sense as *made bynde*, 41), 29, 445, 1441, &c.; **Make**, *imper. sg.* 676; **Makede**, **Made** (MS. *Maude*, 436, 737), *pa. t. sg.* 38, 39, 41, &c.; **Makeden**, **Made(n)**, *pa. t. pl.* 554, 1039, 1908, &c.; **Maked**, *pp.* 23, 365; **I-maked**, *pp.* 5; **Mad**, *pp.* 1953; *ille maked* = handled roughly, 1951. [OE. *macian.*]

**Makerel**, *n.* mackerel, 758. [O.Fr. *maquerel.*]

**Male**, *n.* a bag, 48. [O.Fr. *male.*]

**Malisun**, *n.* curse, malediction, 426. [O.Fr. *maleisun.*]

**Man**, *n.* man, 45; **Men**, *pl.* 1, 2, &c. [OE. *mann*.]

**Mani(e)**, *adj.* many, 244, &c.; *manī a (kniht)*, 1697, &c. [OE. *manig*.]

**Manred(e)**, *n.* homage, fealty, 484, 2172, 2180, 2248, 2265, 2312, 2774, 2816, 2847, 2850. [OE. *manræden*.]

**Marz**, *n.* March, 2559. [O.Fr. *marz*.]

**Mast**, *n.* mast (of a ship), 709, 986. [OE. *mæst*.]

**Maugre (pin)**, in spite of (thee), 1128, 1789. [O.Fr. *maugré* + OE. *gen. sg. pin*.]

**May**, *v.* may, 26, &c.; **Mowe**, 175, 394, 675, &c.; **Mowen**, **Moun**, *pl.* 11, 460, 2587, &c.; **Maght** (MS. commonly *Mait*, *Mayt*, *Mayth*), *pa. t. sg.* 145, 356, 376, &c.; **Mihte**, *pa. t. sg.* 233, &c.; **Mihte(n)**, *pa. t. pl.* 516, 1929, 2017, &c.; **Mouhte**, **Mowhte**, *pa. t. sg.* 210, &c.; **Mouhte(n)**, *pa. t. pl.* 1183, 2019, 2039, 2328, 2330, &c. [OE. *mæg*, late subjunctive *muge*; *pl. \*mugon*; pret *mæhte, mihte*, and later *muhte*.]

**Mayden**, *n.* maiden, 33, 205, 467, 995, 2222, &c.; **Maydne**, *dat.* 83, 783; **Maydnes**, *pl.* 2, &c. [OE. *mægden*.]

**Mayster**, *n.* sir, master, chief, 1135, 2028, 2385. [O.Fr. *maistre*.] [**Ma-rt(h)** (MS.), *see* May.]

**Mede**, *n.* reward, bribe, 102, 119, 685, 1635, 2402, 2901. [OE. *mēd*.]

**Meiné**, **Meyné**, household, company, 827, 834; added in 65 = subjects. [O.Fr. *meyne*.]

**Meke**, *adj.* meek, 945, 1066. [ON. *mjúk-r* earlier *\*mēok*.]

**Mele**, *n.* meal, ground corn, 780. [OE. *melu*.]

**Mele**, *v.* to speak, 2059. [OE. *mēlan*.]

**Men**, *impers. subject. sg.* (cf. Fr.

*on*), one, 390, 647, 2610, &c. [OE. *man* weakened under reduced stress.]

**Mene**, *v.* to mean, signify, 597, 2114. [OE. *mēnan*.]

**Merci**, *n.* mercy, 96, 271, &c. [O.Fr. *merci*.]

**Mere**, *n.* mare, 2449, 2504; **Mere**, *gen. sg.* (OE. *mēran*), 2478. [OE. *mēre*.]

**Messe**, *n.* Mass, service of the Mass, 243, 1176. [OE. and O.Fr. *messe*.]

**Messe-bok**, *n.* mass-book, 186, 391, 2710. [Preci + OE. *bōc*.]

**Messe-gere**, *n.* all things used in the service of the Mass, 188, 389, 1078, 2217. [Messe + ON. *gerwi*.]

**Mest(e)**. *See* Michel.

**Mester**, *n.* trade, business, 823. [O.Fr. *mester*.]

**Met**, *pp. impers.* in *me haueth met*, I have dreamed, 1285. [OE. *mētan*.]

**Mete**, *n.* food, dish, provisions, 146, 317, 459, 649, 883, 2340, &c. [OE. *mete*.]

**Mette**, *pa. t. sg.* met, 1810, 2624. [OE. *mētan*.]

**Meyné**. *See* Meiné.

**Michel**, **Mikel** (MS. *Mik*, 2342, *Mike*, 960, 1744, 1761, 2336), *adj.* much, great, big, tall, 510, 660, &c.; **More**, *comp.* 981, &c.; **Mest(e)**, *superl.* 233, 945; **Meste**, *pl.* 983; **Moste** (with vowel of comparative), 423, 2321, &c.; *on on þe moste hil*, 1287, *see* Note, and cf. L. *unus maximus*. [OE. *mīcel*, *māra*, *māst* (late OE. *Nth. māst*).]

**Michel**, **Mikel**, *adv.* much, 60, 122, &c. [To prec.] *See* Mo.

**Middel**, *n.* middle, 2092. [OE. *middel*.]

**Middel-niht**, *n.* midnight, 575. [OE. *middel-niht*.]

**Middelerd**, *n.* earth, world, 2244. [Cf. OE. *middaneard*.]

**Miht**, *n.* power, 35. [OE. *miht*.]

**Mihte(n)**. See May.

**Mik(el)**. See Michel.

**Milce**, *n.* mercy, 1361. [OE. *miltse*.]

**Mile**, *n.* mile, 721, 1831, 2498. [OE. *mīl*.]

**Milk**, *n.* milk, 643. [OE. *milc*.]

**Milne-hous**, *n.* mill, 1967. [OE. *mylen + hūs*.]

**Mine**, *n.* a game played with dice, a kind of backgammon, 2326. In French romances, as here, coupled with *hasard*; see Godefroy, Dict. s.v. Mine. [O.Fr. *mine*.]

**Miracle**, *n.* a wonder, miracle, 500. [O.Fr. *miracle*.]

**Mirke**, *adj.* wk. dark, 404. [ON. *myrk-r*.]

**Misdo**, *v.* to do wrong, injure, offend; **Misdede**, *pa. t. sg.* 337, 992, 1371; **Misdo**, *pp.* 2798. [OE. *misdōn*.]

**Misferde**, *pa. t. sg.*; *misferde with*, did wrong to, harmed, attacked, 1869. [OE. *misfēran*.] See Ferde.

**Misgos**, 2 *sg. pres. indic.*, act wickedly, 2707. [OE. *mis + gān*.]

**Misseide**, *pa. t. sg.* insulted, 49, \*993; **Misseyd**, *pp.* 1688. [OE. *mis + secgan*.]

**Mipe**, **Mythe**, *v.* conceal, 652, 948, 1278. [OE. *mīdan*.]

**Mixed**, *adj.* filthy, 2533 (a nonce usage). [To OE. *mix*.]

**Mo**, *adj. comp.* more (in number), 1742, 1846. [To next.]

**Mo**, *adv.* more; *neuere mo*, 511, beside *neuere more*, 488, 493, &c. [OE. *mā*, comp. adv.]

**Mod**, *n.* mood, spirit, 1703. [OE. *mōd*.]

**Moder**, *n.* mother, 974, 1388, &c. [OE. *mōdor*.]

**Mone**, *n.* moon, 403, 1314, &c.; *under mone*, in the world, 373. [OE. *mōna*.]

**Mone**, *n. dat.* opinion, in *bi mine*

*mone*, 816; cf. OHG. *bī thia meina*. [OE. \**mān*.]

**Mone**, 1 *pl. pres. indic.* must, 840. [ON. *munu*.]

**Mon(e)kes**, *n. pl.* monks, 243, 360, 2584; *monekes blake*, 2521, would normally mean Benedictine monks; but see Note. [OE. *munuc*.]

**Mone-liht**, *n.* moonlight, light of the moon, 534. See Mone and Liht.

**More**. See Michel.

**Morwen**, *n.* morrow, next morning, 811, 1131, 2669, &c. [OE. *morgen*.] See To-morwen.

**Moste**. See Michel.

**Mote**, *pres. subj.* may, 19, 406, 1743, 2545; **Moten**, *pl.* 18. [OE. *mōt*, pret. pres.]

**Mouhte**. See May.

**Moun**. See May.

**Moup(e)**, *n.* mouth, 113, 433, &c. [OE. *mūp*.]

**Mowe**. See May.

**Mowe**, *v.* to mow, 1852. [OE. *māwan*.]

**Naked**, *adj.* naked, 6, 853, 1949, 1953. [OE. *nacod*.]

**Nam**. See Nime.

**Name**, *n.* name, 342, &c. On **Name**, 1397, 2529, see Note to 1397. [OE. *nama*.]

**Named**, *pp.* named, called, 1751. [To prec.]

**Namore**, **Na more**, *adv.* no more, 2363, 2530. [OE. *nā māre*.]

\***Nauen** (MS. *Name*), *n.* name, 1397 (see Note), 2529. [ON. *nafn*.]

**Nayl**, *n.* nail, spike; nail (of the hand or foot), 712, 857, 2163. [OE. *naegl*.]

**Ne**, *neg. part.* 49, &c.; not, 57, &c.; and not, 148, &c.; nor, 66; MS. *Ne* = neither . . . nor, 548. [OE. *ne*.]

**Necke**, *n.* neck, 1822, 1823, 2046. [OE. *hnecca*.]

**Nede**, *n.* need, necessity, 9, 25, 87, 1692, &c. [OE. *nēd*.]

**Neme**. See Nime.

**Ner**, *adv.* near, nearly, 990, 1949. [ON. *nēr*, comp.; OE. *nēar*, comp.]

**Nese**, *n.* nose, 2450; and see Note to 1917. Cf. Nose.

**Nesh**, **Neysh**, *adj.* soft, tender, 217, 2743. [OE. *hnesce*.]

**Net**, *n.* fishing-net, 752, 783. [OE. *nett*.]

**Net**, *n.* ox, 808, 1026, 1891;

**Net**, *pl.* cattle, 700, 1222; **Netes**, *gen. sg.* 781. [OE. *nēat*.]

**Nepeles**, *conj.* nevertheless, 1108, 1658. [OE. *ne þē læs*.]

**Neue**, *n.* fist, 1917, 2405. [ON. *hnēfi*.]

**Neu(e)re**, *adv.* never, not, 80, 625, &c.; *neuere a polk*, not a single pool, 2685; *neuere kines = none kines*, of no kind, 2691. [OE. *næfre*.]

**Newe**, *adj.* new, 263, 2461. [OE. *nēowe*.] See Span-newe.

**Newhen**, *v.* to come near, 1866. [OE. *nēhwian*.]

**Ney**, *adv.* nigh, nearly, 464, 640. [OE. *nēh*.] See Ner.

**Neysh**. See Nesh.

**Neyper**, neither of two, 2970; **Neyper . . . ne** = neither . . . nor, 458, 764, &c. [OE. *ne + ægðer*.] See Noyper, Noper and Ayper, \*Eyper.

**Niht**, *n.* night, 404, 533, 575, 1247, 1754, 2669, 2999, &c.; **Nihtes**, *gen. sg.* 2100; **Nihtes**, *adv. gen. sg.* by night, 2353. [OE. *niht*.]

**Nihtertale**, *n.* dead of night, 2025; cf. Canterbury Tales, Prologue, l. 97. [Remodelling of ON. *náttar-þel* where *náttar* is *gen. sg.*]

**Nime**, *v.* to take, to go, \*1336 (see Note), 1931, 2600; **Nimes**, *imper. pl.* 2594; **Nam**, *pa. t. sg.* 900, 1947, 2930; **Nomen**, *pa. t. pl.* took, 2790; **Neme**, *pa. t. pl.*

went, 1207 (see Note); **Neme**, *pret. subj. sg.* 2201; **Nomen**, **Numen**, *pp.* 2265, 2581. [OE. *niman*.]

**Nis**, *v.* is not, 462, 1998, 2244. [OE. *nīs = ne + is*.]

**Noble**, *adj.* noble, 1263, 1943. [O.Fr. *noble*.]

**Noblelike**, *adv.* nobly, 2640. [Prec. + OE. *-lice*.]

**Nok**, *n.* corner, small part, in *a ferthinges nok*, 820 (see Note).

**Noman**, nobody, 223. [OE. *nān mann*.]

**Nomen**. See Nime.

**No(n)**, *adj.* and *pron.* no, none, nobody, 518, 685, 864, 934, 974, 1019, &c.; *he nan*, none of them, 2200, is possibly for *he[r] non*, OE. *heora nān*; for *none kines*, see Kinnes. [OE. *nān*.]

**Norp**, *adv.* *adj.* and *n.* north, 434, 724, 734. [OE. *norð*.]

**Nose**, *n.* nose, 2823. [OE. *nosa*.] See Nese.

**Note**, **Noute**, *n.* nut, 419, 1332. [OE. *hnutu*.]

**Noper**. See Noyper.

**Nou**, **Nu**, *adv.* now, 11, 328, 1362, 2421, 2460, 2650, &c. [OE. *nū*.] [**Nouht** = *ne ouht* (?), ought not (?), 801, see Note.]

**Nouht**, **Nowht**, *n.* and *adv.* nothing, naught, not at all, 249, 505, 566, 648, 770, 1733, 2051, 2168, 2737, 2822, &c. [OE. *nāwihht*, *naht*, *noht*.]

**Noute**. See Note.

**Noyper**, **Noper**, with following *ne* = neither . . . nor, 2623, 2697. [OE. *nāhwæper*, *nōhwæper*, &c.] See Neyper.

**Numen**. See Nime.

**Nunnes**, *n. pl.* nuns, 2584. [OE. *nunne*.]

**Nyne**, **Nine**, *adj.* nine, 871, 1010. [OE. *nigen*.]

**Nytte**, *v.* to use, 941. [OE. *nyttian*.]

O. See On.

Of, *prep.* of, 14, 47, &c.; from, off, 92, 216, 857, 1850, 2599, &c.; from among, 71; concerning, on account of, 5, 23, 121, 123, 837, 849, 1664, &c.; *don of* = do concerning, do with, 130, 2423. [OE. *of*.] See Of, Of-, Offe.

Of, *adv.* off, 603, 2626, &c. [OE. *of*.]

[Offe (MS.), *prep.* extended form of Of, 435; cf. Onne. See Peroffe, Her-of.]

Of-fleye, *v.* fly off, 2751. [OE. *of + flēgan*.] See Fleye.

Offrende, *n.* offering, 1386. [O.Fr. *offrende*.]

Of-plette, *v.* strike off, cut off, 2444; Of-plat, *pa. t. sg.* 2755; cf. *of . . . plette*, 2626. See Platte(n).

Of-slawen, *pp.* struck off, 2676. See Slo.

Of-spring, *n.* offspring, 2565. [OE. *ofspring*.]

Oft(e), *adv.* often, 214, 226, 227, 884, &c. [OE. *oft*.]

Ok, *adv.* and *conj.* also, 187, 200, 879, 1081, &c. [ON. *auk*.]

Old, *adj.* old, 192, 259, 417; Olde = former, 2460; Olde, *pl.* 30, 956, &c. [OE. *ald*.] See Eldeste.

Oliue. See Lif.

On, *adj.* one, 425, 761, 1800, 2028, 2263, &c. [OE. *ān*.] See A, One.

On, O, *prep.* on, in; *o bok*, on the book, 2307, 2311; *o londe*, on (or in) land, 763; *o knes*, on (his) knees, 2252, 2796; *dones on*, put them on, 970; *o niht*, in the night, 1251; *on nihtes*, at night, 2048; *o worde*, in the world, 1349; *on lesse hwile*, in less time, 1830; *o mani wise*, in various wise, 1713; *on two*, *on to*, in two, 471, 1823, 2730; *on brenne*, to a blaze, 1239; *on hunting*, a-hunting, 2382. In *wel o bone*, &c., 2355, 2505, &c.,

it seems to be substituted for ON. *of*. [OE. *on*.] See Onne.

One, *adj.* alone, 1153, 1710, 1742, 1973, 2433; (*al*) *him one*, (all) by himself, alone, 815, 936. [OE. *āna*.] See On, *adj.*

Ones, *adv. gen. sg.* once; *al at ones* = all at once, 1295. [OE. *ānes*.] See On, *adj.*

Onlepi. See Anlepi.

[Onne (MS.), *prep.* on, in, extended adverbial form of On, *prep.*, placed after the word governed, 347, 2105. See next.]

Onne, *adv.* on, 1675, 1689, 1940, extended adverbial form of On, *prep.*

Onon, On-on. See Anon.

Open, *adj.* open, 1782, 1796. [OE. *open*.]

Or, *adv.* before, 728, 1043, 1044, &c.; *or ouht longe*, before long, 1789; *conj.* 417, 1356, 1688, &c. [ON. *ār*.] See Ere, and Are dawes.

Ore, *n.* mercy, grace, 153, 211, 2443, 2797. [OE. *ār*.]

Ore, *n.* oar, 711, 718, 1871. [OE. *ār*.]

Oth, oath, 260, 313, 2009 (see Note), 2013, 2231, 2272. For *hold oþes*, 2781, &c., see Hold. For Oth, 2526, see Note. [OE. *āþ*.]

Oth, *n.* promise, 2526, see Note. [OE. *hāt*.]

Oper(e) (MS. often *oþe*, which is to be expanded *oþe(r)* rather than *opere*), *adj.* other, 518, 861, 1784, 1986, 2413, 2416, 2970, &c.; *non oþer*, not otherwise, 2490; second, next, 879, 1690, 1755, &c. [OE. *ōper*.] See Toþer.

Oper, *conj.* either, or, 94, 787, &c. On Oper, 2970, see Note. [OE. *ōhwæþer*, *āhwæþer*, *awþer*.] See Ayþer, Noyþer.

Ouer, *prep.* over, above, beyond, 293, 1053, &c. [OE. *ofer*.]

Oueral, *adv.* everywhere, 38, 54. [OE. *ofer all*.]

**Ouerfare**, *v.* to cross, pass over, pass away, 1378, 2063. [OE. *oferfaran*.]

**Ouer-ga, Ouer-go**, in *let ouer-ga* (*oth*), neglected, disregarded, 314, 2220. [OE. *ofergān*.]

**Ouergeance**, *v.* to conquer, 2587. [OE. *ofergangan*.]

**Ouertake**, *v.* overtake, come up with, 1856, 2695; **Ouertok**, *pa. t. sg.* 1816. [OE. *ofer* + ON. *taka*.]

**Ouer-pwert**, *adv.* crosswise, 2822. [OE. *ofer* + ON. *þver-t*.]

**Ouht**, *n.* any space (of time), anything, 1189, 1789; *þat ouht douhte* = that was worth anything, 703. [OE. *ōwiht*, *āwiht*.] See *Nouht*, *Wiht*, *n.*

**Oune**, *adj. wk. and pl.* own, 375, 2428. [OE. *āgen*.]

**Oure**, *n. dat. shore*, 321; cf. 'to þan castle of Deoure on þere sæ oure', *Lazamon*, l. 3117. [OE. *ofer*.]

**Page**, *n.* page-boy, 1730. [O.Fr. *page*.]

**Palfrey**, *n.* saddle-horse (as distinct from a charger), 2060. [O.Fr. *palefrei*.]

**Panier**, *n.* basket, 760, 805, 813. [O.Fr. *panier*.]

**Pappes**, *n. pl.* breasts, in *bi þe pappes* = down to the breasts, 2132. [Norse dialects *pappe*.]

**Parlement**, *n.* parliament, 1006, 1179. [O.Fr. *parlement*.]

**Parred**, *pp.* confined, fastened in, barred in, 2439. [OE. \**pearrian* (?).]

**Parted**, *pp.* parted, 2962. [O.Fr. *parier*.]

**Passe**, *v.* pass, cross, 1376. [O.Fr. *passer*.]

**Pasteas**, *n. pl.* pasties, 644. [O.Fr. *paste*.]

**Paternoster**, *n.* the Lord's Prayer, so called from the first words of the Latin, 2997.

**Pateyn**, *n.* paten, the plate used in the service of the Mass, 187. [O.Fr. \**pateine*.]

**Pape**, *n. dat.* path, road, 2381, 2390; **Papes**, *pl.* 268. [OE. *þæð*.]

**Patriark[e]**, *n. dat.* patriarch, 428. [O.Fr. *patriarche*.]

**Payed**, *pp.* satisfied, content, 184. [O.Fr. *paier*.]

**Pelle**, *v.* go, hurry forth, hasten, 810.

**Peni**, *n.* penny, coin, 2147; **Penies**, *pl.* 776, 1172; *to þe peni drou*, turned into money, 705.

[OE. *penig*.]

**Per**, *n.* peer, equal, 989, 2241, 2792. [O.Fr. *per*.]

**Pike**, *v.* to stop (the seams of a ship) with pitch, 707. [OE. *pician*.]

**Pine**, *n.* torment, pain, 405, 540, 1374. [OE. *þin*.]

**Pine**, *v.* to torment, cause pain, 1958. [OE. *þinian*.]

**Piping**, *n.* playing on the pipe, 2325. [To OE. *þīpe*.]

**Place**, *n.* place, 743. [O.Fr. *place*.]

**Platte(n)**, *v.* to strike, to hasten; **Plattinde**, *pres. ptc.* 2282; **Plette**, *pa. t. sg.* 2626; **Plette**, *pa. t. pl.* 2613. [OE. *plættan*.] See *Of-lette*.

**Plawe**, *v.* to play, 950. [OE. (Nth.) *plagian*.] See *Pleye*.

**Playces**, *n. pl.* plaice, 896. [O.Fr. *plais(e)*.]

**Plainte**, **Pleynte**, *n.* complaint, 134, 2961. [O.Fr. *plainte*.]

**Plenté**, *n.* plenty, 1173, 1242, 1729. [O.Fr. *plente*.]

**Plette**. See *Platte(n)*.

**Pleye**, *v.* to play, 951. [OE. *pleg(ē)an*.] See *Plawe*.

**Pliht**, *n.* harm, damage, 1370, 2002. [OE. *pliht*.]

**Plow**, *n. dat.* plough, 1017. [OE. \**plōg-* (oblique), cf. ON. *plōg-r*.]

**Poke**, *n.* a bag, 555, 769, 780.



Poles, *n. pl.* pools, ponds, 2101. [OE. *pōl*.]

Polk, *n.* pool, puddle, 2685. [Diminutive of *pōl*.]

Pope, *n.* pope, 428. [OE. *pāpa*.]

Pou(e)re (*u=v*), *adj.* poor, 58, 101, 2457, &c. [O.Fr. *povre*.]

Poureluke, *adv.* wretchedly, poorly, 323. [Prec. + OE. *lice*.]

Prangled, *pp.* pressed, 639. [Cf. ME. *prangen*, to pinch.]

Preie, Preye, *v.* to pray, ask, 169, 1440; Prey, *imper. sg.* 1343;

Preide, Prey(e)de, *pa. t. sg.* 209, 211; Preyden, *pa. t. pl.* 153. [O.Fr. *preier*.]

Prest, *n.* priest, 33, 243, 429, 1029, 1829, 2583. [OE. *prēost*.]

Preyse, *v.* to praise, 60. [O.Fr. *preiser*.]

Pride, *n.* pride, 2946. [OE. *prȳde*.]

Priken, *v.* to spur a horse, ride briskly, 2639. [OE. *prician*.]

Priorie, *n.* priory, 2522, 2581. [O.Fr. *priorie*.]

Pris, *n.* worth, 283. [O.Fr. *pris*.]

Prud, *adj.* proud, 302. [O.Fr. *prud*.]

Pund, *n.* pound (of money), 2615; Pund, *pl.* 1633. [OE. *pund*.]

Put, *n.* cast, throw, 1055. [See next.]

Putten, *v.* to put, throw, to thrust (with a weapon), 1033, 1044, 1051; Putte, *pa. t. sg.* 1052; Putten (MS. Pulten, 1023), 1031, 1844. [OE. *\*pūtian*.]

Putting, Puttingge, *n.* putting the stone, 1042, 1057, 2324. [To prec.]

Pyment, *n.* spiced wine, 1728. [O.Fr. *piment*.]

Quaked, *pa. t. sg.* trembled, quaked, 135. [OE. *cwacian*.]

Qual, *n.* whale, 753. [OE. *hwæl*.]

Quan(ne), *adv.* 134, 204, 240, &c. [OE. *hwanne*.] See Hwan(ne).

Quath, Quod (MS. Hwat, 1650, &c.; Wat, 595; Quodh, 1800;

Quot, 1954; Couth (with absorption of *w*), 606), *pa. t. sg.* quoth, said, 606, 642, 1878, 1888, &c.

On l. 1674 see Note. [OE. *cweðan*.]

Queme, *adj.* pleasing, agreeable, 130, 393. [OE. (*ge*)*cwēme*.]

Quen(e), *n.* queen, 183, 293. [OE. *cwēn*.]

Qui. See Hwi.

Quic, Quik, *adj.* alive, 612, 613, 2476, &c.; *þe day þat he was quik*

*and ded*, the day he died, 1405 (see Note), 2210; Quike, *pl.* 1348,

ready, active. *Adv.* in *al quic wede*, gallop furiously, excitedly, 2641. [OE. *cwic*.]

Quiste, *n.* will, bequest, 218, 365. [OE. *\*cwiss*, to *cweðan*.]

Quod. See Quath.

Radde. See Rede.

Ran. See Renne.

Rank (MS. Rang), *adj.* proud, presumptuous, 2561. [OE. *ranc*.]

Rath, *n.* counsel, advice, help, 75; *me to rape*, lit. for a plan to me, 2542. See Note to ll. 360-1

for *Rap* replaced by *Red*. [ON. *rād*.] See Red.

Rathe, Rothe, *v.* to advise, 1335, 2817; for its replacement by

Rede(n) see Note to ll. 360-1. [ON. *rāða*.]

Rape, Rathe, *adv.* quickly, readily, 358, 2380, 2391, &c.

[OE. *hrāde*.]

Recke, *v.* to care, in *dapeit hwo recke* = a curse on him who cares, 2047, 2511. [OE. *rec(c)an*.]

Red, *adj.* red, red-haired, 1262, 1686; Rede, *wk.* 1397. [OE. *rēad*.]

Red, *n.* advice, counsel, plan, remedy, help, 148, 180, 518, 826,

1194, 1204, 1833, 2871; *me to*

*rede*, lit. for a plan to me. See Note to ll. 360-1. [OE. *rēd*.]

**Rede(n)**, *v.* to advise, direct, 104, 361 (see Note), 687; **Reden**, to read, 244; **Radde**, *pa. t. sg.* advised, 1353; cf. Note to 360-1. [OE. *rēdan*; but the pret. forms prove Anglian *æ* beside *ē*; cf. *Adrad*.]

**Reft(e)**. See *Reue*.

**Regne**, *v.* to continue a course of action, hold sway, 2586. [O.Fr. *regner*.]

**Renne**, *v.* to run, 1161, 1831, 1904; **Ran**, *pa. t. sg.* 216; *ran on blode*, ran with blood, bled, 432. [ON. *renna*.]

**Rest**, *n.* rest, sleep, 145, 943. [OE. *rest*.]

**Reue**, *n.* magistrate, justice, 1627. [OE. *gerēfa*.]

**Reue(n)**, *v.* to take away, deprive, rob, 480, 2590, 2991; **Refte**, *pa. t. sg.* 94, 2223, 2394, 2485; **Reft**, *pp.* 1367, 1672, 2004, 2483. [OE. *rēafian*.]

**Reueres**, *n. pl.* robbers, 2104. [OE. *rēafere*.]

**Rewe**, *v.* to have pity, 967; *impers.* in *bigan him forto rewe*, he was touched with pity, 497; **Rewede**, *pa. t. impers.* 503. [OE. *hrēowan*.]

**Rewnesse**, **Reunesse**, *n.* pity, 502, 2227. [OE. *hrēownes*(*se*).]

**Ribbes**, *n. pl.* ribs, 1900. [OE. *ribb*.]

**Riche**, *adj.* rich, wealthy, sumptuous, 138, 237, 1762, 2940, &c. [O.Fr. *riche*.]

**Richelike**, *adv.* richly, 421. [Prec. + OE. *līce*.]

**Riden**, *v.* to ride, 10, 26, &c. [OE. *ridan*.]

**Rig**, *n.* back, 1775. [ON. *hrygg-r*.]

**Riht**, *n.* right, justice, due, 36, 71, 395, 1099, 1383, 2717; *to riht*, properly, 109. [OE. *riht*.]

**Riht(e)**, *adj.* (1) right (side, &c.), 604, 1812, 2140, &c.; **Rihte**, *wk.* 2545, 2725; (2) just, right-ful, direct, 772, 846, 1201, 2235, 2473, &c. [OE. *riht*.]

**Riht(e)**, *adv.* rightly, right, exactly, just, straight (?), 420, 872, 1701, 2494, 2596, 2611, &c.

**\*Rihtwise**, *adj. pl.* righteous, 37. [OE. *rihtwīs*.]

**Rike**, *n.* kingdom, 290. [OE. *rīce*, ON. *ríki*.] See *Cuneriche*, *Heuene-riche*.

**Rime**, **Rym**, *n.* a poem, tale in verse, 21, 23, 2995, 2998. [O.Fr. *rime*.]

**Ring**, *n.* ring, finger-ring, ring in a coat of mail, 1632, 1637, 2740. [OE. *hring*.]

**Ringen**, *v.* to ring (a bell), 242, 1106; **Ringes**, 3 *sg. pres. indic.* 390; **Rungen**, *pp.* 1132. [OE. *hringan*, *wk. pret. hringde*.]

**Rippe**, *n. dat.* basket, 893. [ON. *hrip*.]

**Rise(n)**, *v.* to rise, 2203; **\*Ris**, *imper. sg.* 597; **Ros**, *pa. t. sg.* 1955. [OE. *rīsan*.]

**Ritte**, *v.* to cut, slash, 2495. [Cf. OHG. *rizzen*.]

**Robben**, *v.* to rob, 1958. [O.Fr. *robber*.]

**Robberes** (MS. *Wrobberes*), *n. pl.* robbers, 39. [Prec. + OE. *-ere*.]

**Rode**, *n. dat.* the Cross, 103, 135, 431, 1357, &c. [OE. *rōd*.]

**Rof**, *n.* roof, 2082. [OE. *hrōf*.]

**Romanz-reding**, *n.* romance-reading, 2327. [O.Fr. *roman* + OE. *rēding*.] See *Reden*.

**Rome**, *n.* Rome; *to Rome*, as far as Rome, between here and Rome, 64, see Note.

**Rop**, *n.* rope, 783, 2507. [OE. *rāp*.]

**Rore**, *v.* to roar, 2497, 2499; **Borede**, *pa. t. sg.* 2438. [OE. *rārian*.]

**Rose**, *n.* rose, 2919. [O.Fr. *rose*.]

Roser, *n.* rose-bush, 2919. [O.Fr. *rosier*, \**rosier*.]

Rothe. See Rathe.

Rowte, *v.* to roar, 1911. [ON. *rauta*.]

Runci, *n.* a nag, saddle-horse, 2569; cf. Canterbury Tales, Prologue, 390. [O.Fr. *runci*.]

Rungen. See Ringen.

Rym. See Rime.

Salte, *adj.* weak, salt, 1305. [OE. *salt*.]

Salve, *n.* salve, healing ointment, 1835. [O.Fr. *salve*.]

Samen, *adv.* together, 467, 979, 1717. [OE. \**samen*.]

Samened, *pp.* united, 2890. [OE. *samnian*.]

Sare. See Sore.

Saue, *adj.* safe, \*560, 2226. [O.Fr. \**save* (?).]

Sauteres, *n. pl.* psalters, a term applied not only to the whole psalter, but to smaller groups of psalms such as the Penitential Psalms, 244. [O.Fr. *sautere*.]

Sawe(n). See Se(n), *v.*

Say. See Seyen, Se(n), *v.*

Sayse, *v.* to take possession of (land), to give possession (in land), invest (always in a legal sense), 251, 2518; Seysed, *pa. t. sg.* 2931; Seysed, *pp.* 2513. [O.Fr. *saisir*, *seisir*.]

Scabbed, \*Skabbed, *adj.* scabby, 2449, 2505. [To O.Danish *skab*.]

Scape, *n.* injury, harm, 269, 1352. [ON. *skadi*.]

Schal. See Shal.

Sche. See She.

Scho. See Sho.

S(c)hoten, Schuten. See Shoten.

Schrifte, *n.* shrift, 1829. [OE. *script*.] See Shriue(n).

Schulle, *n.* plaice, 759. [OLG. *schulle*.]

Se, *n.* sea, 535, 719, 784, &c.; Seis, *gen. sg.* 321. [OE. *sæ*.]

Se(n), *v.* to see, 168, 534, 1021, 1217, 1273, &c.; Say, *pa. t. sg.* 881; Saw, Sau, *pa. t. sg.* 476, 2410; Sawe, Sowe, *pa. t. subj.* 1323; Sawen, Sowen, *pa. t. pl.* 957, 1055, 2255. The origin of the Sawe(n), Sowen forms is not clear. [OE. *sēon*.]

Seckes, *n. pl.* sacks, 2019. [ON. *sekk-r*.]

Segges, *n. pl.* cuttle-fish (?), 896. [O.Fr. *seche* (?).]

Sei. See Seyen.

Seint, *n.* saint, 177, &c. [O.Fr. *seint*.]

Seis. See Se, *n.*

Seken, *v.* to seek; MS. Seken, 1629; Souhte, *pa. t.* 1085. [OE. *sēcan*.]

Sele, *n.* seal, 755. [OE. *selh*, *sēl*.]

Self, *adj.* in *you-self*, 2425, 2595; *me self*, 123; *miself*, 1931; *God self*, 245; *God him-setue*, 432. [OE. *self*.]

Seli, *adj.* innocent, 477, 499. [OE. (*ge*)*sælig*.]

Selkouth, Selc(o)uth, *n.* wonder, 124, 1059, 2119. [To next.]

Selkuth, *adj.* wondrous, strange, 1284. [OE. *sel(d)cūþ*.]

Selle(n), *v.* to sell, 53, 763, &c.; Solde, *pa. t. sg.* 699, 703, 817; Sold, *pp.* 775, 1638. [OE. *sellan*.]

Selthe, *n.* happiness, prosperity, 1338. [OE. *sæld*.]

Sembling, *verbal n.* assembling, gathering, 1018. [To O.Fr. *sembler*.]

Seme(n), *v.* to suit or fit in appearance, to seem, *impers.* with *dat.* 2916; Semede, *pa. t. sg.* 976, 978, 1649, &c. [ON. *sēma*.]

Sende(n), *v.* to send, 523, 2392; Sende, *pa. t. sg.* 136, 358, &c.; Sent, *pp.* 1180. [OE. *sendan*.]

**Sene**, *adj.* evident, 656. [OE. (*ge*)*sēne*.]

**Serga(u)nz**, **Seriaunz**, *n. pl.* attendants, retainers, 1929, 2066, 2088, 2091, 2166, 2361, 2371. [O.Fr. *sergant*, *serjaunt*.] *See* Grith-sergeans.

**Serges**. *See* Cerges.

**Serk**, *n.* shirt, 603. [ON. *serk-r*.]

**Seruen**, *v.* to serve, deserve, 1230, 2522; **Seruede**, *pa. t. pl.* 1914. [O.Fr. *servir*.]

**Set(en)**. *See* Site.

**Sette**, *v.* to set, place, appoint, allot; to set (of the sun), 266, 2612, 2671; **Sette**, *pa. t. sg.* 2571; *on knes him sette*, kneeled, 451; **Setten**, *pa. t. pl.* 1211; **Set**, *pp.* 907; *neues under her nes[es] set*, 1917, *see* Note, and cf. *sette a dint*, gave a blow, 2406. [OE. *settan*.]

**Seuene**, *adj.* seven, 2125. [OE. *seofon*.]

**Seuentente**, *adj.* seventeenth, 2559. [OE. *seofontēoða*.]

**Seyen**, **Sei**, *v.* to say, speak, 647, 2008, 2886, &c.; **\*Say** we (MS. *Sawe*), 338; **Seyde**, *pa. t. sg.* 1117, 159, &c.; **Seyde(n)**, *pa. t. pl.* 376, 382, 456, 1213; **Seyd**, **Seid**, *pp.* 1281, 1786, 2993, &c. [OE. *seġan*.] *See* Misseyde.

**Seyl**, **Sayl**, *n.* sail, 711, 854, 858, 2507. [OE. *seġl*.]

**Seysed**. *See* Saysed.

**Shal**, **Schal** (MS. *Sal*, 628), *v.* shall, 21, 1151, &c.; **Shaltu**, **-tou**, **-tow**, 2 *sg.* with affixed pronoun, *þu*, *þou*, 1322, 1800, 2180, 2186, 2882, 2901; **Shol**, 1 *sg. subj.* 1782; **Shole(n)**, *pl.* 562, 621, 645, 1127, 1230, 1640, 1788, &c.; **Shul** we, *pl.* 328; **Shule** ye, *pl.* 2419; **Shulen**, *pl.* 731, 747, &c.; **Shulde**, *pa. t. sg.* 245, \*1079, &c.; **Sholde**, *pa. t. sg.* 190, 297, 2712; **Shulden**, *pa. t. pl.* 941; **Sholden**, *pa. t. pl.* 1020. [O.E. *sceal* (pret. pres.); *sculon*,

*sceolon pl.*; *sceolde*, *sculde* pret. *sg.*]

**Shalt(o)u**. *See* Shal.

**Sham(e)** (MS. *Same*, 1956), *n.* shame, 56, 83, 799, 2424, 2461, &c. [OE. *scamu*.]

**Shamed**, *pp.* shamed, 2754. [OE. *scamian*.]

**Shameliċe**, *adv.* shamefully, disgracefully, 2462, 2825, 2827. [OE. *scamlīce*.]

**Shankes**, *n. pl.* legs, shanks, 1903. [OE. *scanca*.]

**Shape(n)**, *v.* to shape, create; **Shop**, *pa. t. sg.* 1101; **S(c)haped**, *pp.* 424, 1647. [OE. *sceppan*, *pp. scapen*.]

**Shar**, *pa. t. sg.* cut, 1413. [OE. *sceran*.]

**Sharpe**, *adj. pl.* sharp, 2322, 2645. [OE. *scearp*.]

**Shawe**, **Shauwe**, **Showe**, *v.* to show, declare, \*1401, 2206; to see, 2784. *See* Shewe, with which there is much confusion in rimes. [OE. *sceāwian*.]

**She**, **Sche**, *pron. nom. sg. fem.* she, 174, 175, 1721, &c. [See N.E.D.] *See* Sho.

**Sheld**, *n.* shield, 489, 624, 1653, &c. [OE. *sceld*.]

**Shende**, *v.* to shame, injure, destroy, 1422; **Shente**, *pa. t. sg.* 2749; **Shend**, *pp.* 2845. [OE. *scendan*.]

**Shep**, *n. pl.* sheep, 700; **Shepes**, *gen. sg.* 781. [OE. *scēp*.]

**Sheres**, *n.* shears, 857. [OE. *scēra*.]

**Shewe**, **Sheue**, *v.* to see, examine, 1853, *see* Note; MS. *Sheue*, 1401; **Shewed**, *pp.* 2056 (*see* Note). [OE. *sceāwian*.] *See* Shawe.

**Shides**, *n. pl.* pieces of wood split thin, 917. [OE. *scīd*.]

**Shilde**, 3 *sg. pres. subj.* shield, protect, 16. [OE. *scildan*.]

**Shine**, *v.* to shine, 404; **Shon**, *pa. t. sg.* 2144. [OE. *scīnan*.]

**Ship**, *n.* ship, 706, 735. [OE. *scip*.]

**Shir**, *adj.* bright, 588, 916, 1253, &c. [OE. *scīr*.]

**Shireue**, **Schireue**, *n.* sheriff, 266, 2286. [OE. *scīr-gerēfa*.]

**Shirte**, *n.* shirt, tunic, 768. [OE. *scyrte*.]

**Sho**, *v.* to provide with shoes, 1138; **Shod**, *pp.* 971. [OE. *scō(i)an*.] See **Shon**, *n.*

**Sho**, **Scho**, *pron.* 3 *sg. fem. nom.* she, 112, 126, 649, &c. See **She**.

**Shof**, *pa. t. sg.* shoved, 871, 892. [OE. *scūfan*.]

**Shol(en)**, **Sholden**. See **Shal**.

**Sholdre**, **Shuldre**, *n.* shoulder, 604, 1262, 2738; **Sholdres**, *pl.* 1647, 1818; **Shuldren**, *pl.* 982 in *bi þe shuldren more*, higher by head and shoulders. [OE. *sculdor*.] See **Shuldre-blade**, **Shuldreden**.

**Shon**, *n. pl.* shoes, 860, 969. [OE. *scō(h)*.]

**Shon**. See **Shine**.

**Shop**. See **Shape(n)**.

**Shoten**, **Schoten**, **Schuten**, *pa. t. pl.* assailed (with missiles), 1864; rushed (at), 1838, 2431. [OE. *sceōtan*.]

**Shrede**, *n.* fragment, morsel of food, 99. [OE. *scrēade*.]

**Shride**. See **Shrud**.

**Shride**, *v.* to clothe, put on, wear, 963; **Shrid**, *pp.* clad, 978. [OE. *scrýðan*.]

**Shriue(n)**, *v.* to shrive, hear confess, 212, 362; **Shriue(n)**, *pp.* 227, 364, 2489, 2598. [OE. *scrīfan*.]

**Shrud**, *n.* clothing, 303. [OE. *scrūd*.]

**Shul(en)**, **Shulde**. See **Shal**.

**Shuldre(n)**. See **Sholdre**.

**Shuldre-blade** (MS. **Shudre-**), *n. dat.* shoulder-blade, 2644. [OE. *sculdor + blæd*.]

**Shuldreden**, *pa. t. pl.* shouldered,

**jostled**, nudged, 1056. [To OE. *sculdor*.]

**Sibbe**, *adj.* related, akin, 2277. [OE. *sibb*.]

**Side**, **Syde**, *n.* side (of the body), 127, 1980, 2130; **Sides**, *pl.* 1850; **Siden**, *pl.* 371. [OE. *sīde*.]

**Sike**, *v.* to sigh, 291. [OE. *sī-can*.] See **Siking**.

**Sikerlike**, *adv.* surely, assuredly, 422, 625, 2301, 2707, 2871. [OE. *sicor + lice*.]

**Sikernesse**, *n.* surety, guarantees, 2856. [OE. *sicor + nes(se)*.]

**Siking**, *n.* sighing, 234. [To OE. *sīcan*.] See **Sike**.

**Siluer**, *n.* silver, money, 73, 818, 1223. [OE. *siolfor*, *sylfur*.]

**Simenels**, *n. pl.* a kind of bread or cake: *simenels with þe horn*, 779; see **Horn**. [O.Fr. *simenel*.]

**Singen**, *v.* to sing, chant, 243, 391. [OE. *singan*.]

**Sinne**, *n.* sin, 536, 2461, &c.; **pity**, 1976, 2375, 2627. [OE. *synn*.]

**Sire**, **Syre**, *n.* lord, sir, 310, 909, 1229, 2009, &c. [O.Fr. *sire*.]

**Sister**, *n.* sister, 411, 1231, 1365, &c. [ON. *systir*.]

**Site**, **Sitte**, *v.* to sit, to lie (of a ship), 366, 1316, 2098, 2809; **Sat**, *pa. t. sg.* 399, 566, 735, 2344, &c.; **Seten**, *pa. t. pl.* 1738, 1766; **Set**, *pp.* 162; *site on knes*, to kneel, 2709. On MS. **Sat**, *pa. t. sg.* opposed, 2567, see **Note**. [OE. *sittan*.]

**Sipe**, **Syþe**, *n. dat.* time, 1052; in *fele sipe*, many times, 778, 2189, 2843, *sipe* is *gen. pl.*, but note *fele sipes*, 1277; MS. *fele sipes*, 1737; *fiue hundred sipes*, 213; *an hundred sypes*, 2162. [OE. *sīþ*.]

**Sipe(n)**, *adv.* afterwards, 399, 472, 1414, 1814, &c.; **Sipen**, *conj.* after, 1988, &c. [OE. *siddan*.]

**Sixe**, *adj.* six, 1824. [OE. *six*.]

**Sixtene**, *adj.* sixteen, 890. [OE. *sixtēne*.]

**Sixti**, *adj.* sixty, 1747, &c. [OE. *sixtig*.]

**Sket**, *adv.* quickly, 1926, 1960, 2303, 2493, 2513, 2574, 2736, 2839. [ON. *skjótt*, earlier \**skéot*-.]

**Skirming**, *n.* fencing, 2323. [To O.Fr. *skirmer*.]

**Slawe(n)**. See **Slo**.

**Slenge**, *v.* to sling, 2435; **Slenget**, *pp.* 1923. [ON. \**slengja*.]

**Slep**, *n.* sleep, 1282. [OE. *slēp*.]

**Slepe(n)**, *v.* to sleep, 1283;

**Slep**, *imper. sg.* 660, 661; **Slep**, *pa. t. sg.* 1280; **Slepen**, *pa. t. pl.* 2128. [OE. *slēpan*.]

**Sleues**, *n. pl.* sleeves, 1957. [OE. *slēf(e)*.]

**Sley**, **Slei(e)**, *adj.* skilful, \*1072, 1084, 2116. [ON. *slæg-r*.]

**Sluke**, *adv.* or *adj.* smooth or smoothly (?), 1157. [OE. \**slice* (?).]

**Slo**, *n.* a sloe, 849, 2051. [OE. *slā(h)*.]

**Slo(n)**, to slay, strike, smite, 512, 1364, 1412, 1745, 2543, 2706; **Slos**, *imper. pl.* 2596; **Slou**, **Slow**, *pa. t. sg.* 501, 2633; **Slowe(n)**, *pa. t. pl.* 2414, 2427, 2432; **Slawe(n)**, *pp.* 1803, 1928, 2000, 2681, 2747, &c.; **Slayn**, *pp.* 1428; *þe ferdes togidere slowe*, the armies met in battle, 2683. [ON. *slá*, OE. *slēan*, O.Nth.E. *slā*.]

**Smerte**, *adj. pl.* painful, 2055. [Cf. OE. *smeart*, but the vowel is influenced by OE. *smeortan*, *v.* or ME. *smerte*, *n.*]

**Smerte**, *adv.* sharply, severely, 215. [To *prec.*]

**Smerte**, *v.* to smart, cause acute pain, 2647. [OE. *smeortan*.]

**Smite**, *v.* to smite, 1854; **Smot**, *pa. t. sg.* 1676, 1823, 2654. [OE. *smitan*.]

**Smith**, *n.* smith, 1876. [OE. *smið*.]

**So**, *n.* a tub, pail, 933. [OE. *sā*.]

**So**, *adv.* so, 17, &c. [OE. *swā*.] See Also.

**So**, *conj.* as, 279, 349, &c.; *so . . . so*, *so . . . as*, 1083, &c.; *so as*, whereas, although, 337. [OE. *swā*.]

**Sobbing**, *n.* sobbing, 234. [To OE. \**sobbian*.]

**Softe**, *adj.* gentle, mild, 991. [OE. *sōfte*.]

**Softe**, *adv.* luxuriously, 305; quietly, stealthily, 2618. [To *prec.*]

**Somdel**, **Sumdel**, *adv.* somewhat, rather, 240, 450, 497, 1054, 2306, 2950. [OE. *sume dæle*.]

**Sond**, *n.* sand, shore, shoal(?), 708, 735. [OE. *sand*.]

**Sone**, *adv.* straightway, 78, &c.; *sone . . . sone*, *conj.* as soon as, 1354. [OE. *sōna*.]

**Sone**, *n.* son, 246, 660, 839, 2980. [OE. *sunu*.]

**Sor**, *n.* grief, pain, 234, 1988. [OE. *sār*.]

**Sor**, *adj.* painful, 1817. [OE. *sār*.]

**Sore**, **Sare**, *adv.* sorely, grievously, 152, 214, 401, 455, 503, &c. [OE. *sāre*.]

**Sori**, **Sory**, *adj.* sad, wretched, 151, 477, 1248; vile, 2229. [OE. *sārig*.]

**Sorwe**, *n.* sorrow, 57, 233, 473, 1374, &c. [OE. *sorg*.]

**Sorwful** (**Sorful**, 151; MS. 2541), *adj.* sad, sorrowful, in *sor(w)ful and sori*; cf. 1248. [OE. *sorg-full*.]

**Soth**, *n.* truth, 36, 2008, &c.; *for soþe*, truly, 274. In *soth is*, 647; *þat was soth*, 2015; *soth was*, 2015, &c., it is *n.* or *adj.* [OE. *sōþ*.]

**Soplike**, *adv.* truly, 276. [OE. *sodlice*.]

**Sotshipe** (MS. **Shotshipe**), *n.* folly, 2099. [OE. *sotscipe*.]

**Soule**, *n.* soul, 245, 1422; **Soule**,

*dat.* 74; in *mi soule red*, 1975, it is *dat.* or *gen. sg.*, the sense amounting to 'what my conscience demands'. [OE. *sāwol*.]

**Soupe, Supe**, *v.* to sup, 1765, 1766. [OE. *sūpan*.]

**Souhte**. See **Seken**.

**Sowe(n)**. See **Se(n)**, *v.*

**Sowel**, *n.* anything eaten with bread as a relish, 767, 1143, 2905. [OE. *suft*.]

**Span-newe**, *adj. pl.* brand new, 968. [ON. *spán-nýr*.]

**Sparke**, *n.* spark, 91. [OE. *spearca*.]

**Spare**, *v.* to spare, 1995, 2691; **Sparede**, *pa. t. sg.* in *sparede he neyþer tos ne heles*, 898, i.e. he ran as fast as he could, 898; **Spared**, *pp.* 1240. [OE. *sparian*.]

**Sparkede**, *pa. t. sg.* sparkled, 2144. [OE. *\*spearcian*.]

**Speche**, *n.* speech, power of speech, 229 (see **Leyn**); **MS. Speche**, 1065. [OE. *spēc*.]

**Spede**, *v.* to prosper, succeed, 93, 1634; **Spedde**, *pa. t. sg.* 756. [OE. *spēdan*.]

**Speke**, *n.* speech, report, 946, \*1065 (MS. **Speche**). [OE. *spēc*.]

**Speke(n)**, *v.* to speak, talk, 113, 125, 326, 369, 548, &c.;

**Spak**, *pa. t. sg.* 678, 2389, 2968;

**Speken**, *pa. t. pl.* 1068, 1070;

**Spoken**, *pa. t. pl.* 372; **Speken**, *pp.* 2369. [OE. *specan*.]

**Spell(e)**, *n.* story, tale, 338. [OE. *spell*.]

**Spelle**, *v.* to relate, tell a story, 15, 2530. [OE. *spellian*.]

**\*Spende**, *pa. t. sg.* spent, shed, 1819, but see **Note**. [OE. *spendan*.]

**Sperd(e)**, *pp.* locked in, imprisoned, 414, 448. [OE. (ge)spearrian, OLG. *sperren*.]

**Spere**, *n.* spear, 380, 489, 624, 2322, &c. [OE. *spere*.]

**Spille**, *v.* to destroy, perish,

2422; of *limes spille*, 86, see **Lime**. [OE. *spillan*.]

**Spired**, *pp.* inquired, made inquiries, 2620. [OE. *spyrian*.]

**Spore, Spure**, *n.* spur, 1676, 2569. [OE. *spora, spura*.]

**Sprauleden**, *pa. t. pl.* sprawled, 475. [OE. *spreawlian*.]

**Sprede**, *v.* to spread out (the hands in token of submission), 95; **Sprad**, *pp.* 2920. [OE. *sprædan*.]

**Springe(n)**, *v.* to spring;

**Sprong**, *pa. t. sg.* 91; on word wide *sprong*, 959, see **Note**;

**Sprongen**, *pa. t. pl.* 870;

**Sprungen**, *pp.* in *day was sprung*, dawn came, 1131. [OE. *springan*.]

**Sprote**, *n.* twig, sprout, any growing plant, 1142. [OE. *sprota*.]

**Spuse(n)**, *v.* to marry, 1123, 1170; **Spuse**, 2 *sg. subj.* 2875;

**Spusede**, *pa. t. sg.* 2887; **Spused**, *pp.* 1175, 1266, 2928.

[O.Fr. (e)souser.]

**Spusing(e)**, *n.* marriage, 1164, 1177, 2886, 2888. [To prec.]

**Stac**, *n.* a stack, 814. [ON. *stakk-r*.]

**Staf**, *n.* staff, 1890, 2517. [OE. *stæf*.]

**Stake**, *n.* a stake, 2830. [OE. *staca*.]

**Stalworþe, Stalworpi**, *adj.* stalwart, valiant, strong, 24, 904, 2027, &c.; **MS. Stalworþeste**,

*superl.* 25. [OE. (WS.) *stælwierðe* + OE. *-ig*.] See **Grund-stalwurþe**.

**Stan-ded**, *adj.* stone-dead, dead as a stone, 1815. [OE. *stān + dēad*.]

**Standen**. See **Stonden**.

**Star**, *n.* a kind of sedge used for kindling fires, 939. [ON. *star*.]

**Stare(n)**, *v.* to stare; **Starinde**, *pres. ptc.* 508; **Stareden**, *pa. t. pl.* 1037 (see **Note**). [OE. *starian*.]

**Stark**, *adj.* strong, stout, 341,

380; *stark and strong*, 608, 988, &c. [OE. *stearc*.]

**Stede**, *n.* steed, 10, 26, 88, &c. [OE. *stēda*.]

**Stēde**, *n.* place, 142, 744, 1846. [OE. *stede*.]

**Stel**, *n.* steel, 2503, 2759. [OE. *stēle*.]

**Stem**, *n.* a ray of light, 591. [OE. *stēam*.]

**Sternes**, *n. pl.* stars, 1809 (see Ageyn). [ON. *stjarna*, earlier \**stearn*-.]

**Stert**, *n.* in *on a litel stert*, in a moment, 1873. [OE. \**steort*, cf. *Stirte*.]

**Stert**, *n.* tail, 2823. [OE. *steort*.]

**Steuene**, *n.* voice, 1275. [OE. *stefn*.]

**Sti**, *n.* way, road, \*1201, 2618. [OE. *stīg*.]

**Sticke**, **Stikke**, **Stike**, *n.* stick, 914, 1142, 1238. [OE. *sticca*.] See *Fir-sticke*.

**Stille**, *adj. pl.* quiet, shy, 955, 2309. [OE. *stille*.]

**Stille**, *adv.* quiet, quietly, not loudly, 69, 2997. [To *prec*.]

\***Stinted** (added in l. 2670), *pa. t. pl.* ceased.

**Stirt(e)**, *pa. t. sg.* leaped (up), rushed, 398, 566, 812, 873, 1049, &c.; **Stirte(n)**, *pa. t. pl.* 599, 1964, 2609. [OE. \**styrtan*.]

**Stith**, *n.* anvil, 1877. [ON. *stēði*.]

**Stiward**, *n.* steward, 666. [OE. *stigweard*.]

**Ston(e)**, *n.* stone, 569, 1023, 1025, 1044, &c.; precious stone, 1633. [OE. *stān*.]

**Stonden**, *v.* to stand, remain standing, be situated, 321, 689, 2240, &c.; **Stod**, *pa. t. sg.* 476, 679, &c.; in the tag-phrase *þer he stod*, 1818; *it stod a stem*, there issued a ray, 591; *Engelond stod awe*, 277 (see Note); **Stode(n)**, *pa. t. pl.* 889, 1037; *impers.* in

*him stondes wel*, it is well for him, 2983. [OE. *standan*.]

**Stor**, *adj.* great, proud, 2383. [ON. *stór-r*.]

**Storie**, *n.* story, 1641, 1734. [O.Fr. (*e*) *storie*.]

**Stormes**, *n. pl.* 1378. [OE. *storm*.]

**Stra**, *n.* straw; in *gaf nouht a stra*, cared not a straw, 315, 466. [ON. *strá*.]

**Strangest**. See *Strong*.

**Strangle(n)**, *v.* to strangle, 2584; **strangled**, *pp.* 640. [O.Fr. (*e*) *strangler*.]

**Strem**, *n.* stream, 2687. [OE. *strēam*.]

**Strenes**, 3 *sg. pres. indic.* begets, 2983. [OE. *strēonan*.]

**Strengþe**, *n.* strength, 990. [OE. *strengð(u)*.]

**Strie**, *n.* a hag, witch, 998. [O.Fr. (*e*) *strie*.]

**Strive**, *v.* to strive, contend, 2271. [O.Fr. (*e*) *striver*.]

**Strong**, *adj.* strong, 80, &c.; severe, oppressive, 114, 841, 1986; *ful strong*, shameful, too bad, 443, 802; **Strangest**, *superl.* 200, 1081. [OE. *strang*.]

**Stronglike**, *adv.* violently, 135. [OE. *stranglice*.]

**Strout**, *n.* contention, 1039. [See next.]

**Stroute**, *v.* contend, make a disturbance, 1779. [OE. *strūtian*.]

**Stunde**, **Stonde**, *n. dat.* while, period of time, 2614; *umbe stonde*, in former times, 2297. [OE. *stund*.]

**Sturgiun**, *n.* sturgeon, 753, 1727 (MS. *Sturgun*). [O.Fr. (*e*) *stur-geon*.]

**Sueren**, **Sweren**, *v.* to swear, 494, 647, &c.; **Suere**, 2 *sg. pres. subj.* 388; **Swor**, *pa. t. sg.* 398, 1118, 2367; **Swore**, *pa. t. pl.* 2307; **Swor(e)n**, *pp.* 204, 439, 2378, &c. [OE. *swerian*.]



**Suete, Swete, adj.** sweet, 1388, 2927. [OE. *swēte*.]

**Sueyn, Sweyn, Swain, n.** peasant, 32, 343, 371, 1328, 2195, &c., generally used in opposition to *kniht*. [ON. *svein-n*.]

**Suilk, Swilk, adj.** such, 644, 1118, 1625, 2684, 2783; *riht al swilk so*, just as, 2123. [OE. *swilc*.] See *Svich*.

**Sum, adj.** a, some, 1092; **Summe, pl.** 1923, 1924. [OE. *sum*.]

**Sumdel.** See *Somdel*.

**Sunne, n.** sun, 436, 2671, &c. [OE. *sunne*.]

**Sunne-bem, n.** sunbeam, 592, 2123. [OE. *sunbēam*, influenced by the simplex.]

**Supe.** See *Soupe*.

**Super, n.** supper, 1762. [O.Fr. *soper*.]

**Sure, adv.** bitterly, dearly, 2005. [OE. *sūr*, adj.]

**Suth, South, adv.** south, 434, 1255. [OE. *sūþ*.] See *Bisouþe*.

**Svich, adj.** such, 60. [OE. *swilc*.] See *Suilk*.

**Swannes, n. pl.** swans, 1726. [OE. *swan*.]

**Swerd, n.** sword, 1759, 1769, 2625, 2631, 2659, &c.; on *swerd*, 2635, see Note. [OE. *sweord*.]

**Sweren.** See *Sueren*.

**Sweyn.** See *Sueyn*.

**Swike, n.** traitor, 423, 551, 626, 1158, 2401, 2451, 2834, 2990, &c. [OE. *swica*.]

**Swike, adj.** deceitful, treacherous, 2468. [OE. *swice*.]

**Swikel, adj.** treacherous, 1108. [OE. *swicol*.]

**Swilen, v.** to wash (dishes), 919. [OE. *swilian*.]

**Swin, n. pl.** swine, 701, 1227; **Swines, gen. sg.** 781. [OE. *swin*.]

**Swinge, v.** to beat, 214; **Swungen, pp.** 226. [OE. *swingan*.]

**Swink, n.** labour, 770, 801, 2456. [OE. (*ge*)*swinc*.]

**Swinken v.** to labour, toil, 798; **Swank, pa. t. sg.** 788. [OE. *swincan*.]

**Swire, n.** neck, 311. [OE. *swīra*.]

**Swipe, Swype, adv.** very, exceedingly, 111, 217, 341, 2436, &c.; quickly, 140, 584, 682, 690, 2594, &c. [OE. *swīde*.]

**Swot, n.** sweat, 2662. [OE. *swāt*.]

**Swungen.** See *Swinge*.

**Syre.** See *Sire*.

**Sype.** See *Sipe*.

**Sype, n.** scythe, 2553, 2699. [OE. *sīðe*, *sigðe*.]

**Tabour, n.** tabor, small drum, 2329. [O.Fr. *tabour*.]

**Take(n), v.** to take, catch, receive, seize, 409, 532, &c.; **Tok, pa. t. sg.** 114, 354, 467, 537, 819; **Toke, 2 sg. pa. t.** 1216; **Token, pa. t. pl.** 1194; **Taken, pp.** 260; *take lond under fote*, to set out on a journey, 1199. [ON. *taka*.]

**Tale, n.** tale, 3, 5, 13, &c.; *bi tale*, by number, 2026. [OE. *tæl*.]

**Talevas (MS. Talevaces), n. pl.** bucklers, large shields, 2323. [O.Fr. *talevas*.]

**Tarst, adv.** first, 2688 (see Note). [**Tauhte (MS.), 2214, see Bi-techen.**]

**Tayl, n.** tail, 2478, 2506. [OE. *tægl*.]

**Tel, n.** reproach; in *withuten tel*, 191, 2219. [OE. *tēl*.]

**Telle, v.** to tell, count, account, 3, 2615, &c.; cf. \***Telle, MS. Til**, 1348; **Told, pp.** 776, 1036, 1172. [OE. *tellan*.]

**Ten, adj.** ten, 871, 2414, 2429, &c. [OE. *tēn*. The rimes prove ē.]

**Tendre, adj.** tender, 217, 2743. [O.Fr. *tendre*.]

**Tene**, *n.* grief, affliction, 729. [OE. *tēona*.]

**Ter**, *n.* tear, 285. [OE. *tēar*.]

**Tere**, *v.* to paint with tar, 707. [To OE. *teoru*, *n.*]

**Teth**, *n. pl.* teeth, 2406. [OE. *tōþ*, *pl.* *tēþ*.]

**Teyte**, *adj.* active, eager, 1841, 2331. [ON. *teit-r*.]

**þank**, *n.* thanks, 160, 2560 (see Can); *God þank*, thanks to God, 2005. [OE. *þanc*.]

**þankede**, *pa. t. sg.* thanked, 2189, 2843. [OE. *þancian*.]

**þanne**, **þan**, *adv.* then, 51, 59, 1044, &c.; *conj.* when, 226, 248, 978, &c. [OE. *þanne*.]

**þanne**, **þan**, *conj.* than, 983, &c.; than if, 944, 1867. [OE. *þanne*.]

\***þar** (MS. *þat*), *pret. pres.* ought, 801, but see Note. [OE. *þearf*.] See *þurte*.

**þare**. See *þore*.

**þarne**, *v.* to lose, be deprived of, 1913, 2492, 2835. MS. *þarned þe ded*, 1687, is miswritten for *þoled þe ded*, owing to confusion with *þarned þe lif*; cf. 2492. [ON. *þarfna*.]

**þat**, *adj.* and *pron.* that, 166, 565, &c. [OE. *þæt*.]

**þat**, **þet**, *pron. rel. indecl.* that, which, who, &c., 10, 101, 1675, &c.; **þat**, *dat.* 727, 2029; often supplemented by the personal pronoun *þat . . . he*, who, 2392, &c.; *þat . . . his*, whose, 28; *þat . . . hem*, whom, 2966-7; *þat it*, which, 2866, &c.; **þat**, that which, 668, &c. [To prec.]

**þat**, *conj.* that, so that, in order that, 16, 18, 675, &c.; because, 161, &c.; until, 576, 900. [OE. *þæt*.]

**þaue**, *v.* to endure, suffer, permit, 296, 2696. [OE. *þafian*.]

**þayn**, **þeyn**, **þein**, *n.* thane (in enumerations usually follows *dreng* and precedes *kniht*), 31, 1327,

2184, 2194, 2260, 2466. [OE. *þegn*.]

**þe**, *def. art. indecl.* the, 5, &c. [OE. (Anglian) *þē* = *sē*.]

**þe** (MS. *þhe*, 1914), *n.* thigh, 1903, 1950, 1984. [OE. *þēh*.]

**þede**, *n. dat.* country, 105, 2890. [OE. *þēod*.]

**þef** (MS. *þhes*, 2289), thief, 2434; **þeues**, *pl.* 41, 1780. [OE. *þēof*.]

**þei**, *pron.* 3 *pl. nom.* they, 414, 1020, 1195, &c., beside common *He*; MS. *þere*, *poss. adj.* 1350, beside regular *Her(e)*, 52, &c.; *Hem*, *dat.* and *acc.* 38, 76, &c. See the separate forms. [ON. *þei-r*, *þeirra*, *þeim*, beside OE. *hēo*, *heora*, *heom*.]

**þei**, **þey**, *conj.* though, yet, 807, 992, 1165, \*1682, 1966, 2501, &c.; *þei* should probably be read for MS. *þrie*, 730. [OE. *þēh*.] See *þouh*.

**þenk**, *v.* to think, plan, 306, 578; **þenke**, 2 *sg. pres. subj.* 2393; **þouhte**, **powhte**, *pa. t. sg.* 443, 507, 1073, 1869, &c.; **þouht**, *pp.* 312. [OE. *þencan*.]

**þenne**, *adv.* thence, 777, 1185. [Cf. OE. *þanan*.] See *þepen*.

**þer(e)** (MS. often *þe*, 142, 476, 863, 933), *adv.* there, 232, 234, &c.; *conj.* where, 142, 158, 318, 448, 803, &c.; there where, 1740; to where, 2381. [OE. *þēr*.] See *þore*.

**þer-**, in **þerafter**, after that, 135; on that account, 776, 819, &c.; **þer-bi**, by, 476; **þer-fore**, for it, 776; **þer-biforn**, before that, 665; **þer-fram**, from there, 55; **þer-fro**, from it, 2253; **þerinne**, therein, 322, 535, &c.; **þerof**, **þeroffe**, thereof, 372, 466, 1068, &c.; **þerporu**, through it, by that means, 1098, 2827; **þertil**, thereto, 396, 1041, &c.; **þerto**, thereto, to it, 4, 1045, &c.; **þer-**

ute, outside, 1778, 1809; **per-**with, therewith, 639, 1031, 1046. See **perteken**, **per-yen**.

**per(e)**. See **pei**.

**perl** (for *þe erl*), the earl, 178.

**perne**, *n.* serving-maid, 298. [ON. *þerna*.]

**perteken**, *adv.* moreover, 2878. [OE. *þēr tō ecan*.]

**per-yen**, against that, 2271. [OE. *þēr + gegn*.]

**pet**, *def. adj.* in *þet oþer*, the second, 879; and, with wrong division, MS. *þe toþer*, 411 (see Note). [OE. *þæt*, neut.]

**pepen** (MS. *þepe*, 2629), *adv.* thence, 2498. [ON. *þedan*.]

**peu**, *adj.* and *n.* slave, serf, 2205; **pewe**, *pl.* 262. [OE. *þeow*.]

**peues**. See **þef**.

**pewes**, *n. pl.* manners, virtues, 282. [OE. *þeaw*.]

**pey**. See **þei**.

**picke**, *adj.* thick, stout, deep (in the chest), 1648. [OE. *þicce*.]

**picke**, *adv.* thickly, in great number, 1172. [To *prec*.]

**pider**, *adv.* thither, 850, 1012, 1021, &c. [OE. *þider*.]

**pigge**, *v.* to get by begging, 1373. [OE. *þiggan*, or ON. *þig-gja*.]

**ping(e)**, *n.* thing, 66, &c.; **þinge**, *pl.* 71; **þing**, *pl.* 2021; for no *þing*, on no account, 1936.

[OE. *þing*.]

**pinke(n)**, *v. impers.* it seems, 2169; **pouhte**, *pa. t.* 197, 256, 691, 1286, &c. [OE. *þyncan*, pret. *þūhte*.]

**pis**, *pron.* this, 260, 532, 841, &c.; **þis**, *pl.* 1145. [OE. *þēs*, neut. *þis*.]

**pis** (for *þis is*), 606.

**þisternes**, *n.* darkness, 2191. [OE. *þiosternes(se)*.]

**þo**, *pron.* those, 395 (see Note), 1918, 2044, &c. [OE. *þā*, *pl.* of article.]

**þo**, *adv.* then, 930; *conj.* when, 1047. [OE. *þā*.]

**þor-**, in **þortil**, thereto, 1443; **þorwith**, 100, therewith. See **þer-**.]

**pore**, *adv.* there, 742, 922, 1014, &c. [OE. *þār*, *þāra*.] See **þer(e)**.

**þor(h)ut**, **þur(h)ut**, *prep.* throughout, 52, 1065. See **þoru**.

**þorn(e)bake**, *n.* skate, ray, 759, 832. [OE. *þorn + bæc*.]

**þoru**, **þorw**, *prep.* through, by the agency of, 264, 367, 627, 848, 2646; *þoru* and *þoru*, 774; *þoruth* is clearly a spelling for *þoruh* in 2786; and possibly in *þuruth*, 52; *þoruth*, 1065. [OE. *þurh*.]

**þoruh-like** (MS. *þoruthlike*), 680; *adv.* searchingly. [OE. *þurh + līce*.] See **þoru**.

**pouh**, **powh** (MS. always *pou*, *þow*, *þo*; cf. *þei*), *conj.* though, yet, 124, 299, 1020, 1669, &c.

[ON. *\*þauh*, *þóh*.]

**pouht**, *n.* thought, concern, 122, 1190, 2053, &c. [OE. *þoht*.]

**pouhte**. See **þinke(n)**.

**pousand**, **þusand**, **þousind**, *adj.* thousand, 127, 2355, 2371, 2681, &c. [OE. *þūsend*, *þūsand*.]

**þral**, *n.* slave, thrall, 527, 684, 1097, 1158, 2564, 2589; wretch, 1408. [ON. *þræl-l*.]

**þrawe**, *n.* space of time, 276, 1215. [OE. *þrāg*.]

**þre**, *adj.* three, 385, &c. [OE. *þrēo*.]

**þredde**. See **þridde**.

**þrette**, *pa. t. sg.* threatened, 1163, 2404. [OE. *þrēatian*.]

**þridde**, **þredde**, *adj.* third, 867, 2633. [OE. *þridða*.]

**þrinne**, *adj.* three, 716, 761, 1977, 2091. [ON. *þrinn-r*.]

**þriste(n)**, **þrist**, *v.* to thrust, 1152, 2019, 2625; **þrist**, *pp.* 638. [ON. *þrýsta*.]

**þriue**, *v.* to thrive, 280, 514. [ON. *þrifa*.]

**protes**, *n. pl.* throats, 471, 1413. [OE. *protu*.]

**pu**, **pw**, **pou** (MS. *po*, 388, &c.), *pron.* 2 *sg. nom.* thou. Attached to verbs, as in *wiltu*, 691, &c.; *shaltow*, 1322, &c.; MS. *wille*, 528; *penkeste*, 578. *Tu* after a dental in *pat tu*, 2903. **pin**, *gen.* 1128; **pin(e)**, *pi*, *poss. adj.* 620, 1152, 2065; *used absolutely*, 619, &c.; **pe**, *acc. and dat.* 529, 530, 531, &c. [OE. *pū, pē, pin*.] See *Ye*.

**pur(h)ut**. See *poru*, *por(h)ut*. **purte**, *pa. t. sg.* need, might, 10; cf. *par*, *v.* [OE. *purfan*.]

**pus**, *adv.* thus, 1952, &c. [OE. *pūs*.]

**pusgate**, *adv.* in this way, 785, 2419, 2586. [Prec. + ON. *gata*.] See *Gate*, *Hwilkgat*.

**Tid**, *n.* time, hour, 2100. [OE. *tīd*.]

**Tiding**, *n.* news, information, 1926. [ON. *tīðendi*; cf. *prec.*] See *Tīpandes*.

**Tiht** (MS. *Thit*), *pp.* purposed, 2990. [OE. *tyhtan*.]

**Til**, *prep.* to, for, 141, 761, 864, &c. [ON. *til*; rare OE. *til*.] See *Intil*, *þertil*, *þortil*.

**Til**, **Til** (*pat*), *conj.* till, until, 174, 183, 192, 378, &c. [As *prec.*]

**Tilled**, *pp.* drawn; *tilled in-til his hond*, obtained control over, 438. [OE. (*for*) *tyllan*.]

**Time**, *n.* time, 28, 45, &c. [OE. *tīma*.]

**Tinte**, *pa. t. sg.* lost. 2023. [ON. *týna*.]

**Tirueden**, *pa. t. pl.* rolled back, stripped (clothes off), 603. [OE. \**tyrfan*.] See *To-turuen*.

**Tīpandes**, *n. pl.* news, 2279. [ON. *tīðendi*.] See *Tiding*.

**To**, *n.* toe, 898, 1743, 1847, 2163, &c. [OE. *tā*.]

**To**, **Two**, *adj.* two, 350, 2664. [OE. *twā*.]

**To**, *adv.* too, 304, 689, 691, &c. [OE. *tō*.]

**To**, *prep.* to, for, 18, 72, 325, 526, 783, &c.; *him to þe fet*, at his feet, 616; *to middel-niht*, till midnight, 575; *hire to gode þouhte*, appeared to her as good, 197. [OE. *tō*.]

**To**-, in composition with verbs has usually the force of Latin *dis*-; see following words, where it is often intensified by prefixing *Al*.

**To-brised**, *pp.* bruised sorely, 1950. [OE. *tōbrýsan*.]

**To-crusshe** (MS. *To-cruhse*), *inf.* crush to pieces, 1992. [*Tō* + O.Fr. *cruissir*.]

**To-day**, *adv.* to-day, 426. [OE. *tō-dæg*.]

**To-deyle**, *pl. pres. indic.* take part in, 2099. [*Tō* + ON. *deila*.] See *Deyled*.

**To-drawen**, *pp.* drawn asunder, 2001. [*Tō* + OE. *dragan*.]

**To-frusshe**, *v.* to break in pieces, 1993. [*Tō* + O.Fr. *fruisier*.]

**To-gidere**, **Togydere**, *adv.* together, 1128, 1181, 2683, 2891. [OE. *tōgædere*.]

**To-hewen**, *pp.* hewn to pieces, 2001. [OE. *tō* + *hēawan*.]

**To-morwe(n)**, *adv.* to-morrow, 530, 1127, 2011. [OE. *tō-morgen*.]

**To-nicht**, **Toniht**, *adv.* to-night, 533; last night, 1955, 2003. [OE. *tō-niht*.]

**To-riuen**, *pp.* torn to pieces, 1953; **To-rof**, *pa. t. sg.* 1792. [*Tō* + ON. *rifa*.]

**To-shiuere**, *v.* to shiver in pieces, 1993; **Toshiuered**, *pp.* 2667. [*Tō* + ME. *shiueren*.]

**To-tere**, *v.* to tear in pieces, 1839; **To-torn**, *pp.* 1948, 2021. [OE. *tōteran*.]

**To-turuen**, *v.* to strip (eels of their skins), 918. [Since *u* for

- OE. *y* is not found elsewhere in *Havelok*, the form if correct points to OE. \**turfian*.] See Tirueden.
- To-tused, *pp.* mauled, torn, 1948. [OE. \**tō-tūsian*.]
- To-yede, *pa. t. sg.* went to, 765. [OE. pret. *tō-geēode*.]
- Totede, *pa. t. sg.* peeped, 2106. [OE. *tōtian*.]
- [To-per (MS.), 411. See *pet*.]
- Toun, Tun, Town, *n.* town, 397, 764, 1001, 1444, 1750, 2277, 2911, &c. [OE. *tūn*.]
- Tour, *n.* tower, 448, 2073. [O.Fr. *tour*.]
- Toward, *prep.* towards, 2138. [OE. *tō-weard*.]
- Trayso(u)n, Tresoun, *n.* treason, 312, 444, 1090, 2989. [O.Fr. *traison*, -*un*.]
- Trayt(o)ur, Traytūr, Traitour, *n.* traitor, 319, 692, 2757. [O.Fr. *traitour*.]
- Tre, *n.* a bar of wood, 1022, 1821, 1843, 1882, &c. [OE. *trēo*.] See Dore-tre; Galwe-tre.
- Trechery, *n.* treachery, 443, 1089. [O.Fr. *trecherie*.]
- Trewe, *adj.* true, trusty, 179, 1756; Trewest, *superl.* 374. [OE. *trēowe*.]
- Tristen, *v.* to trust, 253. [Cf. ON. *treysta*.]
- Tro, *v.* to trust, believe in, 2862; \*Troð (MS. Croud), *pp.* 2338, see Note. [O. East Norse *tróa*.] See Trowe.
- Trome, *n.* a company, troop, 8. [OE. *truma*.]
- Trone, *n.* throne, 1316. [O.Fr. *trone*.]
- Trowe, *v.* to believe, trust, 1656; Trowede, *pa. t. sg.* 382. [OE. *treowian*, *trūwian*.] See Tro.
- Trusse, *v.* to pack up, 2017. [O.Fr. *troussier*.]
- Tuenti, *adj.* twenty, 259. [OE. *twentig*.]
- Tumberel, *n.* a porpoise, 757. [O.Fr. \**tomberel*.]
- Tun. See Toun.
- Tunge, *n.* tongue, 369. [OE. *tunge*.]
- Turbut, *n.* turbot, 754. [O.Fr. *turbot*.]
- Turnen, *v.* to turn, recover, 154. [O.Fr. *tourner*.]
- Turves, *n. pl.* turf, peat, 939. [OE. *turf*.]
- Twelue (MS. Twelf, 787; Twel rather for Twelf, 1054, 2455), *adj.* twelve. [OE. *twelf*.]
- Ueneysun, *n.* venison, 1726. [O.Fr. *veneisun*.]
- Vmbe stonde, *adv.* once upon a time, formerly, 2297. [ON. *umb* + OE. *stund*.] See Stunde.
- Umbistode, *pa. t. pl.* stood around, beset, 1875. [ON. *umb* + *bestandan*.] See Bistode.
- Vm-bi-yeden (MS. Unbi-; cf. MS. Chaunpioun), *pa. t. pl.* surrounded, 1842. [ON. *umb* + OE. *begān*.]
- Unblipe, *adj.* unhappy, sad, 141. [OE. *unbliðe*.]
- Unbounden, *pa. t. pl.* unbound, 601. [OE. *onbindan*.]
- Unclopede, *pa. t. sg.* undressed, 659. [OE. *on-*, *un-* + *clāðian*.]
- Under, *prep.* under; *under mone*, 373; *vnder God*, 423, i.e. on earth; *under hond*, under (his) sway, 2295. [OE. *under*.]
- Underfong, *pa. t. sg.* perceived, 115 (see Note). [OE. *underfōn*, *pp. -fangen*.]
- Understonde, *v.* to receive, 1159, 2814; Under-stod, *pa. t. sg.* 1760. [OE. *understandan*.]
- Undertok, *pa. t. sg.* took, 664; Under-toke, 3 *sg. pa. t. subj.* would take in charge, 377. [OE. *under* + ON. *taka*.]
- Undo, *v.* unfasten, open, cut loose, 1772, 2739. [OE. *ondōn*.]

**Unker**, *pron. gen. dual*, in *e(y)þer unker*, each of you two, 1882; *see* Note.

**Unkeuleden**, *pa. t. pl.* un-gagged, 601. [*un-*+ *ON. kefla*.] *See* Keuel.

**Unkyndelike**, *adv.* unsuitably, beneath (her) rank, 1250. [*OE. un(ge)cyndelice*.]

**Unornelike**, *adv.* roughly, shamefully, 1941. [*OE. unornlic*, *adj.*]

**Unride**, *adj.* rough, clumsy, huge, very numerous, 964, 1795, 1981, 2673, 2947; *Unrideste*, *superl.* 1985. [*OE. ungerýde*.]

**Unriht**, *n.* wrong, injustice, 1369. [*OE. unriht*.]

**Until**, *prep.* unto, to, 2913, 2930. [*ON. \*und(?)*+ *ON. til*.]

**Un-to**, *prep.* to, 1934, 1944, 2086, 2399, 2474. [*Cf. prec. and OLG. untō*.] *See* Intil.

**Unwraсте**, *adj.* wretched, filthy, 547, 2821. [*OE. unweræst*.]

**Uoyz**, *n.* voice, 1264. [*O. Fr. voix*.]

**Up**, *adv.* up, 597, &c. [*OE. ūp*, *upþ*.]

**Up-drow**, *pa. t. sg.* drew up, 932. [*OE. ūp*+ *dragan*.] *See* Drawen.

**Up-on**, *prep.* upon, against, 47, 2689, &c.; *upon his gamen*, in sport, 468. [*OE. ūp*+ *on*.]

**Vt**, *prep.* out, 89, 155, 346, 1178, &c. [*OE. ūt*.]

**Vt-drawen**, *v.* to draw out; **Vt-drow**, *pa. t. sg.* 1794, 2632; **Ut-drawe(n)**, *pp.* 1802, 2631. [*OE. ūt*+ *dragan*.] *See* Drawen.

**Uten**, *adv.* out, exhausted, 842(?). *Zupitza* suggests *eten*, but the *MS.* is possibly correct. [*OE. ūtan*.]

**Uten-laddes**, *n. pl.* men from abroad, foreigners, 2153, 2580. *See* Uten and Ladde.

**Vtlawes**, *n. pl.* outlaws, 41. [*ON. útlagi*.]

**Utrage**, *n.* outrage, outrageous conduct, 2837. [*O. Fr. outrage*.]

**Wa**. *See* Wo.

**Wade**, *v.* to pass, go, 2645. [*OE. wadan*.]

**Wagge**, *v.* to brandish, wield, 89. [*Cf. OE. wagian*.]

**Waiten**, **Wayte(n)**, *v.* watch, watch for an opportunity, 512, 1754, 2070. [*O. Nth. Fr. waiter*.]

**Waken**, *v.* to keep watch over, be awake, 630; **Waked**, *pp.* 2999. [*OE. wacian*.]

**Wakne**, *v. intrans.* to wake up, 2164. [*OE. wæcn(i)an*.]

**Wantede**, *pa. t. sg.* was lacking, 712, 1243. [*ON. vanta*.]

**War**, *adj.* aware, conscious, 788, 2139. [*OE. wær*.]

**Warant**, *n.* surety, 2067. [*O. Nth. Fr. warant*.]

**Ware**, *n.* wares, merchandise, 52, 765. [*OE. waru*.]

**Ware**. *See* Wore.

**Warie**, *v.* to curse; 3 *sg. pres. subj.* 433; **Waried**, *pp.* 434. [*OE. wærgan*.]

**Warne**, *v.* to warn, 2834. [*OE. warnian*.]

**Warp**, *pa. t. sg.* threw, cast, 1061. [*OE. weorpan*.]

**Was**, *pa. t. sg.* was, 6, 7, 8, &c.; **Weren**, *pa. t. pl.* 283, &c.; **Wer(e)**, *pa. t. sg. subj.* 133, 1097, &c.; **Weren**, *pa. t. pl. subj.* 2413, &c. [*OE. wæs, wëron*.] *See* Wore.

**Washen**, *v.* to wash, 1233. [*OE. wascan*.]

**Wastel**, *n.* cake or loaf made of fine flour, 779, 878. [*O. Nth. Fr. wastel*.]

**Water**, *n.* water, 912, 932, &c. [*OE. wæter*.]

**Wawe**, **Wowe**, *n.* wall, 2078; in the tag *bi þe wawe*, 474, 1963, 2470. [*OE. wæg*.]

**Waxen**, *v.* to grow; **Wex**, *pa. t. sg.* 281; **Waxen**, *pp.* 302, 791. [*OE. wæxan*.]

**Wayke**, *adj. pl.* weak, 1012. [*ON. veik-r*.]

**Wayte(n).** See Waiten.

**We**, *pron.* 2 *pl. nom.* we, 457, &c.; **Us**, *acc.* and *dat.* 16, 455, &c.; **Ure**, *poss. adj.* 697, &c. [OE. *wē, ūs, ūre.*]

**Wede**, *v.* gallop furiously (of a horse), 2837, 2641. [OE. *wēdan.*] See Wod.

**Wede**, *n.* clothing, garments, 94, 323, 861, 2825. [OE. *wēd(e).*]

**Wedde**, *v.* to wed, marry, 1113; **Weddet**, **Wedded**, *pp.* 1127, 2770. [OE. *weddian.*]

**Wei**, *n.* road, way, 772, &c.;

**Weie**, *dat.* 952. [OE. *weg.*]

**Weilawei**, *interj.* alas! 462, 570. [OE. *wēi lā wēi.*]

**Wel** (MS. Wol, 185), *adv.* full, quite, very; often like *ful* used as a weak intensive, 29, 115, 185, 1747; *Wel o bon(e)*, see note to 2355; *was him wel*, he was well off, 274; *wel with me*, in my favour, 2878. [OE. *wēl.*]

**Wele** (MS. Wel), *n.* weal, happiness; in *for wele ne wo*, for weal or woe, on any account, 2777. [OE. *wela.*]

**Welde**, *v.* to wield (a weapon), to rule, govern (a kingdom), possess, 129, 175, 1359, 1436, 2034. [OE. *geweldan*, wk.]

**Welcome**, *pp.* welcome, 1213, 1214. [Cf. ON. *wel-kominn.*]

**Welle**, *n.* spring, well, 1851. [OE. *well(a)*, *welle.*]

**Wende**, *v.* to go, turn, 1344, 1346, 1440, 1705, 2629; **Wente**, *pa. t. sg.* 1919; **Wend**, *pp.* 2138; **Went**, *pp.* 2450, see Note. [OE. *wendan.*]

**Wene**, *v.* to think, expect, 598, 655, 840, 1260, 1787; **Wende**, *pa. t. sg.* 524, 1091, 1803, &c.; **Wende(n)**, *pa. t. pl.* 374, 1197, 2547. [OE. *wēnan.*]

**Wepen**, *pa. t. pl.* wept, 152, 401. [OE. *wēpan.*]

**Wepne**, *n. sg. & pl.* weapon(s),

89, 93, 490, 1436, &c. [OE. *wēpn.*]

**Wer(en).** See Was.

**Werd**, *n.* world, 1290 (see Note); 2241, 2335, 2792, 2968; *o worde*, in the world, 1349. [OE. *weorold.*]

**Were**, *v.* to defend, 2152, 2298. [OE. *werian.*]

**Werewed**, *pp.* 1915, is apparently the same as **Wirwed**, *pp.* mauled, strangled, 1921. On the vowel see Morsbach, ME. Gr. § 129 n. 2. [OE. *wyrған.*]

**Werk**, *n.* labour, deed, 34, 866. [OE. *werē.*]

**Werne**, *v.* to refuse, deny, 1345;

**Werne**, 3 *sg. pres. subj.* 926. [OE. *wernan.*]

**Werse**, *adj. compar.* worse, 1100, 1134; the vowel is perhaps due to ON. *verri compar.* *verst-r* superl. [Cf. OE. *wyrsa.*]

**Wesseyl**, *n.* wassail, toast, *lit.* be hale! 1246. [ON. *\*ves heill.*]

**Wesseylen**, *pl. pres. indic.* drink healths, 2098; **Wosseyled**, *pp.* 1737. [To prec.]

**Wex**. See Waxen.

**Wicke**, **Wikke**, **Wike**, *adj.* wicked, wretched (of clothes), 66, 269, 319, 425, 665, 688, 965, 2458, 2825; *wicke red*, an unfortunate plan, 1406.

**Wide**, *adj. pl.* wide, 1845, 1957. [OE. *wīd.*]

**Wide**, *adv.* far, wide, 959, 1796. [OE. *wīde.*]

**Wif**, *n.* woman, wife, 348, 1713, 2860; **Wiues**, *pl.* 2, 2855. [OE. *wīf.*]

**Wiht**, *n.* whit, in *no wiht*, not at all, 97, 1763, 2500. [OE. *wiht.*]

**Wiht**, *adj.* courageous, active, 344, 1008, 1064, 1651, 1692, &c.; **Wihtest(e)**, *superl.* 9, \*25. [ON. *vīg-t*, *adj. neut.*]

**Wike**, **Wikke**. See Wicke.

**Wil**, *adj.* at a loss, bewildered,

ignorant, 863. [ON. *vill-r.*] See Wilde.

**Wilde**, *adj.* wild, 268. [OE. *wilde.*]

**Wile**, **Wille**, *v.* will, wish, desire, be willing, 352, 388, 485, &c.; **Wiltu** (MS. *Wilde*, 528, 1135), wilt thou, 681, 905; **Wole**, 1 *sg. pres.* 494, 1150; **Wilen**, *pl.* 732, 920, 1345, 2817, &c.; **Wolde** (MS. *Wode*, 951, 2310), *pa. t. sg.* 367, &c.; **Wolden**, *pa. t. pl.* 456, 514, 1057, &c.; on \***Wilde**, 354, which perhaps represents ON. *vilda* *pa. t.*, see Note. [OE. *willan.*]

**Wille**, *n.* will, 273; *wille don*, to work (one's) will, 528, 953, 2423. [OE. *willa.*]

**Wimman**, **Wymman**, **Wuman** (MS. *Wman*, 174, 281), *n.* woman, 1139, 1156, 1168, 1720, 2713, &c. [OE. *wifman.*]

**Win**, **Wyn**, *n.* wine, 1729, 2341. [OE. *win.*]

**Wind**, *n.* wind, 723, 1360. [OE. *wind.*]

**Winde**, *v.* to wind, 221; **Wounden** (MS. *Wnden*), *pp.* 546. [OE. *windan.*]

**Winne**, *n. dat.* joy, 660, 2965. [OE. *wynn.*]

**Winne**, *v.* to win, gain, 852, 1322. [OE. *winnan.*]

**Winter**, *n. pl.* winters, years, 259, 417, &c. [OE. *winter.*]

**Wirchen**, *v.* to work, cause, 510; **Wrouht**, **Wrowht**, *pp.* 1352, 2453, 2810. [OE. *wyrcan.*]

**Wis**, *adj.* wise, proficient, 180, 282, 288, 1421, 1635, &c. [OE. *wis.*]

**Wise**, *n.* manner, way, 204, 1713. [OE. *wise.*]

**Wislike**, *adv.* assuredly, 274. [OE. (*ge*) *wisslice.*]

**Wisse**, *v.* to direct, guide, advise, 104, 361. [OE. *wissian.*]

**Wissing**, *n.* advice, guidance, 2902. [OE. *wissung.*]

**Wiste(n).** See **Wite**.

**Wit** (p) (MS. *Witl*), *pron. dual nom.* we two, 1336, see Note, and cf. **Unker**. [OE. *wit.*]

**Wite**, *v.* to guard, decree, 405, 1316. [OE. *witian.*]

**Wite(n)**, *v.* to know, 367, 517, 626, 2201, 2708, 2786, 2808, &c.; **Wite**, 3 *sg. pres. subj.* if he know, 694; **Wot**, *pret. pres. sg.* 119, 213, 653, 1345, 2527, 2803; **Wost**, 2 *sg. pret. pres.* 527, 582, 1384, 2715, &c.; **Witen**, *pret. pres. pl.* 2208; **Wiste**, *pa. t. sg.* 115, 223, 358, 541, 1280, &c.; **Wisten**, *pa. t. pl.* 1184, 1187, 1200, &c. [OE. *wāt, wiste, inf. witan.*]

**Witer-like**, *adv.* certainly, 671. [ON. *vittr* + OE. *lice.*]

**With** (MS. *Wit* commonly), *prep.* together with, 52, 2517, &c.; *Krist was him with*, 62; *net with horn*, horned cattle, 700, &c.; *with trechery*, treacherously, 1089, &c. By means of, 505, 1821, &c.; *with þe prestes shriue*, shriven by the priests, 2489; *wrastling with laddes*, 2324. [OE. *wið.*]

**With-al**, *adv.* likewise, 754. [OE. *wið* + *all.*]

**Wipe**, *prep.* with, 1051 (see Note). Extended adverbial form of preposition when postponed; cf. **Offe**, **Onne**. [To OE. *wið.*]

**Withdrawen**, *v.* to withdraw, draw back; **With-drou** (MS. *Wit-drow*, 502), 498, 502. [OE. *wið* + *dragan.*]

**With-held**, *pa. t. sg.* retained, 820, 2356, 2362. [OE. *wið* + *haldan.*]

**With-inne**, *prep.* within, 2536. [OE. *wiðinnan.*]

**With-sitten**, *v.* to oppose, 1683. [OE. *wið* + *sittan.*] Cf. **At-sitte**.

**With-pan**, *conj.* provided that, on condition that, 532. [OE. *wið þam* (*þe*).]

**With-pat**, *conj.* on condition



that, so that, 19, 1220. [OE. *wið + þæt*.]

**Withuten** (MS. Wituten commonly), *prep.* except, 425; without, 2860, esp. in such phrases as *withuten faile*, 179; *withuten ende*, 247; \**withuten were*, without doubt, 1334, which are modelled on Fr. *sanz faile*, &c. [OE. *wið-utan*.]

**Wo, Wa, n.** woe, misery, wailing, 124, 461, 465, 510, &c.; *wirchen wo*, 510; *ful, wo wrouht*, 2453; *wurpe him wo*, may woe betide him, 2221. [OE. *wā*.]

**Wo, adj.** wretched; in *do ful wo* = make very wretched, 611, 2589. [To prec.]

**Wod, adj.** mad, 508, 1777, 1848, &c.; **Wode, pl.** 1896; to \**fyhten wode*, madly eager to fight, 2361. [OE. *wōd*.] See **Wede**.

**Wode, n.** wood, fuel; **Wodes, pl.** woods, 268, 397, 1444. [OE. *wudu*.]

**Wok, pa. t. sg.** awoke, 2093. [OE. *wacan*.] See **Waken**.

**Wold, n.** meaning, significance, 1932, see Note. [OE. (*ge*)*wald*.]

**Wolde.** See **Wile**.

**Wole.** See **Wile**.

**Wolle, n.** wool, 700. [OE. *wull*.]

**Wombes, n. pl.** bellies, 1911. [OE. *wamb*.]

**Won, n.** quantity, number, opinion; in the tags *ful god won*, in great number or quantity, 1024, 1837, 1907, 2325, 2617, 2729; perhaps 'with great force', 1791; *bi mine wone*, in my opinion, 1711, 1972. [ON. *ván*.]

**Wone, v.** to dwell, 105, 247, 406, 1325, &c. [OE. *wunian*.]

**Wone, adj.** accustomed, wont, 2151, 2297. [OE. *wuna*, n. and adj.]

**Wonges, n. pl.** fields, 397, 1444. [OE. *wang*.]

**Word, n.** word, report, fame, 959, 2010. [OE. *word*.]

**Word(e).** See **Werd**.

**Wore, pa. t. sg.** were, 504, &c.; **Wore, 2 sg. pa. t. subj.** 684, &c.; **Wore(n), Ware, pa. t. pl.** 237, 400, 448, &c. See **Was**. [ON. *várum*, pa. t. pl.]

**Worth, adj.** worth, 966, 1633. [OE. *weorð*.]

**Worth, n.** worth, value, 1332. [OE. *weorð*.]

**Worpe, Wurpe, 3 sg. pres. subj.** be, 434, 1102, 2873; **Wurpe, impers. 3 sg. subj.** in *wurpe him wo*, 2221. [OE. *weorþan*.]

**Wosseyled.** See **Wesseylen**.

**Wot.** See **Wite(n)**.

**Wounde.** See **Wunde**.

**Woundede, pa. t. sg.** wounded, 2742; **Woundeden, pa. t. pl.** 2429. [OE. *wundian*.]

**Wounden.** See **Winde**.

**Wowe.** See **Wawe**.

**Wrastling, n.** wrestling, 2324. [OE. *wræstlung*.]

**Wrathe, n.** wrath, anger, 2719, 2977. [OE. *wræððu*.] See **Wroth**.

**Wreieres, n. pl.** betrayers, traitors, 39. [OE. *wrēgere*.]

**Wreke(n), v.** to avenge, 327;

**Wreke, imper. sg.** 544, 1303;

**Wreke(n), pp.** avenged, 1884, 1901, 2368, 2849, 2992. [OE. *wrecan*.]

**Wringen, v.** to wring, 1233;

**Wrungen, pa. t. pl.** 152. [OE. *wringan*.]

**Wringing, n.** wringing, 235. [To prec.]

**Writ, n.** writing, inscription, 2486; **Writes, pl.** letters, 136, 2275. [OE. *writ*.]

**Writen, pp.** written, 2481. [OE. *writan*.]

**Wrong, n.** wrong, 72, 76, 2806. [ON. \**wrang-r*, Icel. *rang-r*.]

**Wros, n. pl.** corners, 68. [ON. \**wrá*.]

**Wroth, adj.** angry, 1117; **Wrope, pl.** 2973. [OE. *wrāð*.] See **Wrathe**.

**Wrouht, Wrowht.** *See* Wirchen.

**Wulf** (MS. Wlf), *n.* wolf, 573. [OE. *wulf*.]

**Wuluine** (MS. Wluine), *n.* she-wolf, 573. [Cf. OE. *wylfen*, but the suffix *-ine* is difficult.]

**Wuman.** *See* Wimman.

**Wunde, Wounde,** *n.* wound, 1845, 1898, 1978, 1980, 1986, 2673. [OE. *wund*.]

**Wurpe.** *See* Worpe.

**Wydues,** *n. pl.* widows, 33; **Widuen,** *pl.* 79. [OE. *widwe*.]

**Y.** *See* Ich.

**Ya,** *adv.* yea, yes, 1888, 2009, 2607. [OE. *gēa*.] *See* Ye.

**Yaf.** *See* Yeue.

**Yare,** *adj.* ready, eager, 1391, 2574, 2788, 2954. [OE. *gearu*.]

**Yaren,** *v.* to make ready, prepare, 1350. [OE. *gearwian*.]

[**Yat** (MS.), *pp.* granted, 1674, *see* Note. [ON. *jāta, jātta*.]]

**Ye,** *adv.* yea, yes, 2606. [OE. *gēa*.] *See* Ya.

**Ye,** *pron.* 2 *pl. nom.* you, 11, 12, &c.; \***You[r]** (?), *gen.* of you, 1799, *see* Note; **Yure, Your, Youre,** *poss. adj.* 171, 2801, &c.; **Yours** (used absolutely), 2798, 2801; **You,** *acc.* and *dat.* 453, 1441, &c. The plural forms are often used to a superior, 484, 485, &c., but cf. 1401, 1402, and MS. *þe*, 1628. [OE. *gē, ēow, ēower*.]

**Yede** (*pa. t. sg.* of *gon*, q.v.), walked, went, availed, 6, 44, 774, 821, &c.; **Yede(n),** *pa. t. pl.* 101, 889, 952. [OE. *ge-ēode*.]

**Yeft,** *n.* giving, bestowal, 2336. [Cf. OE. *gift*.] *See* Yeue.

**Yelde,** *v.* give, yield, render up to, requite, 803, 2402, 2712, 2717. [OE. *geldan*.]

**Yeme,** *v.* to take care of, govern, rule, 131, 172, 182, 209, 324, &c.; **Yemed,** *pa. t. sg. (intrans.)* 975; **Yemed,** *pa. t. pl.* 2276; **Yemed,** *pp.* 305. [OE. *gēman*.]

**Yer,** *n.* year, 1333. [OE. *gēr*.]

**Yerd,** *n.* yard, enclosure, 702. [OE. *geard*.]

**Yerne,** *adv.* eagerly, earnestly, readily, 153, 211, 880, 925, 1346, 1865, &c. [OE. *georne*.]

**Yerne,** 3 *sg. pres. subj.* desire, 299. [OE. *geornian*.]

**Yet(e),** *adv.* yet, 1319, 2040; used to strengthen *neuwere, euere*, 495, 973, 996, 1043, 1288, 2334. [OE. *gēta*.]

**Yeue** (\*Yiue is frequently proved by rimes), *v.* to give, grant, give in exchange, 22, 298, 459, 911; **Yif,** 2 *sg. imper.* 674; **Yaf,** *pa. t. sg.* 256, 419, 1174, &c.; *yaf nouht a stra*, &c., cared not a straw, 315, 419; **Youen,** *pp.* 224, 304; **Youenet** = *Youen it*, 1643. [OE. *gefan*.] *See* Giue, *v.*

**Y-here,** *v.* to hear, 11. [OE. *gehēran*.] *See* Here(n).

**Yif,** *conj.* if, 377. [OE. *gif*.]

**Y-lere,** *v.* to learn, 12. [OE. *gelēran*.] *See* Lere(n), *v.*

**Ynow, Ynou.** *See* Inow.

**Youenet.** *See* Yeue.

**You, Your, Yours.** *See* Ye.

**Youpe,** *n. dat.* youth, 2988. [OE. *geogod*.]

**Ys,** *pron.* *See* Es, *pron.*

**Y-se,** *v.* to see, 334. [OE. *gesēon*.] *See* Se(n).

**Yunder,** *adv.* yonder, 922, is probably a spelling for *yonder*. [OE. \**geonder*, cf. Gothic *jaindrē*.]

**Yung(e),** *adj.* young, 30, 112, 368, 956, &c. [OE. *gung*.]

**Yure.** *See* Ye.

# INDEX OF NAMES TO 'HAVELOK'

[In this Index, the references under the words in capital letters are in general to the *pages* of the book; otherwise, the references are to the *lines* of the poem.]

**Adam**, 2287.

**ATHELWOLD** (*spelt* Apelwald, l. 1077), is king of England, and governs wisely, pp. 2, 3; feels he is dying, p. 5; bequeaths his daughter to the care of Godrich, pp. 7, 8; dies, p. 9. (Mentioned again in ll. 2709, 2803.)

**Austin**, *seint*, St. Augustine, 1773.

**BERNARD BRUN** (i.e. Bernard Brown; so called in ll. 1751, 1945), provides a supper for Havelok, p. 58; his house attacked by thieves, p. 59; fights against them, p. 62; tells Ubbe how well Havelok fought, p. 65.

**BERTRAM** (*named in* l. 2898), is cook to the Earl of Cornwall, and employs Havelok, pp. 33, 34; is made Earl of Cornwall, and marries Leveie, Grim's daughter, p. 99.

**BIRKABEYN** (*spelt* Bircabein, l. 494; *gen.* Birkabeynes, 2150, 2209, 2296), is king of Denmark, p. 13; commends his three children to Godard, p. 15; dies, p. 15; his son Havelok's resemblance to him, p. 72. *See* *Intro.*, p. xxvi.

**Cestræ** (Chester), 2607, 2859, 2896.

**Cornwayle** (Cornwall), 178, 2532, 2908; MS. Cornwalie, 884.

**Crist**, 16, &c.;—*Krist*, 17, 22; *gen.* *Kristes*, 2797.

**Dauy**, *seint*, St. David, 2867.

**Denemark** (Denmark), 340, 381, 386, &c.

**Denshe**, *adj.* Danish, 1403; *pl.* 2575, 2693, 2938, 2945. *Danshe*, 2689.

**Douere** (Dover), 139, 265. *Doure*, 320.

**Elfred** (MS. Helfled), Havelok's sister, 411.

**Engelond** (England), 59, 202, 250, &c.;—*Engellond*, 1093;—*Engelonde*, 208;—*Englond*, 1270;—*Engeland*, 108, 610;—MS. *Hengelond*, 999; *gen.* *Engelondes*, 63.

**Englishe**, *pl. adj.* (*followed by men*), 2766, 2795;—*Englis* (*used absolutely*), 254;—MS. *Henglishe*, 2945.

**Eue**, Eve, 2287; *gen.* *Eues*, 2045.

**Griffin Galle**, 2029; but MS. *Giffin* is probably correct.

**GODARD** (*gen.* Godardes, l. 2415), is made regent of Denmark, pp. 15, 16; shuts up Birkabeyn's children in a castle, p. 16; kills Swanborow and Elfred, p. 18; spares Havelok, p. 19; but after-

wards hires Grim to drown Havelok, p. 20; is attacked by Havelok, p. 80; is taken prisoner, p. 82; condemned, flayed, drawn and hanged, pp. 83, 84.

**GODRICH** (*spelt* Godrich, l. 178), is Earl of Cornwall, p. 7; is made regent of England, pp. 8, 9, 10; shuts Goldborough up in Dover Castle, p. 12; makes Goldborough marry Havelok, p. 41; raises an army against Havelok, p. 86; excites his men, p. 87; marches to Grimsby, p. 88; fights with Ubbe, p. 89; fights with Havelok, p. 92; is taken prisoner, p. 93; taken to Lincoln, and burnt alive, pp. 95, 96.

**GOLDEBORU** (*or* Goldeborw, l. 2985), is daughter of King Athelwold, p. 5; is committed to the care of Godrich, p. 8; shut up in Dover castle, p. 12; is sent for to Lincoln, p. 40; is married to Havelok, p. 43; hears an angel's voice, p. 46; encourages Havelok to go to Denmark, p. 48; rejoices at Godrich's death, p. 96; is queen of England, p. 101.

**GRIM**, a fisher, is hired by Godard to drown Havelok, p. 20; discovers Havelok to be the right heir to the crown, p. 22; takes Havelok over to England, p. 26; founds Grimsby, p. 27; sends Havelok to Lincoln, p. 31; dies, p. 44.

**Grimesbi**, 745, 2540, 2579, 2617, 2619;—Grimesby, 1202, 2866.

**Gunnild** (daughter of Grim, marries Earl Reyner of Chester), 2866, 2896.

**Gunter** (an English earl), 2606.

**HAUELOK**, son of King Birkabeyn of Denmark, p. 14; spared by Godard, p. 19; but given over by him to Grim to be drowned,

p. 20; spared and fed by Grim, p. 23; goes to England, p. 26; sells fish, p. 30; works as a porter, p. 33; puts the stone, p. 38; marries Goldborough, p. 43; returns to Grimsby, p. 44; his dream, p. 47; returns to Denmark, p. 52; trades there, p. 53; is noticed by Ubbe, p. 55; defends Bernard's house against thieves, pp. 59-63; is known to be heir of Denmark by a miraculous light, p. 69; is dubbed knight by Ubbe, p. 77; is king of Denmark, p. 78; defeats Godard, p. 81; invades England, p. 85; defeats Godrich, p. 93; rewards Bertram and others, p. 98; lives to be a hundred years old, p. 99; is crowned king of England at London, p. 100; is king for sixty years, p. 100. [The story is called 'þe gest of Hauelok and of Goldeborw', l. 2985.]

**Humber** (the river), 733.

**Huwe Rauen** (one of Grim's sons), 1398, 1868, 2349, 2636, 2677; MS. Hwe, 1878.

**Iohan**, seint; the patron saint to whom Havelok commits his Danes, 2957; *bi seint Iohan!* 1112, 1721, 2563. *Spelt* Ion, 177.

**Iudas**, 319, 425, 482, 1133.

**Kaym**, *gen.* Cain's, 2045.

**Lazarun** (= Lazarus, *acc.* of Lazarus), 331. Cf. 'Lord'—seyd Gij—'that rered *Lazeroun*,' &c. *Guy of Warwick*, ed. Zupitza, p. 592.

**Leue** (Grim's wife), 558, 576, 595, 618, 642.

**Leuiue** (Grim's daughter, married to Bertram), 2914.

**Lincolne**, 773, 847, 862, 980, 1105, 2558, 2572, 2824.

**Lindeseye** (N. part of Lincolnshire), 734.

**Lundone** (London), 2943.

**Marz** (March), 2559.

**Reyner** (earl of Chester), 2607.

**Roberd** (**pe Rede**) (Grim's eldest son), 1397, 1686, 1888, &c.;—Robert, 2405, 2411, &c.; *gen.* Roberdes, 1691.

**Rokesborw** (Roxburgh), 265;  
—Rokesburw, 139.

**Sathanas** (Satan), 1100, 1134, 2512.

**Swanborow** (Havelok's sister), 411.

**UBBE**, a great Danish lord, p. 53;

entertains Havelok, p. 54; takes him to his castle, p. 56; does homage to Havelok, p. 75; dubs him knight, p. 77; his combat with Godrich, p. 89; is sorely wounded, p. 90.

**Willam** (**Wendut**) (one of Grim's sons), 1690, 1881, 1892, 2348, 2632;—MS. Wiliam Wenduth, 1398.

**Winchestre**, 158, 318.

**Yerk** (York), 1178, *see* Note.

**Ynde**, India, 1085.

PRINTED IN ENGLAND  
AT THE OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS